



KU-749-760



Mary Violet Shaw.

Clifton Hill House

Bristol.

Oct. 1914.

~~Amcan~~ J. Macdonald





# ARISTOTLE'S POLITICS

TRANSLATED BY  
BENJAMIN JOWETT

WITH INTRODUCTION, ANALYSIS AND INDEX BY

H. W. C. DAVIS, M.A.

FELLOW OF BALLIOL

OXFORD  
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1908

**HENRY FROWDE, M.A.**  
**PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD**  
**LONDON, EDINBURGH, NEW YORK**  
**TORONTO AND MELBOURNE**

# CONTENTS

|                        | PAGE |
|------------------------|------|
| INTRODUCTION . . . . . | I    |
| ANALYSIS . . . . .     | 7    |
| THE POLITICS.          |      |
| BOOK I. . . . .        | 25   |
| " II . . . . .         | 54   |
| " III . . . . .        | 100  |
| " IV . . . . .         | 145  |
| " V . . . . .          | 187  |
| " VI . . . . .         | 237  |
| " VII . . . . .        | 257  |
| " VIII . . . . .       | 300  |
| INDEX . . . . .        | 319  |



## INTRODUCTION

THE life of Aristotle, so far as it illustrates this treatise, may be summarized in a few words. He was by birth a Greek, but a native of the small city of Stageira which stood upon the fringe of the Greek world; he was therefore well fitted by his origin to be an impartial, yet sympathetic critic, of the more famous city-states of Greece. In his youth he studied philosophy at Athens under Plato, thus coming at the most impressionable period of his life into close relations with the profoundest thinker whom Greece had yet produced. After the death of Plato (347), he quitted Athens to spend some years in the service of the new race of monarchs whose mission it was to diffuse Greek culture through the East and at the same time to complete the destruction of all that was most valuable and characteristic in the political life of Greece. At the court of Hermias, the obscure tyrant of the obscure city of Atarneus, Aristotle had the opportunity of observing the once great, but then decadent, despotism of Persia, to which he makes some references in the *Politics*. In 343 or 342 he migrated to Macedonia, joined the court of Philip, and acted for three years or so as tutor to the youthful Alexander. The results of his experience in Macedonia, and the drift of the political teaching which he gave to his pupil may perhaps be inferred from the comments which, in several passages of the *Politics*, he passes on monarchies and tyrannies. About the year 335, on the eve of Alexander's great campaigns of conquest, the philosopher turned his back on Macedonia; we may infer from what he says of empires, that while he realized their possible services to civili-



zation, he was still more alive to the dangers, moral and other, which beset the path of a military and aggressive state. His sympathies were with the past, not the future; with Sparta and Athens rather than with Macedon; with Plato rather than with Alexander. Settling down at Athens, he became the leader of a philosophic school, the director of a brilliant academy; but he incurred the odium to which a friend of Macedon was naturally exposed in the city of Demosthenes. In 323, after the death of his pupil and patron, he was driven into exile by a prosecution for impiety which, if he had faced it, would probably have brought upon his head the fate of Socrates. He died in the following year at Chalcis, a Macedonian stronghold. The semi-barbarians, of whose future he doubted, had been more generous to him than the Greeks, whose highest thought it had been his life-work to interpret and to vindicate.

Of his literary work in general this is not the place to speak. It is enough to say that he aimed at expounding in the light of his own philosophic principles all the sciences which were then recognized, and that he followed consistently the method, of which the *Politics* are a conspicuous illustration, of combining induction with deductive reasoning from first principles, and of testing his own conclusions by a comparison with popular opinions and those of other teachers. Encyclopaedic knowledge has never, before or since, gone hand in hand with a logic so masculine or with speculation so profound. But it is in dealing with the moral rather than the natural sciences that he is greatest, most adequately equipped with facts, and most interested in his subject. Of his work in the moral sciences the final results are incorporated in the *Nicomachean Ethics* and the *Politics*. The two treatises are intimately connected. In the *Ethics* he

discusses the nature of individual happiness or well-being; in the *Politics* he treats of the state as one of the chief means through which the individual attains to happiness. The object of the *Politics* is both practical and speculative; to explain the nature of the ideal city in which the end of happiness may be completely realized; to suggest some methods of making existent states more useful to the individual citizen than they were in Aristotle's time, or had been in the past.

Aristotle is not, strictly speaking, the founder of political science. In the age of Pericles, and earlier still, statesmen and philosophers had theorized about the origin of society, the relative merits of various constitutions, and other kindred topics. Though Socrates was more concerned with ethics than with politics, he applied the powerful solvent of his dialectic to many of the political ideas which were fashionable in his day. The conceptions of utility as the ideal which the statesman should pursue, and of scientific knowledge as the indispensable equipment of the statesman, would seem to have had their birth in the Socratic circle. Plato, the pupil of Socrates, not content with developing the suggestions of his master and with giving to the Socratic formulae a deeper meaning, essayed a more systematic discussion of the nature of the state and its right organization. In the *Republic* he describes the state as it would appear if founded and governed by philosophers; in the *Laws* he offered to the statesmen of his age a model more practicable and more nearly related to the experience of the past; a model which the legislator for a new colony might follow without undue violence to Greek prejudices and opinions. Although the views of Plato are sharply, and not always justly, criticized by Aristotle, the influence of the *Republic* and the *Laws* is perceptible in many places of the *Politics* where they are not mentioned.

The *Politics*, in fact, would not be so valuable as they are if they expressed the views of an individual man of genius and nothing more. Here as elsewhere it is not the least of Aristotle's merits that he epitomized the best thoughts of a nation and of a stage in human history. He respected the political thinkers of the past, both the statesmen and the theorists; he was loth to admit that any institution or polity which had stood the test of time could be altogether bad. Hence he appears before us as a mediator in the controversies of his own and the preceding ages. It is his wish to lay bare the grain of truth which exists at the core of every political practice and belief. He interprets even those ideals with which he is least in sympathy. And so we learn from him what the various types of the city-state signified to the Greek mind; we are admitted under his guidance to the penetralia of their political thought.

The history of the Greek city-state we can study for ourselves, with fewer sources of information, it is true, than Aristotle had at his command, but also with a more critical appreciation of their value and a more scientific method of interpretation than was to be learned in Athenian schools of the fourth century. We are too in a better position than Aristotle to see the true place of the city-state in the evolution of society, to appreciate its limitations, to condemn its evils, and to draw the moral from its failure. We know, what he does not appear to have suspected, that the careers of his Macedonian patrons had sealed the death-warrant of the community which he regarded as the highest that human skill was capable of framing. Ampler experience has shown us that slavery is not the indispensable basis of a civilization, nor commerce always degrading to the individual and destructive of national morality. In the modern world we have

before us communities which, in defiance of his prophecies, have become extensive without becoming disunited. By his own methods of induction and comparison we can refute some of the laws which he regarded as immutable.

Still we must start from Aristotle. His account of the city-state may be supplemented and corrected, but not superseded. The governing ideas of any polity are always best expressed by those to whom they stand for the absolute and final truth; and there is no form of polity which the student of political science should study with more care than the city-state. Just because it is comparatively simple, just because it is unlike the states with which we are personally acquainted, it contains the key to many modern problems. Aristotle is the best interpreter of an essential link in the chain of political development.

But he is something more than this, more than a Greek who states the case of Greece. He is also a philosopher and a student of human nature. His views as to the origin and ultimate structure of society, as to the aims of civic life, as to the mutual obligations of the state and the individual, as to the nature of political justice, all have a value which is independent of his historical position. It is often difficult to follow his discussions of these and cognate subjects. His arguments are stated with extreme conciseness, and the train of thought which leads him from one topic to another is often far from clear. But those who have the patience to wrestle with his text will find in it theories of perennial value, and refutations of fallacies which are always re-emerging. Nor is it merely from his more abstract disquisitions that such lessons are to be extracted. While there could be no greater mistake than to apply his criticisms of democracies and aristocracies to modern governments which go by the same names, without stopping to enquire how far the names have changed their

meanings, it is on the other hand often apparent that these criticisms, when the necessary qualifications have been made, are as true of the present as they were of Greece. Of this an illustration may be found in the account of revolutions and their causes which forms the fifth book of the *Politics*.

The *Politics* should probably be regarded as an unfinished work. There are not infrequent repetitions; some subjects which the author promises to treat are never treated; and we are sometimes at a loss for the connecting link between successive books or parts of the same book. The traditional order of the books is probably not that which Aristotle contemplated, and has been altered by most editors. The present translation follows the order of Bekker's first edition; the numbering of the books in his octavo edition of 1878 has been given in brackets wherever it differs from that of the first. None of the rearrangements which have been suggested are completely satisfactory. Whichever of them is adopted, the reader will find that positions assumed at an earlier are only proved at a later stage of the argument. The *Politics* should be treated as a quarry of arguments and theories rather than as an artistically constructed piece of literature. It is best studied by the collection and comparison of all the passages which bear upon the same topic. It is hoped that for this purpose the subject-headings in the Index, which is abridged from that of the translator, may be of service. A brief analysis is prefixed to the translation with the object of explaining the thread of the argument, where such a thread exists, of indicating the natural divisions of the text, and of enumerating the chief topics of discussion.

The thanks of the editor are due to the Master of Balliol for his kindness in revising the proof of this Introduction.

H. W. C. DAVIS.

## BOOK I.

### cc. 1, 2. *Definition and structure of the State.*

The state is the highest form of community and aims at the highest good. How it differs from other communities will appear if we examine the parts of which it is composed (c. 1). It consists of villages which consist of households. The household is founded upon the two relations of male and female, of master and slave; it exists to satisfy man's daily needs. The village, a wider community, satisfies a wider range of needs. The state aims at satisfying all the needs of men. Men form states to secure a bare subsistence; but the ultimate object of the state is the good life. The naturalness of the state is proved by the faculty of speech in man. In the order of Nature the state precedes the household and the individual. It is founded on a natural impulse, that towards political association (c. 2).

### cc. 3-13. *Household economy. The Slave. Property. Children and Wives.*

Let us discuss the household, since the state is composed of households (c. 3). First as to slavery. The slave is a piece of property which is animate, and useful for action rather than for production (c. 4). Slavery is natural; in every department of the natural universe we find the relation of ruler and subject. There are human beings who, without possessing reason, understand it. These are natural slaves (c. 5). But we find persons in slavery who are not natural slaves. Hence slavery itself is condemned by some; but they are wrong. The natural slave benefits by subjection to a master (c. 6). The art of ruling slaves differs from that of



ruling free men but calls for no detailed description; any one who is a natural master can acquire it for himself (c. 7).

As to property and the modes of acquiring it. This subject concerns us in so far as property is an indispensable substratum to the household (c. 8). But we do not need that form of finance which accumulates wealth for its own sake. This is unnatural finance. It has been made possible by the invention of coined money. It accumulates money by means of exchange. Natural and unnatural finance are often treated as though they were the same, but differ in their aims (c. 9); also in their subject matter; for natural finance is only concerned with the fruits of the earth and animals (c. 10). Natural finance is necessary to the householder; he must therefore know about live stock, agriculture, possibly about the exchange of the products of the earth, such as wood and minerals, for money. Special treatises on finance exist, and the subject should be specially studied by statesmen (c. 11).

Lastly, we must discuss and distinguish the relations of husband to wife, of father to child (c. 12). In household management persons call for more attention than things; free persons for more than slaves. Slaves are only capable of an inferior kind of virtue. Socrates was wrong in denying that there are several kinds of virtue. Still the slave must be trained in virtue. The education of the free man will be subsequently discussed (c. 13).

## BOOK II.

cc. 1-8. *Ideal Commonwealths*—*Plato, Phaleas, Hippodamus.*

To ascertain the nature of the ideal state we should start by examining both the best states of history and the best that

theorists have imagined. Otherwise we might waste our time over problems which others have already solved.

Among theorists, Plato in the *Republic* raises the most fundamental questions. He desires to abolish private property and the family (c. 1). But the end which he has in view is wrong. He wishes to make all his citizens absolutely alike; but the differentiation of functions is a law of nature. There can be too much unity in a state (c. 2). And the means by which he would promote unity are wrong. The abolition of property will produce, not remove, dissension. Communism of wives and children will destroy natural affection (c. 3). Other objections can be raised; but this is the fatal one (c. 4). To descend to details. The advantages to be expected from communism of property would be better secured if private property were used in a liberal spirit to relieve the wants of others. Private property makes men happier, and enables them to cultivate such virtues as generosity. The *Republic* makes unity the result of uniformity among the citizens, which is not the case. The good sense of mankind has always been against Plato, and experiment would show that his idea is impracticable (c. 5).

Plato sketched another ideal state in the *Laws*; it was meant to be more practicable than the other. In the *Laws* he abandoned communism, but otherwise upheld the leading ideas of the earlier treatise, except that he made the new state larger and too large. He forgot to discuss foreign relations, and to fix a limit of private property, and to restrict the increase of population, and to distinguish between ruler and subject. The form of government which he proposed was bad (c. 6).

Phaleas of Chalcedon made equal distribution of property the main feature of his scheme. This would be difficult to effect, and would not meet the evils which Phaleas had in mind. Dissensions arise from deeper causes than inequality of wealth. His state would be weak against foreign foes. His reforms would anger the rich and not satisfy the poor (c. 7).

Hippodamus, who was not a practical politician, aimed at symmetry. In his state there were to be three classes, three kinds of landed property, three sorts of laws. He also proposed to (1) create a Court of Appeal, (2) let juries qualify their verdicts, (3) reward those who made discoveries of public utility. His classes and his property system were badly devised. Qualified verdicts are impossible since jurymen may not confer together. The law about discoveries would encourage men to tamper with the Constitution. Now laws when obsolete and absurd should be changed; but needless changes diminish the respect for law (c. 8).

cc. 9-12. *The best existent states—Sparta, Crete, and Carthage—Greek lawgivers.*

The Spartans cannot manage their serf population. Their women are too influential and too luxurious. Their property system has concentrated all wealth in a few hands. Hence the citizen body has decreased. There are points to criticize in the Ephorate, the Senate, the Kingship, the common meals, the Admiralty. The Spartan and his state are only fit for war. Yet even in war Sparta is hampered by the want of a financial system (c. 9).

The Cretan cities resemble Sparta in their constitutions, but are more primitive. Their common meals are better

managed. But the Cosmi are worse than the Ephors. The Cretan constitution is a narrow and factious oligarchy; the cities are saved from destruction only by their inaccessibility (c. 10).

The Carthaginian polity is highly praised, and not without reason. It may be compared with the Spartan; it is an oligarchy with some democratic features. It lays stress upon wealth; in Carthage all offices are bought and sold. Also, one man may hold several offices together. These are bad features. But the discontent of the people is soothed by schemes of emigration (c. 11).

Of lawgivers, Solon was the best; conservative when possible, and a moderate democrat. About Philolaus, Charondas, Phaleas, Draco, Pittacus, and Androdamas there is little to be said (c. 12).

### BOOK III.

cc. 1-5. *The Citizen, civic virtue, and the civic body.*

How are we to define a citizen? He is more than a mere denizen; private rights do not make a citizen. He is ordinarily one who possesses political power; who sits on juries and in the assembly. But it is hard to find a definition which applies to all so-called citizens. To define him as the son of citizen parents is futile (c. 1). Some say that his civic rights must have been justly acquired. But he is a citizen who has political power, however acquired (c. 2). Similarly the state is defined by reference to the distribution of political power; when the mode of distribution is changed a new state comes into existence (c. 3).

The good citizen may not be a good man; the good citizen is one who does good service to his state, and this state may

be bad in principle. In a constitutional state the good citizen knows both how to rule and how to obey. The good man is one who is fitted to rule. But the citizen in a constitutional state learns to rule by obeying orders. Therefore citizenship in such a state is a moral training (c. 4).

Mechanics will not be citizens in the best state. Extreme democracies, and some oligarchies, neglect this rule. But circumstances oblige them to do this. They have no choice (c. 5).

cc. 6-13. *The Classification of Constitutions ; Democracy and Oligarchy ; Kingship.*

The aims of the state are two; to satisfy man's social instinct, and to fit him for the good life. Political rule differs from that over slaves in aiming primarily at the good of those who are ruled (c. 6). Constitutions are bad or good according as the common welfare is, or is not, their aim. Of good Constitutions there are three: Monarchy, Aristocracy, and Polity. Of bad there are also three: Tyranny, Oligarchy, Extreme Democracy. The bad are perversions of the good (c. 7).

Democracies and Oligarchies are not made by the numerical proportion of the rulers to the ruled. Democracy is the rule of the poor; oligarchy is that of the rich (c. 8). Democrats take Equality for their motto; oligarchs believe that political rights should be unequal and proportionate to wealth. But both sides miss the true object of the state, which is virtue. Those who do most to promote virtue deserve the greatest share of power (c. 9). On the same principle, Justice is not the will of the majority or of the wealthier, but that course of action which the moral aim of

the state requires (c. 10). But are the Many or the Few likely to be the better rulers? It would be unreasonable to give the highest offices to the Many. But they have a faculty of criticism which fits them for deliberative and judicial power. The good critic need not be an expert; experts are sometimes bad judges. Moreover, the Many have a greater stake in the city than the Few. But the governing body, whether Few or Many, must be held in check by the laws (c. 11). On what principle should political power be distributed? Granted that equals deserve equal shares; who are these equals? Obviously those who are equally able to be of service to the state (c. 12). Hence there is something in the claims advanced by the wealthy, the free born, the noble, the highly gifted. But no one of these classes should be allowed to rule the rest. A state should consist of men who are equal, or nearly so, in wealth, in birth, in moral and intellectual excellence. The principle which underlies Ostracism is plausible. But in the ideal state, if a pre-eminent individual be found, he should be made a king (c. 13).

cc. 14-18. *The Forms of Monarchy.*

Of Monarchy there are five kinds, (1) the Spartan, (2) the Barbarian, (3) the elective dictatorship, (4) the Heroic, (5) Absolute Kingship (c. 14). The last of these forms might appear the best polity to some; that is, if the king acts as the embodiment of law. For he will dispense from the law in the spirit of the law. But this power would be less abused if reserved for the Many. Monarchy arose to meet the needs of primitive society; it is now obsolete and on various grounds objectionable (c. 15). It tends to become hereditary; it subjects equals to the rule of an equal. The individual



monarch may be misled by his passions, and no single man can attend to all the duties of government (c. 16). One case alone can be imagined in which Absolute Kingship would be just (c. 17).

Let us consider the origin and nature of the best polity, now that we have agreed not to call Absolute Kingship the best (c. 18).

## BOOK IV (VI).

cc. 1-10. *Variations of the main types of Constitutions.*

Political science should study (1) the ideal state, (2) those states which may be the best obtainable under special circumstances, and even (3) those which are essentially bad. For the statesman must sometimes make the best of a bad Constitution (c. 1). Of our six main types of state, Kingship and Aristocracy have been discussed (cf. Bk. III, c. 14 fol.). Let us begin by dealing with the other four and their divisions, enquiring also when and why they may be desirable (c. 2).

First as to Democracy and Oligarchy. The common view that Democracy and Oligarchy should be taken as the main types of Constitution is at variance with our own view and wrong (c. 3). So is the view that the numerical proportion of rulers to ruled makes the difference between these two types; in a Democracy the Many are also the poor, in an Oligarchy the Few are also the wealthy. In every state the distinction between rich and poor is the most fundamental of class-divisions. Still Oligarchy and Democracy are important types; and their variations arise from differences in the character of the rich and the poor by whom they are ruled.

Of Democracies there are four kinds. The worst, ex-

treme Democracy, is that in which all offices are open to all, and the will of the people overrides all law (c. 4). Of Oligarchies too there are four kinds; the worst is that in which offices are hereditary and the magistrates uncontrolled by law (c. 5). These variations arise under circumstances which may be briefly described (c. 6).

Of Aristocracy in the strict sense there is but one form, that in which the best men alone are citizens (c. 7).

Polity is a compromise between Democracy and Oligarchy, but inclines to the Democratic side. Many so-called Aristocracies are really Polities (c. 8). There are different ways of effecting the compromise which makes a Polity. The Laconian Constitution is an example of a successful compromise (c. 9).

Tyranny is of three kinds: (1) the barbarian despotism, and (2) the elective dictatorship have already been discussed; in both there is rule according to law over willing subjects. But in (3) the strict form of tyranny, there is the lawless rule of one man over unwilling subjects (c. 10).

cc. 11-13. *Of the Best State both in general and under special circumstances.*

For the average city-state the best constitution will be a mean between the rule of rich and poor; the middle-class will be supreme. No state will be well administered unless the middle-class holds sway. The middle-class is stronger in large than in small states. Hence in Greece it has rarely attained to power; especially as democracy and oligarchy were aided by the influence of the leading states (c. 11). No constitution can dispense with the support of the strongest class in the state. Hence Democracy and Oligarchy are the

only constitutions possible in some states. But in these cases the legislator should conciliate the middle-class (c. 12). Whatever form of constitution be adopted there are expedients to be noted which may help in preserving it (c. 13).

cc. 14-16. *How to proceed in framing a Constitution.*

The legislator must pay attention to three subjects in particular; (a) The Deliberative Assembly which is different in each form of constitution (c. 14). (b) The Executive. Here he must know what offices are indispensable and which of them may be conveniently combined in the person of one magistrate; also whether the same offices should be supreme in every state; also which of the twelve or more methods of making appointments should be adopted in each case (c. 15). (c) The Courts of Law. Here he must consider the kinds of law-courts, their spheres of action, their methods of procedure (c. 16).

## BOOK V (VIII).

cc. 1-4. *Of Revolutions, and their causes in general.*

Ordinary states are founded on erroneous ideas of justice, which lead to discontent and revolution. Of revolutions some are made to introduce a new Constitution, others to modify the old, others to put the working of the Constitution in new hands. Both Democracy and Oligarchy contain inherent flaws which lead to revolution, but Democracy is the more stable of the two types (c. 1).

We may distinguish between the frame of mind which fosters revolution, the objects for which it is started, and the provocative causes (c. 2). The latter deserve a more detailed account (c. 3). Trifles may be the occasion but are never

the true cause of a sedition. One common cause is the aggrandizement of a particular class; another is a feud between rich and poor when they are evenly balanced and there is no middle-class to mediate. As to the manner of effecting a revolution: it may be carried through by force or fraud (c. 4).

cc. 5-12. *Revolutions in particular States, and how revolutions may be avoided.*

(a) In Democracies revolutions may arise from a persecution of the rich; or when a demagogue becomes a general, or when politicians compete for the favour of the mob (c. 5).  
 (b) In Oligarchies the people may rebel against oppression; ambitious oligarchs may conspire, or appeal to the people, or set up a tyrant. Oligarchies are seldom destroyed except by the feuds of their own members; unless they employ a mercenary captain, who may become a tyrant (c. 6).  
 (c) In Aristocracies and Polities the injustice of the ruling class may lead to revolution, but less often in Polities. Aristocracies may also be ruined by an unprivileged class, or an ambitious man of talent. Aristocracies tend to become oligarchies. Also they are liable to gradual dissolution; which is true of Polities as well (c. 7).

The best precautions against sedition are these: to avoid illegality and frauds upon the unprivileged; to maintain good feeling between rulers and ruled; to watch destructive agencies; to alter property qualifications from time to time; to let no individual or class become too powerful; not to let magistracies be a source of gain; to beware of class-oppression (c. 8). In all magistrates we should require loyalty, ability, and justice; we should not carry the principle of the constitution

to extremes; we should educate the citizens in the spirit of a constitution (c. 9).

(d) The causes which destroy and the means which preserve a Monarchy must be considered separately. Let us first distinguish between Tyranny and Kingship. Tyranny combines the vices of Democracy and Oligarchy. Kingship is exposed to the same defects as Aristocracy. But both these kinds of Monarchy are especially endangered by the insolence of their representatives and by the fear or contempt which they inspire in others. Tyranny is weak against both external and domestic foes; Kingship is strong against invasion, weak against sedition (c. 10). Moderation is the best preservative of Kingship. Tyranny may rely on the traditional expedients of demoralizing and dividing its subjects, or it may imitate Kingship by showing moderation in expenditure, and courtesy and temperance in social relations, by the wise use of ministers, by holding the balance evenly between the rich and poor (c. 11). But the Tyrannies of the past have been short-lived.

Plato's discussion of revolutions in the *Republic* is inadequate; e.g. he does not explain the results of a revolution against a tyranny, and could not do so on his theory; nor is he correct about the cause of revolution in an Oligarchy; nor does he distinguish between the different varieties of Oligarchy and Democracy (c. 12).

## BOOK VI (VII).

cc. 1-8. *Concerning the proper organization of Democracies and Oligarchies.*

(A) Democracies differ *inter se* (1) according to the character of the citizen body, (2) according to the mode in which the

characteristic features of democracy are combined (c. 1). Liberty is the first principle of democracy. The results of liberty are that the numerical majority is supreme, and that each man lives as he likes. From these characteristics we may easily infer the other features of democracy (c. 2). In oligarchies it is not the numerical majority, but the wealthier men, who are supreme. Both these principles are unjust if the supreme authority is to be absolute and above the law. Both numbers and wealth should have their share of influence. But it is hard to find the true principles of political justice, and harder still to make men act upon them (c. 3). Democracy has four species (cf. Bk. IV, c. 4). The best is (1) an Agricultural Democracy, in which the magistrates are elected by, and responsible to, the citizen body, while each office has a property qualification proportionate to its importance. These democracies should encourage agriculture by legislation. The next best is (2) the Pastoral Democracy. Next comes (3) the Commercial Democracy. Worst of all is (4) the Extreme Democracy with manhood suffrage (c. 4).

It is harder to preserve than to found a Democracy. To preserve it we must prevent the poor from plundering the rich; we must not exhaust the public revenues by giving pay for the performance of public duties; we must prevent the growth of a pauper class (c. 5).

(B) The modes of founding Oligarchies call for little explanation. Careful organization is the best way of preserving these governments (c. 6). Much depends on the military arrangements; oligarchs must not make their subjects too powerful an element in the army. Admission to the governing body should be granted on easy conditions. Office should be made a burden, not a source of profit (c. 7).



Both in oligarchies and democracies the right arrangement of offices is important. Some kinds of office are necessary in every state; others are peculiar to special types of state (c. 8).

## BOOK VII (IV).

cc. 1-3. *The Summum Bonum for individuals and states.*

Before constructing the ideal state we must know what is the most desirable life for states and individuals. True happiness flows from the possession of wisdom and virtue, and not from the possession of external goods. But a virtuous life must be equipped with external goods as instruments. These laws hold good of both states and individuals (c. 1). But does the highest virtue consist in contemplation or in action? The states of the past have lived for action in the shape of war and conquest. But war cannot be regarded as a reasonable object for a state (c. 2). A virtuous life implies activity, but activity may be speculative as well as practical. Those are wrong who regard the life of a practical politician as degrading. But again they are wrong who treat political power as the highest good (c. 3).

cc. 4-12. *A picture of the Ideal State.*

We must begin by considering the population and the territory. The former should be as small as we can make it without sacrificing independence and the capacity for a moral life. The smaller the population the more manageable it will be (c. 4). The territory must be large enough to supply the citizens with the means of living liberally and temperately, with an abundance of leisure.

The city should be in a central position (c. 5). Communication with the sea is desirable for economic and military reasons; but the moral effects of sea-trade are bad. If the state has a marine, the port town should be at some distance from the city (c. 6).

The character of the citizens should be a mean between that of Asiatics and that of the northern races; intelligence and high spirit should be harmoniously blended as they are in some Greek races (c. 7). We must distinguish the members of the state from those who are necessary as its servants, but no part of it. There must be men who are able to provide food, to practise the arts, to bear arms, to carry on the work of exchange, to supervise the state religion, to exercise political and judicial functions (c. 8). But of these classes we should exclude from the citizen body (1) the mechanics, (2) the traders, (3) the husbandmen. Warriors, rulers, priests remain as eligible for citizenship. The same persons should exercise these three professions, but at different periods of life. Ownership of land should be confined to them (c. 9). Such a distinction between a ruling and a subject class, based on a difference of occupation, is nothing new. It still exists in Egypt, and the custom of common meals in Crete and Italy proves that it formerly existed there. Most of the valuable rules of politics have been discovered over and over again in the course of history.

In dealing with the land of the state we must distinguish between public demesnes and private estates. Both kinds of land should be tilled by slaves or barbarians of a servile disposition (c. 10). The site of the city should be chosen with regard (1) to public health, (2) to political convenience, (3) to strategic requirements. The ground-plan of the city

should be regular enough for beauty, not so regular as to make defensive warfare difficult. Walls are a practical necessity (c. 11). It is well that the arrangement of the buildings in the city should be carefully thought out (c. 12).

cc. 13-17. *The Educational System of the Ideal State, its aim, and early stages.*

The nature and character of the citizens must be determined with reference to the kind of happiness which we desire them to pursue. Happiness was defined in the *Ethics* as the perfect exercise of virtue, the latter term being understood not in the conditional, but in the absolute sense. Now a man acquires virtue of this kind by the help of nature, habit, and reason (c. 13). Habit and reason are the fruits of education, which must therefore be discussed.

The citizens should be educated to obey when young and to rule when they are older. Rule is their ultimate and highest function. Since the good ruler is the same as the good man, our education must be so framed as to produce the good man. It should develop all man's powers and fit him for all the activities of life; but the highest powers and the highest activities must be the supreme care of education. An education which is purely military, like the Laconian, neglects this principle (c. 14). The virtues of peace (intellectual culture, temperance, justice) are the most necessary for states and individuals; war is nothing but a means towards securing peace. But education must follow the natural order of human development, beginning with the body, dealing next with the appetites, and training the intellect last of all (c. 15).

To produce a healthy physique the legislator must fix

the age of marriage, regulate the physical condition of the parents, provide for the exposure of infants, and settle the duration of marriage (c. 16). He must also prescribe a physical training for infants and young children. For their moral education the very young should be committed to overseers; these should select the tales which they are told, their associates, the pictures, plays, and statues which they see. From five to seven years of age should be the period of preparation for intellectual training (c. 17).

### BOOK VIII (V).

#### cc. 1-7. *The Ideal Education continued. Its Music and Gymnastic.*

Education should be under state-control and the same for all the citizens (c. 1). It should comprise those useful studies which every one must master, but none which degrade the mind or body (c. 2). Reading, writing, and drawing have always been taught on the score of their utility; gymnastic as producing valour. Music is taught as a recreation, but it serves a higher purpose. The noble employment of leisure is the highest aim which a man can pursue; and music is valuable for this purpose. The same may be said of drawing, and other subjects of education have the same kind of value (c. 3).

Gymnastic is the first stage of education; but we must not develope the valour and physique of our children at the expense of the mind, as they do in Sparta. Until puberty, and for three years after, bodily exercise should be light (c. 4). Music, if it were a mere amusement, should not be taught to children; they would do better by listening

to professionals. But music is a moral discipline and a rational enjoyment (c. 5). By learning music children become better critics and are given a suitable occupation. When of riper age they should abandon music; professional skill is not for them; nor should they be taught difficult instruments (c. 6). The various musical harmonies should be used for different purposes. Some inspire virtue, others valour, others enthusiasm. The ethical harmonies are those which children should learn. The others may be left to professionals. The Dorian harmony is the best for education. The Phrygian is bad; but the Lydian may be beneficial to children.

*Cetera desunt.*

# THE POLITICS

## BOOK I

EVERY state is a community of some kind, and every community is established with a view to some good; for mankind always act in order to obtain that which they think good. But, if all communities aim at some good, the state or political community, which is the highest of all, and which embraces all the rest, aims, and in a greater degree than any other, at the highest good.

Now there is an erroneous opinion<sup>1</sup> that a statesman, king, householder, and master are the same, and that they differ, not in kind, but only in the number of their subjects. For example, the ruler over a few is called a master; over more, the manager of a household; over a still larger number, a statesman or king, as if there were no difference between a great household and a small state. The distinction which is made between the king and the statesman is as follows: When the government is personal, the ruler is a king; when, according to the principles of the political science, the citizens rule and are ruled in turn, then he is called a statesman.

But all this is a mistake; for governments differ in kind, as will be evident to any one who considers the matter according to the method<sup>2</sup> which has hitherto guided us. As in other departments of science, so in politics, the compound should always be resolved into the simple elements or least parts of the whole. We must therefore look at the

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Plato, *Politicus*, 258 E foll.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 8. § 1.



I. 1 elements of which the state is composed, in order that we may see <sup>1</sup> in what they differ from one another, and whether any scientific distinction can be drawn between the different kinds of rule<sup>1</sup>.

2 He who thus considers things in their first growth and origin, whether a state or anything else, will obtain the  
 2 clearest view of them. In the first place (1) there must be a union of those who cannot exist without each other; for example, of male and female, that the race may continue; and this is a union which is formed, not of deliberate purpose, but because, in common with other animals and with plants, mankind have a natural desire to leave behind them an image of themselves. And (2) there must be a union of natural ruler and subject, that both may be preserved. For he who can foresee with his mind is by nature intended to be lord and master, and he who can work with his body is a subject,  
 3 and by nature a slave; hence master and slave have the same  
 1252 b interest. Nature, however, has distinguished between the female and the slave. For she is not niggardly, like the smith who fashions the Delphian knife for many uses; she makes each thing for a single use, and every instrument is best made when intended for one and not for many uses.  
 4 But among barbarians no distinction is made between women and slaves, because there is no natural ruler among them: they are a community of slaves, male and female. Wherefore the poets say,—

‘It is meet that Hellenes should rule over barbarians<sup>2</sup>;’

<sup>1</sup> Or, with Bernays, ‘how the different kinds of rule differ from one another, and generally whether any scientific result can be attained about each one of them.’

<sup>2</sup> Eurip. Iphig. in Aulid. 1400.

as if they thought that the barbarian and the slave were I. 2 by nature one.

Out of these two relationships between man and woman, 5 master and slave, the family first arises, and Hesiod is right when he says,—

‘First house and wife and an ox for the plough<sup>1</sup>,’

for the ox is the poor man’s slave. The family is the association established by nature for the supply of men’s every-day wants, and the members of it are called by Charondas ‘companions of the cupboard’ [*ῥμοσιπύους*], and by Epimenides the Cretan, ‘<sup>2</sup>companions of the manger<sup>2</sup>’ [*ῥμοκάπους*]. But when several families are united, and the association aims at something more than the supply of daily needs, then comes into existence the village. And the most natural 6 form of the village appears to be that of a colony from the family, composed of the children and grandchildren, who are said to be ‘suckled with the same milk.’ And this is the reason why Hellenic states were originally governed by kings; because the Hellenes were under royal rule before they came together, as the barbarians still are. Every family is ruled by the eldest, and therefore in the colonies of the family the kingly form of government prevailed because they were of the same blood. As Homer says [of the 7 Cyclopes] :—

‘Each one gives law to his children and to his wives<sup>3</sup>.’

For they lived dispersedly, as was the manner in ancient

<sup>1</sup> Op. et Di. 405.

<sup>2</sup> Or, reading with the old translator (William of Moerbek) *ῥμοκάπους*, ‘companions of the hearth.’

<sup>3</sup> Od. ix. 114, quoted by Plato, Laws, iii. 680, and in N. Eth. x. 9. § 13.

I. 2 times. Wherefore men say that the Gods have a king, because they themselves either are or were in ancient times under the rule of a king. For they imagine, not only the forms of the Gods, but their ways of life to be like their own.

8 When several villages are united in a single community, perfect and large enough to be nearly or quite self-sufficing, the state comes into existence, originating in the bare needs of life, and continuing in existence for the sake of a good life. And therefore, if the earlier forms of society are natural, so is the state, for it is the end of them, and the [completed] nature is the end. For what each thing is when fully developed, we call its nature, whether we are speaking  
9 of a man, a horse, or a family. Besides, the final cause and end of a thing is the best, and to be self-sufficing is the end  
1253 a and the best.

Hence it is evident that the state is a creation of nature, and that man is by nature a political animal. And he who by nature and not by mere accident is without a state, is either above humanity, or below it; he is the

‘Tribeless, lawless, hearthless one,’

10 whom Homer<sup>1</sup> denounces—the outcast who is a lover of war; he may be compared to an unprotected piece in the game of draughts.

Now the reason why man is more of a political animal than bees or any other gregarious animals is evident. Nature, as we often say, makes nothing in vain<sup>2</sup>, and man is the only animal whom she has endowed with the gift of  
11 speech<sup>3</sup>. And whereas mere sound is but an indication

<sup>1</sup> Il. ix. 63.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 8. § 12.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. vii. 13. § 12.

of pleasure or pain, and is therefore found in other animals **I. 2** (for their nature attains to the perception of pleasure and pain and the intimation of them to one another, and no further), the power of speech is intended to set forth the expedient and inexpedient, and likewise the just and the unjust. And it is a characteristic of man that he alone **11** has any sense of good and evil, of just and unjust, and the association of living beings who have this sense makes a family and a state.

Thus the state is by nature clearly prior to the family and to the individual, since the whole is of necessity **13** prior to the part; for example, if the whole body be destroyed, there will be no foot or hand, except in an equivocal sense, as we might speak of a stone hand; for when destroyed the hand will be no better. But things are defined by their working and power; and we ought not to say that they are the same when they are no longer **the** same, but only that they have the same name. The **14** proof that the state is a creation of nature and prior to the individual is that the individual, when isolated, is not self-sufficing; and therefore he is like a part in relation to the whole. But he who is unable to live in society, or who has no need because he is sufficient for himself, must be either a beast or a god: he is no part of a state. A social instinct is **15** implanted in all men by nature, and yet he who first founded the state was the greatest of benefactors. For man, when perfected, is the best of animals, but, when separated from law and justice, he is the worst of all; since armed injustice **16** is the more dangerous, and he is equipped at birth with the arms of intelligence and with moral qualities which he may use for the worst ends. Wherefore, if he have not virtue, he

**I. 2** is the most unholy and the most savage of animals, and the most full of lust and gluttony. But justice is the bond of men in states, and the administration of justice, which is the determination of what is just<sup>1</sup>, is the principle of order in political society.

**3** Seeing then that the state is made up of households, before speaking of the state we must speak of the<sup>2</sup> management  
 1253 b of the household<sup>2</sup>. The parts of the household are the persons who compose it, and a complete household consists of slaves and freemen. Now we should begin by examining everything in its least elements; and the first and least parts of a family are master and slave, husband and wife, father and children. We have therefore to consider what each  
 2 of these three relations is and ought to be:—I mean the relation of master and servant, of husband and wife, and thirdly of parent and child. [I say *γαμική* and *τεκνοποιητική*, there being no words for the two latter notions which adequately represent them.] And there is another element  
 3 of a household, the so-called art of money-making, which, according to some, is identical with household management, according to others, a principal part of it; the nature of this art will also have to be considered by us.

Let us first speak of master and slave, looking to the needs of practical life and also seeking to attain some better  
 4 theory of their relation than exists at present. For some are of opinion that the rule of a master is a science, and that the management of a household, and the mastership of slaves, and the political and royal rule, as I was saying at the outset<sup>3</sup>, are all the same. Others affirm that the rule of a master

<sup>1</sup> Cp. N. Eth. v. 6. § 4.

<sup>2</sup> Reading with the MSS. *οικονομίας*.

<sup>3</sup> Plato in Pol. 258 E foll., referred to already in c. I. § 2.

over slaves is contrary to nature, and that the distinction **I. 3** between slave and freeman exists by law only, and not by nature; and being an interference with nature is therefore unjust.

Property is a part of the household, and therefore the art **4** of acquiring property is a part of the art of managing the household; for no man can live well, or indeed live at all, unless he be provided with necessities. And as in the arts which have a definite sphere the workers must have their own proper instruments for the accomplishment of their work, so it is in the management of a household. Now, instruments **2** are of various sorts; some are living, others lifeless; in the rudder, the pilot of a ship has a lifeless, in the look-out man, a living instrument; for in the arts the servant is a kind of instrument. Thus, too, a possession is an instrument for maintaining life. And so, in the arrangement of the family, a slave is a living possession, and property a number of such instruments; and the servant is himself an instrument, which takes precedence of all other instruments. For if **3** every instrument could accomplish its own work, obeying or anticipating the will of others, like the statues of Daedalus, or the tripods of Hephaestus, which, says the poet <sup>1</sup>,

‘of their own accord entered the assembly of the Gods’;  
if, in like manner, the shuttle would weave and the plectrum touch the lyre without a hand to guide them, chief workmen would not want servants, nor masters slaves. Here, how- **1254 a**  
ever, another distinction must be drawn: the instruments **4**  
commonly so called are instruments of production, whilst a possession is an instrument of action. The shuttle, for

<sup>1</sup> Hom. II. xviii. 376.

I. 4 example, is not only of use, but something else is made by it, whereas of a garment or of a bed there is only the use. Further, as production and action are different in kind, and both require instruments, the instruments which they  
 5 employ must likewise differ in kind. But life is action and not production, and therefore the slave is the minister of action [for he ministers to his master's life]. Again, a possession is spoken of as a part is spoken of; for the part is not only a part of something else, but wholly belongs to it; and this is also true of a possession. The master is only the master of the slave; he does not belong to him, whereas the slave is not only the slave of his master,  
 6 but wholly belongs to him. Hence we see what is the nature and office of a slave; he who is by nature not his own but another's and yet a man, is by nature a slave; and he may be said to belong to another who, being a human being, is also a possession. And a possession may be defined as an instrument of action, separable from the possessor.

5 But is there any one thus intended by nature to be a slave, and for whom such a condition is expedient and right, or rather is not all slavery a violation of nature?

There is no difficulty in answering this question, on  
 2 grounds both of reason and of fact. For that some should rule and others be ruled is a thing, not only necessary, but expedient; from the hour of their birth, some are marked out for subjection, others for rule.

And whereas there are many kinds both of rulers and subjects, that rule is the better which is exercised over better subjects—for example, to rule over men is better than to rule over wild beasts. The work is better which is executed



by better workmen; and where one man rules and another is ruled, they may be said to have a work. In all things which form a composite whole and which are made up of parts, whether continuous or discrete, a distinction between the ruling and the subject element comes to light. Such a duality exists in living creatures, but not in them only; it originates in the constitution of the universe; even in things which have no life, there is a ruling principle, as <sup>1</sup>in musical harmony<sup>1</sup>. But we are wandering from the subject. We will, therefore, restrict ourselves to the living creature which, in the first place, consists of soul and body: and of these two, the one is by nature the ruler, and the other the subject. But then we must look for the intentions of nature in things which retain their nature, and not in things which are corrupted. And therefore we must study the man who is in the most perfect state both of body and soul, for in him we shall see the true relation of the two; although in bad or corrupted natures the body will often appear to rule over the soul, because they are in an evil and unnatural condition. First then we may observe in living creatures both a despotical and a constitutional rule; for the soul rules the body with a despotical rule, whereas the intellect rules the appetites with a constitutional and royal rule. And it is clear that the rule of the soul over the body, and of the mind and the rational element over the passionate is natural and expedient; whereas the equality of the two or the rule of the inferior is always hurtful. The same holds good of animals as well as of men; for tame animals have a better nature than wild, and all tame animals are better off when they are ruled by man; for then they are preserved. Again,

<sup>1</sup> Or, 'of harmony [in music].'

## 34 *Slavery—Both Sides of the Question*

- I. 5 the male is by nature superior, and the female inferior; and the one rules, and the other is ruled; this principle, of necessity, extends to all mankind. Where then there is such a difference as that between soul and body, or between men and animals (as in the case of those whose business is to use their body, and who can do nothing better), the lower sort are by nature slaves, and it is better for them as for all 9 inferiors that they should be under the rule of a master. For he who can be, and therefore is another's, and he who participates in reason enough to apprehend, but not to have, reason, is a slave by nature. Whereas the lower animals cannot even apprehend reason; they obey their instincts. And indeed the use made of slaves and of tame animals is not very different; for both with their bodies minister to 10 the needs of life. Nature would like to distinguish between the bodies of freemen and slaves, making the one strong for servile labour, the other upright, and although useless for such services, useful for political life in the arts both of war and peace. But this does not hold universally: for some slaves have the souls and others have the bodies of freemen. And doubtless if men differed from one another in the mere forms of their bodies as much as the statues of the Gods do from men, all would acknowledge that the inferior class 11 should be slaves of the superior. And if there is a difference in the body, how much more in the soul! But the beauty of the 1255 a body is seen, whereas the beauty of the soul is not seen. It is clear, then, that some men are by nature free, and others slaves, and that for these latter slavery is both expedient and right.
- 6 But that those who take the opposite view have in a certain way right on their side, may be easily seen. For the words slavery and slave are used in two senses. There is a slave

## *Slavery—Both Sides of the Question* 35

or slavery by law as well as by nature. The law of which I. 6  
I speak is a sort of convention, according to which whatever  
is taken in war is supposed to belong to the victors. But 2  
this right many jurists impeach, as they would an orator who  
brought forward an unconstitutional measure: they detest the  
notion that, because one man has the power of doing violence  
and is superior in brute strength, another shall be his slave  
and subject. Even among philosophers there is a difference  
of opinion. The origin of the dispute, and the reason why 3  
the arguments cross, is as follows: Virtue, when furnished  
with means, may be deemed to have the greatest power of  
doing violence: and as superior power is only found where  
there is superior excellence of some kind, power is thought to  
imply virtue. But does it likewise imply justice?—that is the  
question. And, in order to make a distinction between them, 4  
some assert that justice is benevolence: to which others reply  
that justice is nothing more than the rule of a superior. If  
the two views are regarded as antagonistic and exclusive [i. e.  
if the notion that justice is benevolence excludes the idea of  
a just rule of a superior], the alternative [viz. that no one  
should rule over others<sup>1</sup>] has no force or plausibility, because  
it implies that not even the superior in virtue ought to rule, or  
be master. Some, clinging, as they think, to a principle of 5  
justice (for law and custom are a sort of justice), assume that  
slavery in war is justified by law, but they are not consistent.  
For what if the cause of the war be unjust? No one would  
ever say that he is a slave who is unworthy to be a slave.  
Were this the case, men of the highest rank would be slaves  
and the children of slaves if they or their parents chance to  
have been taken captive and sold. Wherefore Hellenes do 6

<sup>1</sup> Cp. § 2.

- I. 6 not like to call themselves slaves, but confine the term to barbarians. Yet, in using this language, they really mean the natural slave of whom we spoke at first; for it must be admitted that some are slaves everywhere, others nowhere.
- 7 The same principle applies to nobility. Hellenes regard themselves as noble everywhere, and not only in their own country, but they deem the barbarians noble only when at home, thereby implying that there are two sorts of nobility and freedom, the one absolute, the other relative. The Helen of Theodectes says:—

‘Who would presume to call me servant who am on both sides sprung from the stem of the Gods?’

- 8 What does this mean but that they distinguish freedom and slavery, noble and humble birth, by the two principles of  
 1255 b good and evil? They think that as men and animals beget men and animals, so from good men a good man springs. But this is what nature, though she may intend it, often fails to accomplish.
- 9 We see then that there is some foundation for this difference of opinion, and that some actual slaves and freemen are not so by nature, and also that there is in some cases a marked distinction between the two classes, rendering it expedient and right for the one to be slaves and the others to be masters: the one practising obedience, the others exercising the authority which nature intended them to have. The abuse of this  
 10 authority is injurious to both; for the interests of part and whole<sup>1</sup>, of body and soul, are the same, and the slave is a part of the master, a living but separated part of his bodily frame. Where the relation between them is natural they are friends

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 4. § 5.

and have a common interest, but where it rests merely on law **I. 6** and force the reverse is true.

The previous remarks are quite enough to show that the **7** rule of a master is not a constitutional rule, and therefore that all the different kinds of rule are not, as some affirm, the same with each other <sup>1</sup>. For there is one rule exercised over subjects who are by nature free, another over subjects who are by nature slaves. The rule of a household is a monarchy, for every house is under one head: whereas constitutional rule is a government of freemen and equals. The master is not <sup>2</sup> called a master because he has science, but because he is of a certain character, and the same remark applies to the slave and the freeman. Still there may be a science for the master and a science for the slave. The science of the slave would be such as the man of Syracuse taught, who made money by instructing slaves in their ordinary duties. And such a know- <sup>3</sup> ledge may be carried further, so as to include cookery and similar menial arts. For some duties are of the more necessary, others of the more honourable sort; as the proverb says, 'slave before slave, master before master.' But all such <sup>4</sup> branches of knowledge are servile. There is likewise a science of the master, which teaches the use of slaves; for the master as such is concerned, not with the acquisition, but with the use of them. Yet this so-called science is not anything great or wonderful; for the master need only know how to order that which the slave must know how to execute. Hence those <sup>5</sup> who are in a position which places them above toil, have stewards who attend to their households while they occupy themselves with philosophy or with politics. But the art of acquiring slaves, I mean of justly acquiring them, differs both

<sup>1</sup> Plato Pol. 258 E foll., referred to already in c. I. § 2.

### 38 *Property—What Place in the Household*

I. 7 from the art of the master and the art of the slave, being a species of hunting or war<sup>1</sup>. Enough of the distinction between master and slave.

1256 a Let us now enquire into property generally, and into the  
8 art of money-making, in accordance with our usual method [of resolving a whole into its parts<sup>2</sup>], for a slave has been shown to be a part of property. The first question is whether the art of money-making is the same with the art of managing a household or a part of it, or instrumental to it; and if the last, whether in the way that the art of making shuttles is instrumental to the art of weaving, or in the way that the casting of bronze is instrumental to the art of the statuary, for they are not instrumental in the same way, but the one provides tools and the other material; and by material I mean the substratum out of which any work is made; thus wool is the material of the weaver, bronze of the statuary. Now it is easy to see that the art of household management is not identical with the art of money-making, for the one uses the material which the other provides. And the art which uses household stores can be no other than the art of household management. There is, however, a doubt whether the art of money-making is a part of household management or a distinct  
3 art. [They appear to be connected]; for the money-maker has to consider whence money and property can be procured; but there are many sorts of property and wealth:—there is husbandry and the care and provision of food in general; are  
4 these parts of the money-making art or distinct arts? Again, there are many sorts of food, and therefore there are many kinds of lives both of animals and men; they must all have food, and the differences in their food have made differences

<sup>1</sup> Cp. vii. 14. § 21.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 1. § 3.

in their ways of life. For of beasts, some are gregarious, **I. 8** others are solitary; they live in the way which is best adapted **5** to sustain them, accordingly as they are carnivorous or herbivorous or omnivorous: and their habits are determined for them by nature in such a manner that they may obtain with greater facility the food of their choice. But, as different individuals have different tastes, the same things are not naturally pleasant to all of them; and therefore the lives of carnivorous or herbivorous animals further differ among themselves. In the lives of men too there is a great difference. **6** The laziest are shepherds, who lead an idle life, and get their subsistence without trouble from tame animals; their flocks having to wander from place to place in search of pasture, they are compelled to follow them, cultivating a sort of living farm. Others support themselves by hunting, which is **7** of different kinds. Some, for example, are pirates, others, who dwell near lakes or marshes or rivers or a sea in which there are fish, are fishermen, and others live by the pursuit of birds or wild beasts. The greater number obtain a living from the fruits of the soil. Such are the modes of subsistence **8** which prevail among those <sup>1</sup> whose industry is employed immediately upon the products of nature<sup>1</sup>, and whose food is not acquired by exchange and retail trade—there is the shep- **1250 b** herd, the husbandman, the pirate, the fisherman, the hunter. Some gain a comfortable maintenance out of two employments, eking out the deficiencies of one of them by another: thus the life of a shepherd may be combined with that of a brigand, the life of a farmer with that of a hunter. Other **9** modes of life are similarly combined in any way which the needs of men may require. Property, in the sense of a bare

<sup>1</sup> Or, 'whose labour is personal.'



- I. 8 livelihood, seems to be given by nature herself to all, both  
 10 when they are first born, and when they are grown up. For  
 some animals bring forth, together with their offspring, so  
 much food as will last until they are able to supply themselves;  
 of this the vermiparous or oviparous animals are an instance;  
 and the viviparous animals have up to a certain time a supply  
 of food for their young in themselves, which is called milk.
- 11 In like manner we may infer that, after the birth of animals,  
 plants exist for their sake, and that the other animals exist  
 for the sake of man, the tame for use and food, the wild, if  
 not all, at least the greater part of them, for food, and for the  
 12 provision of clothing and various instruments. Now if nature  
 makes nothing incomplete, and nothing in vain, the inference  
 must be that she has made all animals and plants for the sake  
 of man. And so, in one point of view, the art of war is  
 a natural art of acquisition, for it includes hunting, an art  
 which we ought to practise against wild beasts, and against  
 men who, though intended by nature to be governed, will not  
 submit; for war of such a kind is naturally just<sup>1</sup>.
- 13 Of the art of acquisition then there is one kind<sup>2</sup> which is  
 natural and is a part of the management of a household<sup>2</sup>.  
 Either we must suppose the necessities of life to exist pre-  
 viously, or the art of household management must provide  
 a store of them for the common use of the family or state.
- 14 They are the elements of true wealth; for the amount of  
 property which is needed for a good life is not unlimited,  
 although Solon in one of his poems says that,

‘No bound to riches has been fixed for man<sup>3</sup>.’

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 7. § 5, and vii. 14. § 21.

<sup>2</sup> Or, with Bernays, ‘which by nature is a part of the management of a household.’

<sup>3</sup> Bergk, Poet. Lyr. Solon, 13. v. 71.

But there is a boundary fixed, just as there is in the arts; for I. 8  
the instruments of any art are never unlimited, either in <sup>15</sup>  
number or size, and wealth may be defined as a number of  
instruments to be used in a household or in a state. And so  
we see that there is a natural art of acquisition which is prac-  
tised by managers of households and by statesmen, and what  
is the reason of this.

There is another variety of the art of acquisition which is 9  
commonly and rightly called the art of making money, and <sup>1257 a</sup>  
has in fact suggested the notion that wealth and property have  
no limit. Being nearly connected with the preceding, it is  
often identified with it. But though they are not very different,  
neither are they the same. The kind already described is  
given by nature, the other is gained by experience and art.

Let us begin our discussion of the question with the fol- 2  
lowing considerations:—

Of everything which we possess there are two uses: both  
belong to the thing as such, but not in the same manner, for  
one is the proper, and the other the improper or secondary  
use of it. For example, a shoe is used for wear, and is used  
for exchange; both are uses of the shoe. He who gives 3  
a shoe in exchange for money or food to him who wants  
one, does indeed use the shoe as a shoe, but this is not its  
proper or primary purpose, for a shoe is not made to be an  
object of barter. The same may be said of all possessions,  
for the art of exchange extends to all of them, and it 4  
arises at first in a natural manner from the circumstance  
that some have too little, others too much. Hence we may  
infer that retail trade is not a natural part of the art of money-  
making; had it been so, men would have ceased to exchange  
when they had enough. And in the first community, which 5

I. 9 is the family, this art is obviously of no use, but only begins to be useful when the society increases. For the members of the family originally had all things in common; in a more divided state of society they <sup>1</sup> still shared in many things, but they were different things<sup>1</sup> which they had to give in exchange for what they wanted, a kind of barter which is still  
 6 practised among barbarous nations who exchange with one another the necessaries of life and nothing more; giving and receiving wine, for example, in exchange for corn and the like. This sort of barter is not part of the money-making art and is not contrary to nature, but is needed for the satis-  
 7 faction of men's natural wants. The other or more complex form of exchange grew out of the simpler. When the inhabitants of one country became more dependent on those of another, and they imported what they needed, and exported  
 8 the surplus, money necessarily came into use. For the various necessaries of life are not easily carried about, and hence men agreed to employ in their dealings with each other something which was intrinsically useful and easily applicable to the purposes of life, for example, iron, silver, and the like. Of this the value was at first measured by size and weight, but in process of time they put a stamp upon it, to save the trouble of weighing and to mark the value.

1257 b When the use of coin had once been discovered, out of the  
 9 barter of necessary articles arose the other art of money-making, namely, retail trade; which was at first probably a simple matter, but became more complicated as soon as men learned by experience whence and by what exchanges the  
 10 greatest profit might be made. Originating in the use of coin, the art of money-making is generally thought to be chiefly

<sup>1</sup> Or, more simply, 'shared in many more things.'

concerned with it, and to be the art which produces wealth **I. 9** and money; having to consider how they may be accumulated. Indeed, wealth is assumed by many to be only a quantity of coin, because the art of money-making and retail trade are concerned with coin. Others maintain that coined money is **11** a mere sham, a thing not natural, but conventional only, which would have no value or use for any of the purposes of daily life if another commodity were substituted by the users. And, indeed, he who is rich in coin may often be in want of necessary food. But how can that be wealth of which a man may have a great abundance and yet perish with hunger, like Midas in the fable, whose insatiable prayer turned everything that was set before him into gold?

Men seek after a better notion of wealth and of the art of **12** making money than the mere acquisition of coin, and they are right. For natural wealth and the natural art of money-making are a different thing; in their true form they are part of the management of a household; whereas retail trade is the art of producing wealth, not in every way, but by exchange. And it seems to be concerned with coin; for coin is the starting-point and the goal of exchange. And **13** there is no bound to the wealth which springs from this art of money-making<sup>1</sup>. As in the art of medicine there is no limit to the pursuit of health, and as in the other arts there is no limit to the pursuit of their several ends, for they aim at accomplishing their ends to the uttermost; (but of the means there is a limit, for the end is always the limit), so, too, in this art of money-making there is no limit of the end, which is wealth of the spurious kind, and the acquisition of money. But the art of household management has a limit; **14**

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 8. § 14.

## 44 *Money-making in Excess Unnatural*

I. 9 the unlimited acquisition of money is not its business. And, therefore, in one point of view, all wealth must have a limit; nevertheless, as a matter of fact, we find the opposite to be the case; for all money-makers increase their hoard of coin without limit. The source of the confusion is the near  
 15 connexion between the two kinds of money-making; in either, the instrument [i. e. wealth] is the same, although the use is different, and so they pass into one another; for each is a use of the same property<sup>1</sup>, but with a difference: accumulation is the end in the one case, but there is a further end in the other. Hence some persons are led to believe that making money is the object of household management, and the whole idea of their lives is that they ought either to increase their money  
 16 without limit, or at any rate not to lose it. The origin of  
 1258 a this disposition in men is that they are intent upon living only, and not upon living well; and, as their desires are unlimited, they also desire that the means of gratifying them should be without limit. Even those who aim at a good life seek the means of obtaining bodily pleasures; and, since the enjoyment of these appears to depend on property, they are absorbed in making money: and so there arises the second species of  
 17 money-making. For, as their enjoyment is in excess, they seek an art which produces the excess of enjoyment; and, if they are not able to supply their pleasures by the art of money-making, they try other arts, using in turn every faculty in a manner contrary to nature. The quality of courage, for example, is not intended to make money, but to inspire confidence; neither is this the aim of the general's or of the physician's art; but the one aims at victory and the other at  
 18 health. Nevertheless, some men turn every quality or art

<sup>1</sup> Reading κτήσεως χρήσις.

into a means of making money; this they conceive to be **I. 9** the end, and to the promotion of the end all things must contribute.

Thus, then, we have considered the art of money-making, which is unnecessary, and why men want it; and also the necessary art of money-making, which we have seen to be different from the other, and to be a natural part of the art of managing a household, concerned with the provision of food, not, however, like the former kind, unlimited, but having a limit.

And we have found the answer to our original question<sup>1</sup>, **10** Whether the art of money-making is the business of the manager of a household and of the statesman or not their business?—viz. that it is an art which is presupposed by them. For political science does not make men, but takes them from nature and uses them; and nature provides them with food from the element of earth, air, or sea. At this stage begins the duty of the manager of a household, who has to order the things which nature supplies;—he may be compared to the **2** weaver who has not to make but to use wool, and to know what sort of wool is good and serviceable or bad and un-serviceable. Were this otherwise, it would be difficult to see why the art of money-making is a part of the management of a household and the art of medicine not; for surely the members of a household must have health just as they must have life or any other necessary. And as from one point **3** of view the master of the house and the ruler of the state have to consider about health, from another point of view not they but the physician; so in one way the art of household management, in another way the subordinate art, has to

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 8. § 1.

I. 10 consider about money. But, strictly speaking, as I have already said, the means of life must be provided beforehand by nature; for the business of nature is to furnish food to that which is born, and the food of the offspring always  
4 remains over in the parent<sup>1</sup>. Wherefore the art of making money out of fruits and animals is always natural.

Of the two sorts of money-making one, as I have just said, is a part of household management, the other is retail trade: the former necessary and honourable, the latter a kind  
1258 b of exchange which is justly censured; for it is unnatural, and a mode by which men gain from one another. The most hated sort, and with the greatest reason, is usury, which makes a gain out of money itself, and not from the natural use  
5 of it. For money was intended to be used in exchange, but not to increase at interest. And this term usury [τόκος], which means the birth of money from money, is applied to the breeding of money because the offspring resembles the parent. Wherefore of all modes of making money this is the most unnatural.

11 Enough has been said about the theory of money-making; we will now proceed to the practical part. <sup>2</sup>The discussion of such matters is not unworthy of philosophy, but to be engaged in them practically is illiberal and irksome<sup>2</sup>. The useful parts of money-making are, first, the knowledge of live-stock,—which are most profitable, and where, and how,—as, for example, what sort of horses or sheep or oxen or any other animals are most likely to give a return.  
2 A man ought to know which of these pay better than others,

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 8. § 10.

<sup>2</sup> Or, 'We are free to speculate about them, but in practice we are limited by circumstances.' (Bernays.)



and which pay best in particular places, for some do better in I. 11 one place and some in another. Secondly, husbandry, which may be either tillage or planting, and the keeping of bees and of fish, or fowl, or of any animals which may be useful to man. These are the divisions of the true or proper art of 3 money-making and come first. Of the other, which consists in exchange, the first and most important division is commerce (of which there are three kinds—commerce by sea, commerce by land, selling in shops—these again differing as they are safer or more profitable), the second is usury, the third, service for hire—of this, one kind is employed in the 4 mechanical arts, the other in unskilled and bodily labour. There is still a third sort of money-making intermediate between this and the first or natural mode which is partly natural, but is also concerned with exchange of the fruits and other products of the earth. Some of these latter, although they bear no fruit, are nevertheless profitable; for example, wood and minerals. The art of mining, by which minerals 5 are obtained, has many branches, for there are various kinds of things dug out of the earth. Of the several divisions of money-making I now speak generally; a minute consideration of them might be useful in practice, but it would be tiresome to dwell upon them at greater length now.

Those occupations are most truly arts in which there is 6 the least element of chance; they are the meanest in which the body is most deteriorated, the most servile in which there is the greatest use of the body, and the illiberal in which there is the least need of excellence.

Works have been written upon these subjects by various 7 persons; for example, by Chares the Parian, and Apollodorus the Lemnian, who have treated of Tillage and Planting,

- I. 11 while others have treated of other branches; any one who  
 1259 a cares for such matters may refer to their writings. It  
 would be well also to collect the scattered stories of the ways  
 in which individuals have succeeded in amassing a fortune;  
 8 for all this is useful to persons who value the art of making  
 money. There is the anecdote of Thales the Milesian and  
 his financial device, which involves a principle of universal  
 application, but is attributed to him on account of his reputa-  
 9 tion for wisdom. He was reproached for his poverty,  
 which was supposed to show that philosophy was of no use.  
 According to the story, he knew by his skill in the stars  
 while it was yet winter that there would be a great harvest of  
 olives in the coming year; so, having a little capital, he gave  
 earnest-money for the use of all the olive-presses in Chios and  
 Miletus, which he hired at a low price because no one bid  
 against him. When the harvest-time came, and many wanted  
 them all at once and of a sudden, he let them out at any rate  
 which he pleased, and made a quantity of money. Thus he  
 showed the world that philosophers can easily be rich if  
 10 they like, but that their ambition is of another sort. He is  
 supposed to have given a striking proof of his wisdom, but, as  
 I was saying, his device for getting money is of universal  
 application, and is nothing but the creation of a monopoly.  
 It is an art often practised by cities when they are in want of  
 money; they make a monopoly of provisions.
- 11 There was a man of Sicily, who, having money deposited  
 with him, bought up all the iron from the iron mines; after-  
 wards, when the merchants from their various markets came  
 to buy, he was the only seller, and without much increasing  
 12 the price he gained 200 per cent. Which when Dionysius  
 heard, he told him that he might take away his money, but

that he must not remain at Syracuse, for he thought that the **I. 11** man had discovered a way of making money which was injurious to his own interests. He had the same idea<sup>1</sup> as Thales; they both contrived to create a monopoly for themselves. And statesmen ought to know these things; for a **13** state is often as much in want of money and of such devices for obtaining it as a household, or even more so; hence some public men devote themselves entirely to finance.

Of household management we have seen<sup>2</sup> that there are **12** three parts—one is the rule of a master over slaves, which has been discussed already<sup>3</sup>, another of a father, and the third of a husband. A husband and father rules over wife and children, both free, but the rule differs, the rule over his children being a royal, over his wife a constitutional rule. **1259 b** For although there may be exceptions to the order of nature, the male is by nature fitter for command than the female, just as the elder and full-grown is superior to the younger and more immature. But in most constitutional states the citizens **2** rule and are ruled by turns, for the idea of a constitutional state implies that the natures of the citizens are equal, and do not differ at all<sup>4</sup>. Nevertheless, when one rules and the other is ruled we endeavour to create a difference of outward forms and modes of address and titles of respect, which may be illustrated by the saying of Amasis about his foot-pan<sup>5</sup>. The relation of the male to the female is of this kind, but **3** there the inequality is permanent. The rule of a father over his children is royal, for he receives both love and the respect due to age, exercising a kind of royal power. And therefore

<sup>1</sup> Reading *εὕρημα* with Bernays.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 3. § 1.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. c. 3-7.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. ii. 2. § 6; iii. 17. § 4.

<sup>5</sup> Herod. ii. 172, and note on this passage.

- I. 12** Homer has appropriately called Zeus 'father of Gods and men,' because he is the king of them all. For a king is the natural superior of his subjects, but he should be of the same kin or kind with them, and such is the relation of elder and younger, of father and son.
- 13** Thus it is clear that household management attends more to men than to the acquisition of inanimate things, and to human excellence more than to the excellence of property which we call wealth, and to the virtue of freemen more than  
 2 to the virtue of slaves. A question may indeed be raised, whether there is any excellence at all in a slave beyond merely instrumental and ministerial qualities—whether he can have the virtues of temperance, courage, justice, and the like; or whether slaves possess only bodily and ministerial qualities. And, whichever way we answer the question, a difficulty  
 3 arises; for, if they have virtue, in what will they differ from freemen? On the other hand, since they are men and share in reason, it seems absurd to say that they have no virtue. A similar question may be raised about women and children, whether they too have virtues: ought a woman to be temperate and brave and just, and is a child to be called temperate,  
 4 and intemperate, or not? So in general we may ask about the natural ruler, and the natural subject, whether they have the same or different virtues. For a noble nature is equally required in both, but if so, why should one of them always rule, and the other always be ruled? Nor can we say that this is a question of degree, for the difference between ruler and subject is a difference of kind, and therefore not of degree; yet how strange is the supposition that the one  
 5 ought, and that the other ought not, to have virtue! For if the ruler is intemperate and unjust, how can he rule well?

if the subject, how can he obey well? If he be licentious **I. 13**  
and cowardly, he will certainly not do his duty. It is evident, <sup>1260 a</sup>  
therefore, that both of them must have a share of virtue, but  
varying according to their various natures. And this is at 6  
once indicated by the soul, in which one part naturally rules,  
and the other is subject, and the virtue of the ruler we main-  
tain to be different from that of the subject;—the one being  
the virtue of the rational, and the other of the irrational part.  
Now, it is obvious that the same principle applies generally,  
and therefore almost all things rule and are ruled according to  
nature. But the kind of rule differs;—the freeman rules over 7  
the slave after another manner from that in which the male  
rules over the female, or the man over the child; although  
the parts of the soul are present in all of them, they are pre-  
sent in different degrees. For the slave has no deliberative  
faculty at all; the woman has, but it is <sup>1</sup>without authority<sup>1</sup>,  
and the child has, but it is immature. So it must necessarily 8  
be with the moral virtues also; all may be supposed to partake  
of them, but only in such manner and degree as is required by  
each for the fulfilment of his duty. Hence the ruler ought  
to have moral virtue in perfection, for his duty is entirely  
that of a master artificer, and the master artificer is reason;  
the subjects, on the other hand, require only that measure of  
virtue which is proper to each of them. Clearly, then, moral<sup>9</sup>  
virtue belongs to all of them; but the temperance of a man  
and of a woman, or the courage and justice of a man and of  
a woman, are not, as Socrates maintained<sup>2</sup>, the same; the  
courage of a man is shown in commanding, of a woman in  
obeying. And this holds of all other virtues, as will be more<sup>10</sup>  
clearly seen if we look at them in detail, for those who say

<sup>1</sup> Or, with Bernays, 'inconclusive.'

<sup>2</sup> Plato Meno, 71-73.

I. 13 generally that virtue consists in a good disposition of the soul, or in doing rightly, or the like, only deceive themselves. Far better than such definitions is their mode of speaking, 11 who, like Georgias<sup>1</sup>, enumerate the virtues. All classes must be deemed to have their special attributes; as the poet says of women,

‘Silence is a woman’s glory<sup>2</sup>,’

but this is not equally the glory of man. The child is imperfect, and therefore obviously his virtue is not relative to him- 12 self alone, but to the perfect man and to his teacher<sup>3</sup>, and in like manner the virtue of the slave is relative to a master. Now we determined that a slave is useful for the wants of life, and therefore he will obviously require only so much virtue as will prevent him from failing in his duty through cowardice and intemperance. Some one will ask whether, if what we are saying is true, virtue will not be required also in the artisans, for they often fail in their work through misconduct. 13 But is there not a great difference in the two cases? For the slave shares in his master’s life; the artisan is less closely connected with him, and only attains excellence in proportion as he becomes a slave, [i. e. is under the direction of a master]. The meaner sort of mechanic has a special 1260 b and separate slavery; and whereas the slave exists by nature, 14 not so the shoemaker or other artisan. It is manifest, then, that the master ought to be the source of excellence in the slave; but not merely because he possesses the art which trains him in his duties<sup>4</sup>. Wherefore they are mistaken who forbid us to converse with slaves and say that we should employ

<sup>1</sup> Plato Meno, 71-73.

<sup>3</sup> ‘His father who guides him’ (Bernays).

<sup>2</sup> Soph. Aj. 293.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. c. 7. § 4.

command only<sup>1</sup>, for slaves stand even more in need of admonition than children. I. 13

The relations of husband and wife, parent and child, their several virtues, what in their intercourse with one another is good, and what is evil, and how we may pursue the good and escape the evil, will have to be discussed when we speak of the different forms of government. For, inasmuch as every family is a part of a state, and these relationships are the parts of a family, the virtue of the part must have regard to the virtue of the whole. And therefore women and children must be trained by education with an eye to the state<sup>2</sup>, if the virtues of either of them are supposed to make any difference in the virtues of the state. And they must make a difference: 16 for the children grow up to be citizens, and half the free persons in a state are women<sup>3</sup>.

Of these matters, enough has been said; of what remains, 14 let us speak at another time. Regarding, then, our present enquiry as complete, we will make a new beginning. And, first, let us examine the various theories of a perfect state.

<sup>1</sup> Plato *Laws*, vi. 777.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. v. 9. §§ 11-15; viii. 1. § 1.

<sup>3</sup> Plato *Laws*, vi. 781 B.



## BOOK II

**II. 1** OUR purpose is to consider what form of political community is best of all for those who are most able to realize their ideal of life. We must therefore examine not only this but other constitutions, both such as actually exist in well-governed states, and any theoretical forms which are held in esteem; that what is good and useful may be brought to light. And let no one suppose that in seeking for something beyond them<sup>1</sup> we at all want to philosophize at the expense of truth<sup>1</sup>; we only undertake this enquiry because all the constitutions with which we are acquainted are faulty.

**2** We will begin with the natural beginning of the subject. Three alternatives are conceivable: The members of a state must either have (1) all things or (2) nothing in common, or (3) some things in common and some not. That they should have nothing in common is clearly impossible, for the state is a community, and must at any rate have a common place—  
**1261 a** one city will be in one place, and the citizens are those who  
**3** share in that one city. But should a well-ordered state have all things, as far as may be, in common, or some only and not others? For the citizens might conceivably have wives and children and property in common, as Socrates proposes in the Republic of Plato<sup>2</sup>. Which is better, our present condition, or the proposed new order of society?

<sup>1</sup> Or, as Bernays, taking πάντως with σοφίζεσθαι βουλομένων, 'we are anxious to make a sophistical display at any cost.'

<sup>2</sup> Rep. v. 457 c.

There are many difficulties in the community of women. II. 2

The principle on which Socrates rests the necessity of such an institution does not appear to be established by his arguments; and then again as a means to the end which he ascribes to the state, taken literally, it is impossible, and how we are to limit and qualify it is nowhere precisely stated. I am speaking of the premiss from which the argument of Socrates proceeds, 'that the greater the unity of the state the better.' Is it not obvious that a state may at length attain such a degree of unity as to be no longer a state?—since the nature of a state is to be a plurality, and in tending to greater unity, from being a state, it becomes a family, and from being a family, an individual; for the family may be said to be more one than the state, and the individual than the family. So that we ought not to attain this greatest unity even if we could, for it would be the destruction of the state. Again, a state is not made up only of so many men, but of different kinds of men; for similars do not constitute a state. It is not like a military alliance, of which the usefulness depends upon its quantity even where there is no difference in quality. For in that mutual protection is the end aimed at; and the question is the same as about the scales of a balance: which is the heavier?

In like manner, a state differs from a nation, whenever in a nation the people are not dispersed in villages, but are in the condition of the Arcadians; in a state the elements out of which the unity is to be formed differ in kind. Wherefore the principle of reciprocity<sup>1</sup>, as I have already remarked in the Ethics<sup>2</sup>, is the salvation of states. And among freemen and equals this is a principle which must be maintained, for

<sup>1</sup> Or, 'reciprocal proportion.'

<sup>2</sup> N. Eth. v. 8. § 6.

- II. 2 they cannot all rule together, but must change at the end of a year or some other period of time or in some order of succession. The result is that upon this plan they all govern; [but the manner of government is] just as if shoemakers and carpenters were to exchange their occupations, and the same persons did not always continue shoemakers and carpenters.
- 6 And it is clearly better that, as in business, so also in politics there should be continuance of the same persons where this
- 1261 b is possible. But where this is not possible by reason of the natural equality of the citizens, and it would be unjust that any one should be excluded from the government (whether to govern be a good thing or a bad<sup>1</sup>), then it is better, instead of all holding power, to adopt a principle of rotation, equals giving place to equals, as the original rulers gave place
- 7 to them<sup>2</sup>. Thus the one party rule and the others are ruled in turn, as if they were no longer the same persons. In like manner there is a variety in the offices held by them. Hence it is evident that a city is not by nature one in that sense which some persons affirm; and that what is said to be the greatest good of cities is in reality their destruction; but surely the good of things must be that which preserves them<sup>3</sup>.
- 8 Again, in another point of view, this extreme unification of the state is clearly not good; for a family is more self-sufficing than an individual, and a city than a family, and a city only comes into being when the community is large enough to be self-sufficing. If then self-sufficiency is to be desired, the lesser degree of unity is more desirable than the greater.
- 3 But, even supposing that it were best for the community to

<sup>1</sup> Cp. *Pl. Rep.* i. 345-6.<sup>2</sup> *Cp.* i. 12. § 2; iii. 17. § 4.<sup>3</sup> *Cp. Pl. Rep.* i. 352.

have the greatest degree of unity, this unity is by no means **II. 3** indicated by the fact 'of all men saying "mine" and "not mine" at the same instant of time,' which, according to Socrates<sup>1</sup>, is the sign of perfect unity in a state. For the <sup>2</sup> word 'all' is ambiguous. If the meaning be that every individual says 'mine' and 'not mine' at the same time, then perhaps the result at which Socrates aims may be in some degree accomplished; each man will call the same person his own son and his own wife, and so of his property and of all that belongs to him. This, however, is not the way in which people would speak who had their wives and children in common; they would say 'all' but not 'each.' In like man- <sup>3</sup> ner their property would be described as belonging to them, not severally but collectively. There is an obvious fallacy in the term 'all': like some other words, 'both,' 'odd,' 'even,' it is ambiguous, and in argument becomes a source of logical puzzles. That all persons call the same thing mine in the sense in which each does so may be a fine thing, but it is impracticable; or if the words are taken in the other sense [i. e. the sense which distinguishes 'all' from 'each'], such a unity in no way conduces to harmony. And there is <sup>4</sup> another objection to the proposal. For that which is common to the greatest number has the least care bestowed upon it. Every one thinks chiefly of his own, hardly at all of the common interest; and only when he is himself concerned as an individual. For besides other considerations, everybody is more inclined to neglect the duty which he expects another to fulfil; as in families many attendants are often less useful than a few. Each citizen will have a thousand sons who will not <sup>5</sup> be his sons individually, but anybody will be equally the son

<sup>1</sup> Pl. Rep. v. 462 c.

II. 3 of anybody, and will therefore be neglected by all alike.

1262<sup>a</sup> Further, upon this principle, every one will call another 'mine' or 'not mine' according as he is prosperous or the reverse;—however small a fraction he may be of the whole number, he will say of every individual of the thousand, or whatever be the number of the city, 'such a one is mine,' 'such a one his'; and even about this he will not be positive; for it is impossible to know who chanced to have a child, or whether, if one came into existence, it has survived.

6 But which is better—to be able to say 'mine' about every one of the two thousand or the ten thousand citizens, or to use the word 'mine' in the ordinary and more restricted  
7 sense? For usually the same person is called by one man his son whom another calls his brother or cousin or kinsman or blood-relation or connexion by marriage either of himself or of some relation of his, and these relationships he distinguishes from the tie which binds him to his tribe or ward; and how much better is it to be the real cousin of somebody  
8 than to be a son after Plato's fashion! Nor is there any way of preventing brothers and children and fathers and mothers from sometimes recognizing one another; for children are born like their parents, and they will necessarily be  
9 finding indications of their relationship to one another. Geographers declare such to be the fact; they say that in Upper Libya, where the women are common, nevertheless the children who are born are assigned to their respective fathers on the ground of their likeness<sup>1</sup>. And some women, like the females of other animals—for example mares and cows—have a strong tendency to produce offspring resembling their

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Herod. iv. 180.

parents, as was the case with the Pharsalian mare called **II. 3** Dicaea (the Just)<sup>1</sup>.

Other evils, against which it is not easy for the authors of **4** such a community to guard, will be assaults and homicides, voluntary as well as involuntary, quarrels and slanders, all which are most unholy acts when committed against fathers and mothers and near relations, but not equally unholy when there is no relationship. Moreover, they are much more likely to occur if the relationship is unknown, and, when they have occurred, the customary expiations of them cannot be made. Again, how strange it is that Socrates, after <sup>2</sup> having made the children common, should hinder lovers from carnal intercourse only, but should permit familiarities between father and son or between brother and brother, than which nothing can be more unseemly, since even without them, love of this sort is improper. How strange, <sup>3</sup> too, to forbid intercourse for no other reason than the violence of the pleasure, as though the relationship of father and son or of brothers with one another made no difference.

This community of wives and children seems better <sup>4</sup> suited to the husbandmen than to the guardians, for if they have wives and children in common, they will be bound <sup>1262 b</sup> to one another by weaker ties, as a subject class should be, and they will remain obedient and not rebel <sup>2</sup>. In a word, the <sup>5</sup> result of such a law would be just the opposite of that which good laws ought to have, and the intention of Socrates in making these regulations about women and children would defeat itself. For friendship we believe to be the greatest good of states <sup>3</sup> and the preservative of them against revolutions ;

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Hist. Anim. vii. 6, p. 586 a. 13.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. vii. 10. § 13.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. N. Eth. viii. 1. § 4.

II. 4 neither is there anything which Socrates so greatly lauds as the unity of the state which he and all the world declare to be created by friendship. But the unity which he commends<sup>1</sup> would be like that of the lovers in the Symposium<sup>2</sup>, who, as Aristophanes says, desire to grow together in the excess of their affection, and from being two to  
 7 become one, in which case one or both would certainly perish. Whereas [the very opposite will really happen;] in a state having women and children common, love will be watery; and the father will certainly not say 'my son,' or  
 8 the son 'my father<sup>3</sup>.' As a little sweet wine mingled with a great deal of water is imperceptible in the mixture, so, in this sort of community, the idea of relationship which is based upon these names will be lost; there is no reason why the so-called father should care about the son, or the son about the father, or brothers about one another.  
 9 Of the two qualities which chiefly inspire regard and affection—that a thing is your own and that you love it—neither can exist in such a state as this.

Again, the transfer of children as soon as they are born from the rank of husbandmen or of artisans to that of guardians, and from the rank of guardians into a lower rank<sup>4</sup>, will be very difficult to arrange; the givers or transferrers cannot but know whom they are giving and transferring, and  
 10 to whom. And the previously mentioned evils, such as assaults, unlawful loves, homicides, will happen more often amongst those who are transferred to the lower classes, or who have a place assigned to them among the guardians; for they will no longer call the members of any other class

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 2.<sup>2</sup> Symp. 189-193.<sup>3</sup> Cp. c. 3.<sup>4</sup> Rep. iii. 415.



brothers, and children, and fathers, and mothers, and will **II. 4** not, therefore, be afraid of committing any crimes by reason of consanguinity. Touching the community of wives and children, let this be our conclusion.

Next let us consider what should be our arrangements **5** about property : should the citizens of the perfect state have their possessions in common or not? This question may **2** be discussed separately from the enactments about women and children. Even supposing that the women and children **1268 a** belong to individuals, according to the custom which is at present universal, may there not be an advantage in having and using possessions in common? Three cases are possible : (1) the soil may be appropriated, but the produce may be thrown for consumption into the common stock ; and this is the practice of some nations. Or (2), the soil may be common, and may be cultivated in common, but the produce divided among individuals for their private use ; this is a form of common property which is said to exist among certain barbarians. Or (3), the soil and the produce may be alike common.

When the husbandmen are not the citizens, the case will **3** be different and easier to deal with ; but when the citizens till the ground themselves the question of ownership will give a world of trouble. If they do not share equally in enjoyments and toils, those who labour much and get little will necessarily complain of those who labour little and receive or consume much. There is always a difficulty in men living together and **4** having things in common, but especially in their having common property. The partnerships of fellow-travellers are an example to the point ; for they generally fall out by the way and quarrel about any trifle which turns up. So

II. 5 with servants: we are most liable to take offence at those with whom we most frequently come into contact in daily life.

5 These are only some of the disadvantages which attend the community of property; the present arrangement, if improved as it might be by good customs and laws, would be far better, and would have the advantages of both systems. Property should be in a certain sense common, but, as a  
6 general rule, private; for, when every one has a distinct interest<sup>1</sup>, men will not complain of one another, and they will make more progress, because every one will be attending to his own business. And yet among the good, and in respect of use, 'Friends,' as the proverb says, 'will have all things common<sup>2</sup>.' Even now there are traces of such a principle, showing that it is not impracticable, but, in well-ordered states, exists already to a certain extent and may  
7 be carried further. For, although every man has his own property, some things he will place at the disposal of his friends, while of others he shares the use with them. The Lacedaemonians, for example, use one another's slaves, and horses and dogs, as if they were their own; and when they happen to be in the country, they appropriate in the fields  
8 whatever provisions they want. It is clearly better that property should be private, but the use of it common; and the special business of the legislator is to create in men this benevolent disposition. Again, how immeasurably greater is the pleasure,  
1263 b when a man feels a thing to be his own; for the love of self<sup>3</sup> is a feeling implanted by nature and not given in vain,  
9 although selfishness is rightly censured; this, however, is not

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Rep. ii. 374.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. Rep. iv. 424 A.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. N. Eth. ix. 8, § 6.

the mere love of self, but the love of self in excess, like **II. 5** the miser's love of money; for all, or almost all, men love money, and other such objects in a measure. And further, there is the greatest pleasure in doing a kindness or service to friends or guests or companions, which can only be rendered when a man has private property. The advantage is lost by **10** the excessive unification of the state. Two virtues are annihilated in such a state: first, temperance towards women (for it is an honourable action to abstain from another's wife for temperance sake); secondly, liberality in the matter of property. No one, when men have all things in common, will any longer set an example of liberality or do any liberal action; for liberality consists in the use which is made of property<sup>1</sup>.

Such legislation may have a specious appearance of **11** benevolence; men readily listen to it, and are easily induced to believe that in some wonderful manner everybody will become everybody's friend, especially when some one<sup>2</sup> is heard denouncing the evils now existing in states, suits about contracts, convictions for perjury, flatteries of rich men and the like, which are said to arise out of the possession of private property. These evils, however, are due to a very **12** different cause—the wickedness of human nature. Indeed, we see that there is much more quarrelling among those who have all things in common, though there are not many of them when compared with the vast numbers who have private property.

Again, we ought to reckon, not only the evils from **13** which the citizens will be saved, but also the advantages which they will lose. The life which they are to lead appears

<sup>1</sup> Cp. N. Eth. iv. 1. § 1.

<sup>2</sup> Rep. v. 464, 465.

- II. 5 to be quite impracticable. The error of Socrates must be attributed to the false notion of unity from which he starts.
- 14 Unity there should be, both of the family and of the state, but in some respects only. For there is a point at which a state may attain such a degree of unity as to be no longer a state, or at which, without actually ceasing to exist, it will become an inferior state, like harmony passing into unison,
- 15 or rhythm which has been reduced to a single foot. The state, as I was saying, is a plurality<sup>1</sup>, which should be united and made into a community by education; and it is strange that the author of a system of education, which he thinks will make the state virtuous, should expect to improve his citizens by regulations of this sort, and not by philosophy or by customs and laws, like those which prevail at Sparta and Crete respecting common meals, where-
- 1264 a by the legislator has [to a certain degree] made property
- 16 common. Let us remember that we should not disregard the experience of ages; in the multitude of years these things, if they were good, would certainly not have been unknown; for almost everything has been found out, although sometimes they are not put together; in other cases men do not use the
- 17 knowledge which they have. Great light would be thrown on this subject if we could see such a form of government in the actual process of construction; for the legislator could not form a state at all without distributing and dividing the citizens into associations for common meals, and into phratries and tribes. But all this legislation ends only in forbidding agriculture to the guardians, a prohibition which the Lacedaemonians try to enforce already.
- 18 Again, Socrates has not said, nor is it easy to decide,

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 2. § 2.

what in such a community will be the general form of the II. 5  
state. The citizens who are not guardians are the majority,  
and about them nothing has been determined: are the  
husbandmen, too, to have their property in common? Or,  
besides the common land which he tills, is each individual  
to have his own? and are their wives and children to  
be individual or common? If, like the guardians, they are to 19  
have all things in common, in what do they differ from them,  
or what will they gain by submitting to their government?  
Or, upon what principle would they submit, unless indeed  
the governing class adopt the ingenious policy of the Cretans,  
who give their slaves the same institutions as their own,  
but forbid them gymnastic exercises and the possession of  
arms. If, on the other hand, the inferior classes are too 20  
like other cities in respect of marriage and property, what will  
be the form of the community? Must it not contain two  
states in one<sup>1</sup>, each hostile to the other? <sup>2</sup> One class will  
consist of the guardians, who are a sort of watchmen;  
another, of the husbandmen, and there will be the artisans and  
the other citizens<sup>3</sup>. But [if so] the suits and quarrels, and all 21  
the evils which Socrates affirms<sup>3</sup> to exist in other states, will  
exist equally among them. He says indeed that, having so  
good an education, the citizens will not need many laws, for  
example, laws about the city or about the markets<sup>4</sup>; but then  
he confines his education to the guardians. Again, he makes 22  
the husbandmen owners of the land upon condition of their  
paying a tribute<sup>5</sup>. But in that case they are likely to be much

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Rep. iv. 422 E.

<sup>2</sup> Or (with Bernays), 'He makes the guardians into a mere occupying garrison, while the husbandmen and artisans and the rest are the real citizens;' see note.

<sup>3</sup> Rep. v. 464, 465.

<sup>4</sup> Rep. iv. 425 D.

<sup>5</sup> Rep. v. 464 C.

**II. 5** more unmanageable and conceited than the Helots, or  
 23 Penestae, or slaves in general<sup>1</sup>. And whether community  
 of wives and property be necessary for the lower equally  
 with the higher class or not, and the questions akin to this,  
 what will be the education, form of government, laws of  
 the lower class, Socrates has nowhere determined: neither  
 is it easy, though very important, to discover what should  
 be the character of the inferior classes, if the common life of  
 the guardians is to be maintained.

1264 b Again, if Socrates makes the women common, and retains  
 24 private property, the men will see to the fields, but who  
 will see to the house? <sup>2</sup> And what will happen if the  
 agricultural class have both their property and their wives  
 in common<sup>2</sup>? Once more; it is absurd to argue, from  
 the analogy of the animals, that men and women should  
 follow the same pursuits<sup>3</sup>; for animals have not to manage  
 25 a household. The government, too, as constituted by  
 Socrates, contains elements of danger; for he makes the same  
 persons always rule. And if this is often a cause of dis-  
 turbance among the meaner sort, how much more among high-  
 26 spirited warriors? But that the persons whom he makes  
 rulers must be the same is evident; for the gold which the  
 God mingles in the souls of men is not at one time given to  
 one, at another time to another, but always to the same: as  
 he says, ‘God mingles gold in some, and silver in others,  
 from their very birth; but brass and iron in those who are  
 27 meant to be artisans and husbandmen<sup>4</sup>.’ Again, he deprives  
 the guardians of happiness, and says that the legislator ought  
 to make the whole state happy<sup>5</sup>. But the whole cannot

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 9. § 2.

<sup>2</sup> These words are bracketed by Bekker.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. Rep. v. 451 D.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. Rep. iii. 415 A.

<sup>5</sup> Rep. iv. 419, 420.

be happy unless most, or all, or some of its parts enjoy **II. 5** happiness<sup>1</sup>. In this respect happiness is not like the even principle in numbers, which may exist only in the whole, but in none of the parts; not so happiness. And if the 28 guardians are not happy, who are? Surely not the artisans, or the common people. The Republic of which Socrates discourses has all these difficulties, and others quite as great.

The same, or nearly the same, objections apply to Plato's **6** later work, the Laws, and therefore we had better examine briefly the constitution which is therein described. In the Republic, Socrates has definitely settled in all a few questions only; such as the community of women and children, the community of property, and the constitution of the state. The population is divided into two classes—one of husband-**■** men, and the other of warriors; from this latter is taken a third class of counsellors and rulers of the state. But **3** Socrates has not determined whether the husbandmen and artisans are to have a share in the government, and whether they, too, are to carry arms and share in military service, or not. He certainly thinks that the women ought to share in the education of the guardians, and to fight by their side. The remainder of the work is filled up with digressions foreign to the main subject, and with discussions about the education of the guardians. In the Laws there is hardly <sup>1265 a</sup> anything but laws; not much is said about the constitution. <sup>4</sup> This, which he had intended to make more of the ordinary type, he gradually brings round to the other or ideal form. For with the exception of the community of women and **5** property, he supposes everything to be the same in both

<sup>1</sup> Cp. vii. 9. § 7.



II. 6 states; there is to be the same education; the citizens of both are to live free from servile occupations, and there are to be common meals in both. The only difference is that in the Laws, the common meals are extended to women<sup>1</sup>, and the warriors number about 5000<sup>2</sup>, but in the Republic only 1000<sup>3</sup>.

6 The discourses of Socrates are never commonplace; they always exhibit grace and originality and thought; but perfection in everything can hardly be expected. We must not overlook the fact that the number of 5000 citizens, just now mentioned, will require a territory as large as Babylonia, or some other huge country, if so many persons are to be supported in idleness, together with their women and attendants,  
7 who will be a multitude many times as great. [In framing an ideal] we may assume what we wish, but should avoid impossibilities<sup>4</sup>.

It is said [in the Laws] that the legislator ought to have his eye directed to two points,—the people and the country<sup>5</sup>. But neighbouring countries also must not be forgotten by him<sup>6</sup>, if the state for which he legislates is to have a true political life<sup>7</sup>. For a state must have such a military force as will be serviceable against her neighbours, and not merely  
8 useful at home. Even if the life of action is not admitted to be the best, either for individuals or states<sup>8</sup>, still a city should be formidable to enemies, whether invading or retreating.

There is another point: Should not the amount of property be defined in some clearer way? For Socrates says

<sup>1</sup> Laws, vi. 781.

<sup>2</sup> Laws, v. 737 E.

<sup>3</sup> Rep. iv. 423 A (but see note on this passage).

<sup>4</sup> Cp. vii. 4. § 2.

<sup>5</sup> Perhaps Laws, 703-707 and 747 D (?).

<sup>6</sup> Cp. c. 7. § 14.

<sup>7</sup> Cp. vii. 6. § 7.

<sup>8</sup> Cp. vii. c. 2 and 3.

that a man should have so much property as will enable him **II. 6**  
to live temperately<sup>1</sup>, which is only a way of saying 'to live  
well'; this would be the higher or more general conception.  
But a man may live temperately and yet miserably. A better 9  
definition would be that a man must have so much property  
as will enable him to live not only temperately but liberally<sup>2</sup>;  
if the two are parted, liberality will combine with luxury; toil  
will be associated with temperance. For liberality and tem-  
perance are the only virtues<sup>3</sup> which have to do with the use  
of property. A man cannot use property with mildness or  
courage, but temperately and liberally he may; and therefore  
the practice of these virtues is inseparable from property.  
There is an inconsistency, too, in equalizing the property and 10  
not regulating the number of the citizens<sup>4</sup>; the population is  
to remain unlimited, and he thinks that it will be sufficiently  
equalized by a certain number of marriages being unfruitful,  
however many are born to others, because he finds this to be 1265 b  
the case in existing states. But [in Plato's imaginary state] 11  
greater care will be required than now; for among ourselves,  
whatever may be the number of citizens, the property is always  
distributed among them, and therefore no one is in want; but,  
if the property were incapable of division [as in the *Laws*],  
the supernumeraries, whether few or many, would get nothing.  
One would have thought that it was even more necessary to 12  
limit population than property; and that the limit should be  
fixed by calculating the chances of mortality in the children,  
and of sterility in married persons. The neglect of this sub- 13  
ject, which in existing states is so common, is a never-failing

<sup>1</sup> *Laws*, v. 737 D.

<sup>2</sup> *Cp.* vii. 5. § 1.

<sup>3</sup> Omitting ἑξέως and reading ἀπεραί with the MSS., or, reading with Bekk. ἑξέως ἀίπεραί, 'eligible qualities.'

<sup>4</sup> But see *Laws*, v. 740.

II. 6 cause of poverty among the citizens; and poverty is the parent of revolution and crime. Pheidon the Corinthian, who was one of the most ancient legislators, thought that the families and the number of citizens ought to remain the same, although originally all the lots may have been of different sizes; but in 14 the Laws, the opposite principle is maintained. What in our opinion is the right arrangement will have to be explained hereafter<sup>1</sup>.

There is another omission in the Laws; Socrates does not tell us how the rulers differ from their subjects; he only says that they should be related as the warp and the woof, which 15 are made out of different wools<sup>2</sup>. He allows that a man's whole property may be increased fivefold<sup>3</sup>, but why should not his land also increase to a certain extent? Again, will the good management of a household be promoted by his arrangement of homesteads? for he assigns to each individual two 16 homesteads in separate places<sup>4</sup>, and it is difficult to live in two houses.

The whole system of government tends to be neither democracy nor oligarchy, but something in a mean between them, which is usually called a polity, and is composed of the heavy armed soldiers. Now, if he intended to frame a constitution which would suit the greatest number of states, he was very likely right, but not if he meant to say that this constitutional form came nearest to his first or ideal state; for many would 17 prefer the Lacedaemonian, or, possibly, some other more aristocratic government. Some, indeed, say that the best consti-

<sup>1</sup> Cp. vii. 5. § 1; 10. § 11; 16. § 15; but the promise is hardly fulfilled.

<sup>2</sup> Laws, v. 734 E, 735 A.

<sup>3</sup> Laws, v. 744 E.

<sup>4</sup> Laws, v. 745, but cp. *infra*, vii. 10. § 11.

tution is a combination of all existing forms, and they praise the **II.** Lacedaemonian <sup>1</sup> because it is made up of oligarchy, monarchy, democracy, the king forming the monarchy, and the council of elders the oligarchy, while the democratic element is represented by the Ephors; for the Ephors are selected from the people. Others, however, declare the Ephoralty to be a tyranny, and find the element of democracy in the common meals and in the habits of daily life. In the Law <sup>2</sup>, it is <sup>1266 a</sup> maintained that the best state is made up of democracy and <sup>18</sup> tyranny, which are either not constitutions at all, or are the worst of all. But they are nearer the truth who combine many forms; for the state is better which is made up of more numerous elements. The constitution proposed in the Laws has no element of monarchy at all; it is nothing but oligarchy and democracy, leaning rather to oligarchy. This <sup>19</sup> is seen in the mode of appointing magistrates <sup>3</sup>; for although the appointment of them by lot from among those who have been already selected combines both elements, the way in which the rich are compelled by law to attend the assembly <sup>4</sup> and vote for magistrates or discharge other political duties, while the rest may do as they like, and the endeavour to have the greater number of the magistrates appointed out of the richest classes and the highest officers selected from those who have the greatest incomes, both these are oligarchical <sup>20</sup> features. The oligarchical principle prevails also in the choice of the council <sup>5</sup>; for all are compelled to choose, but the compulsion extends only to the choice out of the first

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iv. § 7; 7. § 4; 9. §§ 7-9.

<sup>2</sup> vi. 756 E; cp. iv. 710.

<sup>3</sup> Laws, vi. 755, 763 E, 765.

<sup>4</sup> Laws, vi. 764 A; and Pol. iv. 9. § 2; 14. § 12.

<sup>5</sup> Laws, vi. 756 B-E.

II. 6 class, and of an equal number out of the second class and out of the third class, but not in this latter case to all the voters of the third and fourth class; and the selection of candidates out of the fourth class<sup>1</sup> is only compulsory on the first and  
 21 second. Then, he says that there ought to be an equal number of each class selected. Thus a preponderance will be given to the better sort of people, who have the larger incomes, because many of the lower classes, not being com-  
 22 pelled, will not vote. These considerations, and others which will be adduced when the time comes for examining similar polities, tend to show that states like Plato's should not be composed of democracy and monarchy. There is also a danger in electing the magistrates out of a body who are themselves elected; for, if but a small number choose to combine, the elections will always go as they desire. Such is the constitution which is described in the *Laws*.

7 Other constitutions have been proposed; some by private persons, others by philosophers and statesmen, which all come nearer to established or existing ones than either of Plato's. No one else has introduced such novelties as the community of women and children, or public tables for women:  
 2 other legislators begin with what is necessary. In the opinion of some, the regulation of property is the chief point of all, that being the question upon which all revolutions turn. This danger was recognized by Phaleas of Chalcedon, who was the first to affirm that the citizens of a state ought to have  
 3 equal possessions. He thought that in a new colony the  
 1266 b equalization might be accomplished without difficulty, not so easily when a state was already established; and that then the shortest way of compassing the desired end would be for

<sup>1</sup> Omitting either τοῦ τετάρτου or τῶν τετάρτων.

the rich to give and not to receive marriage portions, and for II. 7 the poor not to give but to receive them.

Plato in the *Laws* was of opinion that, to a certain extent, 4 accumulation should be allowed, forbidding, as I have already observed<sup>1</sup>, any citizen to possess more than five times the minimum qualification. But those who make such laws should 5 remember what they are apt to forget—that the legislator who fixes the amount of property should also fix the number of children; for, if the children are too many for the property, the law must be broken. And, besides the violation of the law, it is a bad thing that many from being rich should become poor; for men of ruined fortunes are sure to stir up revolutions. That the equalization of property exercises an 6 influence on political society was clearly understood even by some of the old legislators. Laws were made by Solon and others prohibiting an individual from possessing as much land as he pleased; and there are other laws in states which forbid the sale of property: among the Locrians, for example, there is a law that a man is not to sell his property unless he can prove unmistakably that some misfortune has befallen him. 7 Again, there have been laws which enjoin the preservation of the original lots. Such a law existed in the island of Leucas, and the abrogation of it made the constitution too democratic, for the rulers no longer had the prescribed qualification. Again, where there is equality of property, the amount may be either too large or too small, and the possessor may be living either in luxury or penury. Clearly, then, the legis- 8 lator ought not only to aim at the equalization of properties, but at moderation in their amount. And yet, if he prescribe this moderate amount equally to all, he will be no nearer the

<sup>1</sup> c. 6. § 15.

II. 7 mark; for it is not the possessions but the desires of mankind which require to be equalized<sup>1</sup>, and this is impossible, unless a sufficient education is provided by the state. But Phaleas will probably reply that this is precisely what he means; and that, in his opinion, there ought to be in states, not only equal  
 9 property, but equal education. Still he should tell us what will be the character of his education; there is no use in having one and the same for all, if it is of a sort that predis-  
 10 poses men to avarice, or ambition, or both. Moreover, civil troubles arise, not only out of the inequality of property, but out of the inequality of honour, though in opposite ways. For  
 1267 a the common people quarrel about the inequality of property, the higher class about the equality of honour; as the poet says—

‘The bad and good alike in honour share<sup>2</sup>.’

11 There are crimes of which the motive is want; and for these Phaleas expects to find a cure in the equalization of property, which will take away from a man the temptation to  
 12 be a highwayman, because he is hungry or cold. But want is not the sole incentive to crime; men desire to gratify some passion which preys upon them, or they are eager to enjoy the pleasures which are unaccompanied with the pain of desire, and therefore they commit crimes.

Now what is the cure of these three disorders? Of the first, moderate possessions and occupation; of the second, habits of temperance; as to the third, if any desire pleasures which depend on themselves, they will find the satisfaction of their desires nowhere but in philosophy; for all other pleasures  
 13 we are dependent on others. The fact is that the greatest crimes are caused by excess and not by necessity. Men do

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 5. § 12.

<sup>2</sup> Il. ix. 319.



not become tyrants in order that they may not suffer cold; **II. 7** and hence great is the honour bestowed, not on him who kills a thief, but on him who kills a tyrant. Thus we see that the institutions of Phaleas avail only against petty crimes.

There is another objection to them. They are chiefly <sup>14</sup> designed to promote the internal welfare of the state. But the legislator should consider also its relation to neighbouring nations, and to all who are outside of it <sup>1</sup>. The government must be organized with a view to military strength; and of this he has said not a word. And so with respect to pro- <sup>15</sup> perty: there should not only be enough to supply the internal wants of the state, but also to meet dangers coming from without. The property of the state should not be so large that more powerful neighbours may be tempted by it, while the owners are unable to repel the invaders; nor yet so small that the state is unable to maintain a war even against states of equal power, and of the same character. Phaleas has not <sup>16</sup> laid down any rule; and we should bear in mind <sup>2</sup> that a certain amount of wealth <sup>2</sup> is an advantage. The best limit will probably be, not so much as will tempt a more powerful neighbour, or make it his interest to go to war with you. There <sup>17</sup> is a story that Eubulus, when Autophradates was going to besiege Atarneus, told him to consider how long the operation would take, and then reckon up the cost which would be incurred in the time. 'For,' said he, 'I am willing for a smaller sum than that to leave Atarneus at once.' These words of Eubulus made an impression on Autophradates, and he desisted from the siege.

One advantage gained by the equalization of property is <sup>18</sup> that it prevents the citizens from quarrelling. Not that the

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 6. § 7.

<sup>2</sup> Or reading  $\delta$  τι, 'what amount of wealth.'

II. 7 gain in this direction is very great. For the nobles will be dissatisfied because they do not receive the honours which they think their due; and this is often found to be a cause of sedition and revolution<sup>1</sup>. And the avarice of mankind is insatiable; at one time two obols was pay enough, but now, when this sum has become customary, men always want more and more without end; for it is of the nature of desire not to be satisfied, and most men live only for the gratification of it. <sup>2</sup>The beginning of reform<sup>2</sup> is not so much to equalize property as to train the nobler sort of natures not to desire more, and to prevent the lower from getting more; that is to say, they must be kept down, but not illtreated. Besides, the equalization proposed by Phaleas is imperfect; for he only equalizes land, whereas a man may be rich also in slaves, and cattle, and money, and in the abundance of what are called his movables. Now either all these things must be equalized, or some limit must be imposed on them, or they must all be let alone. It would appear that Phaleas is legislating for a small city only, if, as he supposes, all the artisans are to be public slaves and not to form a part of the population of the city. But if there is a law that artisans are to be public slaves, it should only apply to those engaged on public works<sup>3</sup>, as at Epidamnus, or at Athens on the plan which Diophantus once introduced.

From these observations any one may judge how far Phaleas was wrong or right in his ideas.

8 Hippodamus, the son of Euryphon, a native of Miletus, the

<sup>1</sup> Cp. § 10.

<sup>2</sup> Or, reading with Bernays ἀκνη, 'the remedy for such evils.'

<sup>3</sup> Putting a comma after εἶναι and removing the comma after ἐργαζομένοις.

## *Hippodamus—His Constitution and Laws* 77

same who invented the art of planning cities, and who also **II. 8** laid out the Piræus—a strange man, whose fondness for distinction led him into a general eccentricity of life, which made some think him affected (for he would wear flowing hair and expensive ornaments; and yet he dressed himself in the same cheap warm garment both in winter and summer); he, besides aspiring to be an adept in the knowledge of nature, was the first person not a statesman who made enquiries about the best form of government.

The city of Hippodamus was composed of 10,000 citizens <sup>2</sup> divided into three parts—one of artisans, one of husbandmen, and a third of armed defenders of the state. He also divided <sup>3</sup> the land into three parts, one sacred, one public, the third private: the first was set apart to maintain the customary worship of the gods, the second was to support the warriors, the third was the property of the husbandmen. He also <sup>4</sup> divided his laws into three classes, and no more, for he maintained that there are three subjects of lawsuits—insult, injury, and homicide. He likewise instituted a single final court of appeal, to which all causes seeming to have been improperly decided might be referred; this court he formed of elders chosen for the purpose. He was further of opinion <sup>1268 a</sup> that the decisions of the courts ought not to be given by the <sup>5</sup> use of a voting pebble, but that every one should have a tablet on which he might not only write a simple condemnation, or leave the tablet blank for a simple acquittal; but, if he partly acquitted and partly condemned, he was to distinguish accordingly. To the existing law he objected that it obliged the judges to be guilty of perjury, whichever way they voted. He also enacted that those who discovered anything for the <sup>6</sup> good of the state should be rewarded; and he provided that

II. 8 the children of citizens who died in battle should be maintained at the public expense, as if such an enactment had never been heard of before, yet it actually exists at Athens<sup>1</sup> and in other places. As to the magistrates, he would have them all elected by the people, that is, by the three classes already mentioned, and those who were elected were to watch over the interests of the public, of strangers and of orphans. These are the most striking points in the constitution of Hippodamus. There is not much else.

The first of these proposals to which objection may be taken, is the threefold division of the citizens. The artisans, and the husbandmen, and the warriors, all have a share in the government. But the husbandmen have no arms, and the artisans neither arms nor land, and therefore they become all but slaves of the warrior class. That they should share in all the offices is an impossibility; for generals and guardians of the citizens, and nearly all the principal magistrates, must be taken from the class of those who carry arms. Yet, if the two other classes have no share in the government, how can they be loyal citizens? It may be said that those who have arms must necessarily be masters of both the other classes, but this is not so easily accomplished unless they are numerous; and if they are, why should the other classes share in the government at all, or have power to appoint magistrates? Artisans there must be, for these are wanted in every city, and they can live by their craft, as elsewhere; and the husbandmen, too, if they really provided the warriors with food, might fairly have a share in the government. But in the republic of Hippodamus they are supposed to have land of their own, which they cultivate for their private benefit.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Thuc. ii. c. 46.

Again, as to this common land out of which the soldiers are **II. 8** maintained, if they are themselves to be the cultivators of it, <sup>11</sup> the warrior class will be identical with the husbandmen, although the legislator intended to make a distinction between them. If, again, there are to be other cultivators distinct both from the husbandmen, who have land of their own, and from the warriors, they will make a fourth class, which has no place in the state and no share in anything. Or, if the <sup>12</sup> same persons are to cultivate their own lands and those of the public as well, they will have a difficulty in supplying the quantity of produce which will maintain two households: and <sup>1268 b</sup> why, in this case, should there be any division, for they might find food themselves and give to the warriors from the same lots? There is surely a great confusion in all this.

Neither is the law to be commended which says that the <sup>13</sup> judges, when a simple issue is laid before them, should distinguish in their judgment; for the judge is thus converted into an arbitrator. Now, in an arbitration, although the arbitrators are many, they confer with one another about the decision, and therefore they can distinguish; but in courts of law this is impossible, and, indeed, most legislators take pains to prevent the judges from holding any communication with one another. Again, will there not be confusion if the judge <sup>14</sup> thinks that damages should be given, but not so much as the suitor demands? He asks, say, for twenty minae, and the judge allows him ten minae, or one judge more and another less; one five, another four minae. In this way they will go on apportioning the damages, and some will grant the whole and others nothing: how is the final reckoning to be taken? <sup>15</sup> Again, no one who votes for a simple acquittal or condemnation is compelled to perjure himself, if the indictment is quite

II. 8 simple and in right form; for the judge who acquits does not decide that the defendant owes nothing, but that he does not owe the twenty minae. He only is guilty of perjury who thinks that the defendant ought not to pay twenty minae, and yet condemns him.

16 To reward those who discover anything which is useful to the state is a proposal which has a specious sound, but cannot safely be enacted by law, for it may encourage informers, and perhaps even lead to political commotions. This question involves another. It has been doubted whether it is or is not  
 17 if another law be better. Now, if all changes are inexpedient, we can hardly assent to the proposal of Hippodamus; for, under pretence of doing a public service, a man may introduce measures which are really destructive to the laws or to the constitution. But, since we have touched upon this subject,  
 18 perhaps we had better go a little into detail, for, as I was saying, there is a difference of opinion, and it may sometimes seem desirable to make changes. Such changes in the other arts and sciences have certainly been beneficial; medicine, for example, and gymnastic, and every other art and science have departed from traditional usage. And, if politics be an art,  
 19 change must be necessary in this as in any other art. The need of improvement is shown by the fact that old customs are exceedingly simple and barbarous. For the ancient Hellenes went about armed<sup>1</sup> and bought their wives of each  
 20 other. The remains of ancient laws which have come down  
 1289 a to us are quite absurd; for example, at Cumae there is a law about murder, to the effect that if the accuser produce a certain number of witnesses from among his own kinsmen, the accused

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Thucyd. i. c. 5 and 6.

shall be held guilty. Again, men in general desire the good, **II. 8** and not merely what their fathers had. But the *primaeval* <sup>21</sup> inhabitants<sup>1</sup>, whether they were born of the earth, or were the survivors of some destruction, may be supposed to have been no better than ordinary foolish people among ourselves<sup>1</sup> (such is certainly the tradition<sup>2</sup> concerning the earth-born men); and it would be ridiculous to rest contented with their notions. Even when laws have been written down, they ought not always to remain unaltered. As in other arts, so in <sup>22</sup> making a constitution, it is impossible that all things should be precisely set down in writing; for enactments must be universal, but actions are concerned with particulars<sup>3</sup>. Hence we infer that sometimes and in certain cases laws may be changed; but when we look at the matter from another point of view, great caution would seem to be required. For the habit of <sup>23</sup> lightly changing the laws is an evil, and, when the advantage is small, some errors both of lawgivers and rulers had better be left; the citizen will not gain so much by the change as he will lose by the habit of disobedience. The analogy of the <sup>24</sup> arts is false; a change in a law is a very different thing from a change in an art. For the law has no power to command obedience except that of habit, which can only be given by time, so that a readiness to change from old to new laws enfeebles the power of the law. Even if we admit that the <sup>25</sup> laws are to be changed, are they all to be changed, and in every state? And are they to be changed by anybody who

<sup>1</sup> Or, referring *ῥηγοῖους* to *ῥηγευεῖς*, 'whether they were born of the earth or were the survivors of some destruction, who were no better (*ῥηγοῖους*) than earth-born men, may be supposed to have been ordinary foolish people.'

<sup>2</sup> Cp. Plato, *Laws*, iii. 677 A; *Polit.* 271 A; *Tim.* 22 C.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. Plato, *Polit.* 295 A.



II. 8 likes, or only by certain persons? These are very important questions; and therefore we had better reserve the discussion of them to a more suitable occasion.

9 In the governments of Lacedaemon and Crete, and indeed in all governments, two points have to be considered; first, whether any particular law is good or bad, when compared with the perfect state; secondly, whether it is or is not consistent with the idea and character which the lawgiver has set  
 2 before his citizens<sup>1</sup>. That in a well-ordered state the citizens should have leisure and not have to provide for their daily wants is generally acknowledged, but there is a difficulty in seeing how this leisure is to be attained. [For, if you employ slaves, they are liable to rebel.] The Thessalian Penestae have often risen against their masters, and the Helots in like manner against the Lacedaemonians, for whose misfortunes  
 3 they are always lying in wait. Nothing, however, of this  
 1269 b kind has as yet happened to the Cretans; the reason probably is that the neighbouring cities, even when at war with one another, never form an alliance with rebellious serfs, rebellions not being for their interest, since they themselves have a dependent population<sup>2</sup>. Whereas all the neighbours of the  
 1 Lacedaemonians, whether Argives, Messenians, or Arcadians, are their enemies [and the Helots are always revolting to them]. In Thessaly, again, the original revolt of the slaves occurred at a time when the Thessalians were still at war with the neighbouring Achaeans, Perrhaebians, and Magnesians.  
 4 Besides, if there were no other difficulty, the treatment or management of slaves is a troublesome affair; for, if not kept in hand, they are insolent, and think that they are as good as their masters, and, if harshly treated, they hate and conspire

<sup>1</sup> Or 'himself' (Bernays).

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 10. § 5.

against them. Now it is clear that when these are the re- **II. 9**  
sults the citizens of a state have not found out the secret of  
managing their subject population.

Again, the licence of the Lacedaemonian women defeats 5  
the intention of the Spartan constitution, and is adverse to the  
good order of the state. For a husband and a wife, being  
each a part of every family, the state may be considered as  
about equally divided into men and women; and, therefore, in  
those states in which the condition of the women is bad, half  
the city<sup>1</sup> may be regarded as having no laws. And this is 6  
what has actually happened at Sparta; the legislator wanted to  
make the whole state hardy and temperate, and he has carried  
out his intention in the case of the men, but he has neglected  
the women, who live in every sort of intemperance and luxury.  
The consequence is that in such a state wealth is too highly 7  
valued, especially if the citizens fall under the dominion of  
their wives, after the manner of all warlike races, except the  
Celts and a few others who openly approve of male loves.  
The old mythologer would seem to have been right in uniting 8  
Ares and Aphrodite, for all warlike races are prone to the  
love either of men or of women. This was exemplified among  
the Spartans in the days of their greatness; many things were  
managed by their women. But what difference does it make 9  
whether women rule, or the rulers are ruled by women? The  
result is the same. Even in regard to courage, which is of no  
use in daily life, and is needed only in war, the influence of  
the Lacedaemonian women has been most mischievous. The 10  
evil showed itself in the Theban invasion, when, unlike the  
women in other cities, they were utterly useless and caused  
more confusion than the enemy. This licence of the Lacedae-

<sup>1</sup> Cp. i. 13. § 16.

II. 9 monian women existed from the earliest times, and was only  
 1270 a what might be expected. For, during the wars of the Lace-

<sup>11</sup> daemonians, first against the Argives, and afterwards against  
 the Arcadians and Messenians, the men were long away from  
 home, and, on the return of peace, they gave themselves into  
 the legislator's hand, already prepared by the discipline of  
 a soldier's life (in which there are many elements of virtue),  
 to receive his enactments. But, when Lycurgus, as tradition  
 says, wanted to bring the women under his laws, they resisted,  
 12 and he gave up the attempt. They, and not he, are to blame  
 for what then happened, and this defect in the constitution is  
 clearly to be attributed to them. We are not, however, con-  
 sidering what is or is not to be excused, but what is right or  
 13 wrong; and the disorder of the women, as I have already said,  
 not only of itself gives an air of indecorum to the state, but  
 tends in a measure to foster avarice.

The mention of avarice naturally suggests a criticism on the  
 14 inequality of property. While some of the Spartan citizens  
 have quite small properties, others have very large ones; hence  
 the land has passed into the hands of a few. And here is  
 another fault in their laws; for, although the legislator rightly  
 holds up to shame the sale or purchase of an inheritance, he  
 15 allows anybody who likes to give and bequeath it. Yet both  
 practices lead to the same result. And nearly two-fifths of  
 the whole country are held by women; this is owing to the  
 number of heiresses and to the large dowries which are cus-  
 tomary. It would surely have been better to have given no  
 dowries at all, or, if any, but small or moderate ones. As the  
 law now stands, a man may bestow his heiress on any one  
 whom he pleases, and, if he die intestate, the privilege of  
 16 giving her away descends to his heir. Hence, although the

country is able to maintain 1500 cavalry and 30,000 hoplites, **II. 9** the whole number of Spartan citizens [at the time of the Theban invasion] fell below 1000. The result proves the faulty nature of their laws respecting property; for the city sank under a single defeat; the want of men was their ruin. There is a tradition that, in the days of their ancient kings, **17** they were in the habit of giving the rights of citizenship to strangers, and therefore, in spite of their long wars, no lack of population was experienced by them; indeed, at one time Sparta is said to have numbered not less than 10,000 citizens. Whether this statement is true or not, it would certainly have been better to have maintained their numbers by the equalization of property. Again, the law which relates to the pro- **18** creation of children is adverse to the correction of this inequality. For the legislator, wanting to have as many **1270 b** Spartans as he could, encouraged the citizens to have large families; and there is a law at Sparta that the father of three sons shall be exempt from military service, and he who has four from all the burdens of the state. Yet it is obvious that, **19** if there were many children, the land being distributed as it is, many of them must necessarily fall into poverty.

The Lacedaemonian constitution is defective in another point; I mean the Ephoralty. This magistracy has authority in the highest matters, but the Ephors are all chosen from the people, and so the office is apt to fall into the hands of very poor men, who, being badly off, are open to bribes. There **20** have been many examples at Sparta of this evil in former times; and quite recently, in the matter of the Andrians, certain of the Ephors who were bribed did their best to ruin the state. And so great and tyrannical is their power, that even the kings have been compelled to court them; through

## 86 *Sparta: Criticism of the Council of Elders;*

- II. 9 their influence the constitution has deteriorated, and from  
21 being an aristocracy has turned into a democracy. The  
Ephoralty certainly does keep the state together; for the  
people are contented when they have a share in the highest  
office, and the result, whether due to the legislator or to  
22 chance, has been advantageous. For if a constitution is to be  
permanent, all the parts of the state must wish that it should  
exist and be maintained<sup>1</sup>. This is the case at Sparta, where  
the kings desire permanence because they have due honour in  
their own persons; the nobles are represented in the council  
of elders (for the office of elder is a reward of virtue); and  
23 the people in the Ephoralty, for all are eligible to it. The  
election of Ephors out of the whole people is perfectly right,  
but ought not to be carried on in the present fashion, which is  
too childish. Again, they have the decision of great causes,  
although they are quite ordinary men, and therefore they should  
not determine them merely on their own judgment, but accord-  
24 ing to written rules, and to the laws. Their way of life, too,  
is not in accordance with the spirit of the constitution—they  
have a deal too much licence; whereas, in the case of the  
other citizens, the excess of strictness is so intolerable that  
they run away from the law into the secret indulgence of  
sensual pleasures.
- 25 Again, the council of elders is not free from defects. It  
may be said that the elders are good men and well trained in  
manly virtue; and that, therefore, there is an advantage to the  
state in having them. But that judges of important causes  
should hold office for life is not a good thing, for the mind  
1271 a grows old as well as the body. And when men have been  
educated in such a manner that even the legislator himself

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iv. 9. § 10; v. 9. § 5.

cannot trust them, there is real danger. Many of the elders **II. 9** are well known to have taken bribes and to have been guilty of <sup>26</sup> partiality in public affairs. And therefore they ought not to be irresponsible; yet at Sparta they are so. But (it may be replied), 'All magistracies are accountable to the Ephors.' Yes, but this prerogative is too great for them, and we maintain that the control should be exercised in some other manner. Further, the mode in which the Spartans elect their elders is <sup>27</sup> childish; and it is improper that <sup>1</sup> the person to be elected should canvass for the office; the worthiest should be appointed, whether he chooses or not. And here the legislator <sup>28</sup> clearly indicates the same intention which appears in other parts of his constitution; he would have his citizens ambitious, and he has reckoned upon this quality in the election of the elders; for no one would ask to be elected if he were not. Yet ambition and avarice, almost more than any other passions, are the motives of crime.

Whether kings are or are not an advantage to states, I will <sup>29</sup> consider at another time <sup>2</sup>; they should at any rate be chosen, not as they are now, but with regard to their personal life and conduct. The legislator himself obviously did not suppose <sup>30</sup> that he could make them really good men; at least he shows a great distrust of their virtue. For this reason the Spartans used to join enemies in the same embassy, and the quarrels between the kings were held to be conservative of the state.

Neither did the first introducer of the common meals, called 'phiditia,' regulate them well. The entertainment ought to <sup>31</sup> have been provided at the public cost, as in Crete <sup>3</sup>; but

<sup>1</sup> Reading τὸ αὐτόν, not τόν, as Bekker, 2nd edit., apparently by a misprint.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. iii. 14 foll.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. c. 10. §§ 7, 8.

II. 9 among the Lacedaemonians every one is expected to contribute, and some of them are too poor to afford the expense ;  
 32 thus the intention of the legislator is frustrated. The common meals were meant to be a popular institution, but the existing manner of regulating them is the reverse of popular. For the very poor can scarcely take part in them ; and, according to ancient custom, those who cannot contribute are not allowed to retain their rights of citizenship.

33 The law about the Spartan admirals has often been censured, and with justice ; it is a source of dissension, for the kings are perpetual generals<sup>1</sup>, and this office of admiral is but the setting up of another king.

1271 b The charge which Plato brings, in the Laws<sup>2</sup>, against the  
 34 intention of the legislator, is likewise justified ; the whole constitution has regard to one part of virtue only—the virtue of the soldier, which gives victory in war. And so long as they were at war, their power was preserved, but when they had attained empire they fell<sup>3</sup>, for of the arts of peace they knew nothing, and had never engaged in any employment higher  
 35 than war. There is another error, equally great, into which they have fallen. Although they truly think that the goods for which they contend are to be acquired by virtue rather than by vice, they err in supposing that these goods are to be preferred to the virtue which gains them.

36 Once more : the revenues of the state are ill-managed ; there is no money in the treasury, although they are obliged to carry on great wars, and they are unwilling to pay taxes. The greater part of the land being in the hands of the Spartans, they do not look closely into one another's contributions.

<sup>1</sup> Reading *ἀιδίοις*.

<sup>2</sup> Laws, i. 630.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. vii. 14. § 22.



The result which the legislator has produced is the reverse of **II. 9** beneficial; for he has made his city poor, and his citizens <sup>37</sup> greedy.

Enough respecting the Spartan constitution, of which these are the principal defects.

The constitutions of the Cretan cities nearly resemble the **10** Spartan, and in some few points are quite as good; but for the most part less perfect in form. The older constitutions are generally less elaborate than the later, and the Lacedaemonian is said to be, and probably is, in a very great measure, a copy <sup>2</sup> of those in Crete. According to tradition, Lycurgus, when he ceased to be the guardian of King Charilaus, went abroad and spent a long time in Crete. For the two countries are nearly connected; the Lyctians are a colony of the Lacedaemonians, and the colonists, when they came to Crete, adopted the constitution which they found existing among the inhabi- <sup>3</sup> tants. Even to this day the Perioeci, or subject population of Crete, are governed by the original laws which Minos enacted. The island seems to be intended by nature for dominion in Hellas, and to be well situated; it extends right across the sea, around which nearly all the Hellenes are settled; and while one end is not far from the Peloponnese, the other almost reaches to the region of Asia about Triopium and <sup>4</sup> Rhodes. Hence Minos acquired the empire of the sea, subduing some of the islands and colonizing others; at last he invaded Sicily, where he died near Camicus. <sup>5</sup>

The Cretan institutions resemble the Lacedaemonian. The Helots are the husbandmen of the one, the Perioeci of the **1272 a** other, and both Cretans and Lacedaemonians have common meals, which were anciently called by the Lacedaemonians not 'phiditia' but 'andria'; and the Cretans have the same word,

II. 10 the use of which proves that the common meals [or *syssitia*] 6 originally came from Crete. Further, the two constitutions are similar [in many particulars]; for the office of the Ephors is the same as that of the Cretan *Cosmi*, the only difference being that whereas the Ephors are five, the *Cosmi* are ten in number. The elders, too, answer to the elders in Crete, who are termed by the Cretans the council. And the kingly office once existed in Crete, but was abolished, and the *Cosmi* have 7 now the duty of leading them in war. All classes share in the *ecclesia*, but it can only ratify the decrees of the elders and the *Cosmi*.

The common meals of Crete are certainly better managed than the Lacedaemonian; for in Lacedaemon every one pays so much per head, or, if he fails, the law, as I have already explained, forbids him to exercise the rights of citizenship. 8 But in Crete they are of a more popular character. There, of all the fruits of the earth, of cattle, of the public revenues, and of the tribute which is paid by the *Perioeci*, one portion is assigned to the gods and to the service of the state, and another to the common meals, so that men, women, and 9 children are all supported out of a common stock<sup>1</sup>. The legislator has many ingenious ways of securing moderation in eating which he conceives to be a gain; he likewise encourages the separation of men from women, lest they should have too many children, and the companionship of men with one another—whether this is a good or bad thing I shall have an opportunity of considering at another time<sup>2</sup>. But that the Cretan common meals are better ordered than the Lacedaemonian there can be no doubt.

On the other hand, the *Cosmi* are even a worse institution

<sup>1</sup> Cp. vii. 10. § 10.

<sup>2</sup> vii. 16 (?).

than the Ephors, of which they have all the evils without the good. Like the Ephors, they are any chance persons, but in Crete this is not counterbalanced by a corresponding political advantage. At Sparta every one is eligible, and the body of the people, having a share in the highest office, want the state to be permanent<sup>1</sup>. But in Crete the Cosmi are elected out of certain families, and not out of the whole people, and the elders out of those who have been Cosmi. II. 10<sup>10</sup>

The same criticism may be made about the Cretan, which has been already made about the Lacedaemonian elders. Their irresponsibility and life tenure is too great a privilege, and their arbitrary power of acting upon their own judgment, and dispensing with written law, is dangerous. It is no proof of the goodness of the institution that the people are not discontented at being excluded from it. For there is no profit to be made out of the office; and, unlike the Ephors, the Cosmi, being in an island, are removed from temptation. 1272 b

The remedy by which they correct the evil of this institution is an extraordinary one, suited rather to a close oligarchy than to a constitutional state. For the Cosmi are often expelled by a conspiracy of their own colleagues, or of private individuals; and they are allowed also to resign before their term of office has expired. Surely all matters of this kind are better regulated by law than by the will of man, which is a very unsafe rule. Worst of all is the suspension of the office of Cosmi, a device to which the nobles often have recourse when they will not submit to justice. This shows that the Cretan government, although possessing some of the characteristics of a constitutional state, is really a close oligarchy. 13<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cp. *supra*, c. 9. § 21.

**II. 10** The Cretans have a habit, too, of setting up a chief; they get together a party among the common people and gather their friends and then quarrel and fight with one another.

**15** What is this but the temporary destruction of the state and dissolution of society? A city is in a dangerous condition when those who are willing are also able to attack her. But, as I have already said, the island of Crete is saved by her situation; distance has the same effect as the Lacedaemonian  
**16** prohibition of strangers; and the Cretans have no foreign dominions. This is the reason why the Perioeci are contented in Crete, whereas the Helots are perpetually revolting. But when lately foreign invaders found their way into the island, the weakness of the Cretan constitution was revealed. Enough of the government of Crete.

**11** The Carthaginians are also considered to have an excellent form of government, which differs from that of any other state in several respects, though it is in some very like the Lacedaemonian. Indeed, all three states—the Lacedaemonian, the Cretan, and the Carthaginian—nearly resemble one another, and are very different from any others. Many of the Cartha-  
**2** ginian institutions are excellent. The superiority of their constitution is proved by the fact that, although containing an element of democracy, it has been lasting; the Carthaginians have never had any rebellion worth speaking of, and have never been under the rule of a tyrant.

**3** Among the points in which the Carthaginian constitution resembles the Lacedaemonian are the following:—The common tables of the clubs answer to the Spartan phiditia, and their magistracy of the 104 to the Ephors; but, whereas the Ephors are any chance persons, the magistrates of the Carthaginians are elected according to merit—this is an improvement.

They have also their kings and their gerusia, or council of **II. 11** elders, who correspond to the kings and elders of Sparta. Their kings, unlike the Spartan, are not always of the same 4 family, and this an ordinary one, but if there is some distinguished family they are selected out of it and not appointed by seniority—this is far better. Such officers have great power, and therefore, if they are persons of little worth, do a great deal of harm, and they have already done harm at 1273 a Lacedaemon.

Most of the defects or deviations from the perfect state, for 5 which the Carthaginian constitution would be censured, apply equally to all the forms of government which we have mentioned. But of the deflections from aristocracy and constitutional government, some incline more to democracy and some to oligarchy. The kings and elders, if unanimous, may determine whether they will or will not bring a matter before the people, but when they are not unanimous, the people may decide whether or not the matter shall be brought forward. And 6 whatever the kings and elders bring before the people is not only heard but also determined by them, and any one who likes may oppose it; now this is not permitted in Sparta and Crete. That the magistracies of five who have under them many 7 important matters should be co-opted, that they should choose the supreme council of 100, and should hold office longer than other magistrates (for they are virtually rulers both before and after they hold office)—these are oligarchical features; their being without salary and not elected by lot, and any similar points, such as the practice of having all suits tried by the magistrates<sup>1</sup>, and not some by one class of judges or jurors and some by another, as at Lacedaemon, are characteristic of

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iii. 1. §§ 10, 11; and see note at end.

- II. 11 aristocracy. The Carthaginian constitution deviates from  
 8 aristocracy and inclines to oligarchy, chiefly on a point where  
 popular opinion is on their side. For men in general think  
 that magistrates should be chosen not only for their merit, but  
 for their wealth : a man, they say, who is poor cannot rule well  
 9 —he has not the leisure. If, then, election of magistrates for  
 their wealth be characteristic of oligarchy, and election for  
 merit of aristocracy, there will be a third form under which the  
 constitution of Carthage is comprehended ; for the Cartha-  
 ginians choose their magistrates, and particularly the highest  
 of them—their kings and generals—with an eye both to merit  
 and to wealth.
- 10 But we must acknowledge that, in thus deviating from  
 aristocracy, the legislator has committed an error. Nothing is  
 more absolutely necessary than to provide that the highest class,  
 not only when in office, but when out of office, should have leisure  
 and not demean themselves in any way ; and to this his atten-  
 tion should be first directed. Even if you must have regard to  
 wealth, in order to secure leisure, yet it is surely a bad thing  
 that the greatest offices, such as those of kings and generals,  
 11 should be bought. The law which allows this abuse makes  
 wealth of more account than virtue, and the whole state  
 becomes avaricious. For, whenever the chiefs of the state  
 deem anything honourable, the other citizens are sure to follow  
 1273 b their example ; and, where virtue has not the first place, there  
 12 aristocracy cannot be firmly established. Those who have  
 been at the expense of purchasing their places will be in the  
 habit of repaying themselves ; and it is absurd to suppose that  
 a poor and honest man will be wanting to make gains, and that  
 a lower stamp of man who has incurred a great expense will  
 not. Wherefore they should rule who are able to rule best

[ἀρισταρχεῖν]. And even if the legislator does not care to II. 11 protect the good from poverty, he should at any rate secure leisure for those in office<sup>1</sup>.

It would seem also to be a bad principle that the same 13 person should hold many offices, which is a favourite practice among the Carthaginians, for one business is better done by one man<sup>2</sup>. The legislator should see to this and should not appoint the same person to be a flute-player and a shoemaker. Hence, where the state is large, it is more in accordance both 14 with constitutional and with democratic principles that the offices of state should be distributed among many persons. For, as I was saying, this arrangement is more popular, and any action familiarized by repetition is better and sooner performed. We have a proof in military and naval matters; the duties of command and of obedience in both these services extend to all.

The government of the Carthaginians is oligarchical, but 15 they successfully escape the evils of oligarchy by their wealth, which enables them from time to time to send out some portion of the people<sup>3</sup> to their colonies. This is their panacea and the means by which they give stability to the state. Accident favours them, but the legislator should be able to provide against revolution without trusting to accidents. As things are, if any misfortune occurred, and the people 16 revolted from their rulers, there would be no way of restoring peace by legal methods.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 9. § 2.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. Plato, Rep. ii. 374 A.

<sup>3</sup> Or, removing the comma after *πλουτεῖν*, and adding one after *μέρος*, 'by enriching one portion of the people after another whom they send to their colonies.' Cp. vi. 5. § 9, which tends to confirm this way of taking the words.



**II. 11** Such is the character of the Lacedaemonian, Cretan, and Carthaginian constitutions, which are justly celebrated.

**12** Of those who have treated of governments, some have never taken any part at all in public affairs, but have passed their lives in a private station; about most of them, what was worth telling has been already told. Others have been law-givers, either in their own or in foreign cities, whose affairs they have administered; and of these some have only made laws, others have framed constitutions; for example, Lyscurgus<sup>2</sup> and Solon did both. Of the Lacedaemonian constitution I have already spoken. As to Solon, he is thought by some to have been a good legislator, who put an end to the exclusiveness of the oligarchy, emancipated the people, established the ancient Athenian democracy, and harmonized the different elements of the state. According to their view, the council of Areopagus was an oligarchical element, the elected magistracy,<sup>1274 a</sup> aristocratical, and the courts of law, democratical. The truth seems to be that the council and the elected magistracy<sup>3</sup> existed before the time of Solon, and were retained by him, but that he formed the courts of law out of all the citizens, thus creating the democracy, which is the very reason why he is sometimes blamed. For in giving the supreme power to the law courts, which are elected by lot, he is thought to have<sup>4</sup> destroyed the non-democratic element. When the law courts grew powerful, to please the people, who were now playing the tyrant, the old constitution was changed into the existing democracy. Ephialtes and Pericles curtailed the power of the Areopagus; they also instituted the payment of the juries, and thus every demagogue in turn increased the power of the<sup>5</sup> democracy until it became what we now see. All this is true; it seems however to be the result of circumstances, and not to

have been intended by Solon. For the people having been **II. 12** instrumental in gaining the empire of the sea in the Persian War<sup>1</sup>, began to get a notion of itself, and followed worthless demagogues, whom the better class opposed. Solon himself appears to have given the Athenians only that power of electing to offices and calling to account the magistrates, which was absolutely necessary<sup>2</sup>; for without it they would have been in a state of slavery and enmity to the government. All the 6 magistrates he appointed from the notables and the men of wealth, that is to say, from the pentacosio-medimni, or from the class called zeugitae (because they kept a yoke of oxen), or from a third class of so-called knights or cavalry. The fourth class were labourers who had no share in any magistracy.

Mere legislators were Zaleucus, who gave laws to the Epizephyrian, Locrians, and Charondas, who legislated for his own city of Catana, and for the other Chalcidian cities in Italy and Sicily. Some persons attempt<sup>3</sup> to make out that 7 Onomacritus was the first person who had any special skill in legislation<sup>3</sup>, and that he, although a Locrian by birth, was trained in Crete, where he lived in the exercise of his prophetic art; that Thales was his companion, and that Lycurgus and Zaleucus were disciples of Thales, as Charondas was of Zaleucus. But their account is quite inconsistent with 8 chronology.

There was also a Theban legislator, whose name was Philolaus, the Corinthian. This Philolaus was one of the family of the Bacchiadae, and a lover of Diocles, the Olympic victor, who left Corinth in horror of the incestuous passion

<sup>1</sup> Cp. v. 4. § 8; viii. 6. § 11.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. iii. 11. § 8.

<sup>3</sup> Or (with Bernays), 'to make out an unbroken series of great legislators, Onomacritus being considered the first.'

**II. 12** which his mother Halcyone had conceived for him, and retired to Thebes, where the two friends together ended their days.

9 The inhabitants still point out their tombs, which are in full view of one another, but one looks towards Corinth, the other not. Tradition says that the two friends arranged them in this way, Diocles out of horror at his misfortunes, so that the land of Corinth might not be visible from his tomb; Philolaus

1274 b that it might. This is the reason why they settled at Thebes,

<sup>10</sup> and so Philolaus legislated for the Thebans, and, besides some other enactments, gave them laws about the procreation of children, which they call the 'Laws of Adoption.' These laws were peculiar to him, and were intended to preserve the number of the lots.

**11** In the legislation of Charondas there is nothing remarkable, except the laws about false witnesses. He is the first who instituted actions for perjury. His laws are more exact and more precisely expressed than even those of our modern legislators.

**12** Characteristic of Phaleas is the equalization of property; of Plato, the community of women, children, and property, the common meals of women, and the law about drinking, that the sober shall be masters of the feast<sup>1</sup>; also the training of soldiers to acquire by practice equal skill with both hands, so that one should be as useful as the other<sup>2</sup>.

**13** Draco has left laws, but he adapted them to a constitution which already existed, and there is no peculiarity in them which is worth mentioning, except the greatness and severity of the punishments.

Pittacus, too, was only a lawgiver, and not the author of a constitution; he has a law which is peculiar to him, that, if

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Laws, ii. 671 D-672 A.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. Laws, vii. 794 D.

a drunken man strike another, he shall be more heavily **II. 2** punished than if he were sober<sup>1</sup>; he looked not to the excuse which might be offered for the drunkard, but only to expediency, for drunken more often than sober people commit acts of violence.

Androdamas of Rhegium gave laws to the Chalcidians of <sup>14</sup> Thrace. Some of them relate to homicide, and to heiresses; but there is nothing remarkable in them.

And here let us conclude our enquiry into the various constitutions which either actually exist, or have been devised by theorists.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. N. Eth. iii. 5. § 8.

## BOOK III

III. 1 HE who would enquire into the nature and various kinds of government must first of all determine 'What is a state?' At present this is a disputed question. Some say that the state has done a certain act; others, no, not the state<sup>1</sup>, but the oligarchy or the tyrant. And the legislator or statesman is concerned entirely with the state; a constitution or government being an  
2 arrangement of the inhabitants of a state. But a state is composite, and, like any other whole, made up of many parts;—these are the citizens, who compose it. It is evident, there-  
1275 a fore, that we must begin by asking, Who is the citizen, and what is the meaning of the term? For here again there may be a difference of opinion. He who is a citizen in a demo-  
3 cracy will often not be a citizen in an oligarchy. Leaving out of consideration those who have been made citizens, or who have obtained the name of citizen in any other accidental manner, we may say, first, that a citizen is not a citizen  
4 because he lives in a certain place, for resident aliens and slaves share in the place; nor is he a citizen who has no legal right except that of suing and being sued; for this right may be enjoyed under the provisions of a treaty. Even resident aliens in many places possess such rights, although in an imperfect form; for they are obliged to have a patron.  
5 Hence they do but imperfectly participate in citizenship, and we call them citizens only in a qualified sense, as we might apply the term to children who are too young to be on the

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 3. § 1.

## *The Definition of Citizenship in Theory* 101

register, or to old men who have been relieved from state duties. Of these we do not say simply that they are citizens, but add in the one case that they are not of age, and in the other, that they are past the age, or something of that sort; the precise expression is immaterial, for our meaning is clear. Similar difficulties to those which I have mentioned may be raised and answered about deprived citizens and about exiles. But the citizen, whom we are seeking to define, is a citizen in the strictest sense, against whom no such exception can be taken, and his special characteristic is that he shares in the administration of justice, and in offices. Now of offices some have a limit of time, and the same persons are not allowed to hold them twice, or can only hold them after a fixed interval; others have no limit of time—for example, the office of dicast or ecclesiast<sup>1</sup>. It may, indeed, be argued that these are not magistrates at all, and that their functions give them no share in the government. But surely it is ridiculous to say that those who have the supreme power do not govern. Not to dwell further upon this, which is a purely verbal question, what we want is a common term including both dicast and ecclesiast. Let us, for the sake of distinction, call it ‘indeterminate office,’ and we will assume that those who share in such office are citizens. This is the most comprehensive definition of a citizen, and best suits all those who are generally so called.

But we must not forget that things of which the underlying notions differ in kind, one of them being first, another second, another third, have, when regarded in this relation, nothing, or hardly anything, worth mentioning in common. Now we

<sup>1</sup> ‘Dicast’ = juryman and judge in one: ‘ecclesiast’ = member of the ecclesia or assembly of the citizens.

**III.** I see that governments differ in kind, and that some of them  
 1275 b are prior and that others are posterior; those which are faulty  
 or perverted are necessarily posterior to those which are  
 perfect. (What we mean by perversion will be hereafter  
 explained<sup>1</sup>.) The citizen then of necessity differs under each  
 10 form of government; and our definition is best adapted to the  
 citizen of a democracy; but not necessarily to other states.  
 For in some states the people are not acknowledged, nor have  
 they any regular assembly, but only extraordinary ones; and  
 suits are distributed in turn among the magistrates. At Lace-  
 daemon, for instance, the Ephors determine suits about con-  
 tracts, which they distribute among themselves, while the  
 elders are judges of homicide, and other causes are decided  
 11 by other magistrates. A similar principle prevails at Car-  
 thage<sup>2</sup>; there certain magistrates decide all causes. We may,  
 indeed, modify our definition of the citizen so as to include  
 these states. [But strictly taken it only applies in democracies.]  
 In other states it is the holder of a determinate, not of an  
 indeterminate, office who legislates and judges, and to some  
 or all such holders of determinate offices is reserved the right  
 of deliberating or judging about some things or about all  
 12 things. The conception of the citizen now begins to clear up.

He who has the power to take part in the deliberative or  
 judicial administration of any state is said by us to be a citizen  
 of that state; and speaking generally, a state is a body of  
 citizens sufficing for the purposes of life.

**2** But in practice a citizen is defined to be one of whom both  
 the parents are citizens; others insist on going further back;  
 say to two or three or more grandparents. This is a short  
 and practical definition; but there are some who raise the

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 6. § 11.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. ii. 11. § 7.



further question: How this third or fourth ancestor came to **III. 2** be a citizen? Gorgias of Leontini, partly because he was in a difficulty, partly in irony, said—‘Mortars are made by the mortar-makers, and the citizens of Larissa are also a manufactured article, made, like the kettles which bear their name [λαρισαῖοι], by the magistrates<sup>1</sup>.’ Yet the question is really 3 simple, for if, according to the definition just given, they shared in the government<sup>2</sup>, they were citizens. [This is a better definition than the other.] For the words, ‘born of a father or mother, who is a citizen,’ cannot possibly apply to the first inhabitants or founders of a state.

There is a greater difficulty in the case of those who have been made citizens after a revolution, as by Cleisthenes at Athens after the expulsion of the tyrants, for he enrolled in tribes a number of strangers and slaves and<sup>3</sup> resident aliens. The doubt in these cases is, not who is, but whether he, who 4 is, ought to be a citizen; and there will still be a further 1276 a doubt, whether he who ought not to be a citizen is one in fact, for what ought not to be is what is false and is not. Now, there are some who hold office, and yet ought not to 5 hold office, whom we call rulers, although they rule unjustly. And the citizen was defined by the fact of his holding some kind of rule or office—he who holds a judicial or legislative office fulfils our definition of a citizen. It is evident, therefore, that the citizens about whom the doubt has arisen must

<sup>1</sup> An untranslatable play upon the word *δημουργοί*, which means either ‘a magistrate’ or ‘an artisan.’

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. I. § 12.

<sup>3</sup> Inserting *καί* before *μετοίκους* with Bekker in his second edition. If *καί* is omitted, as in all the MSS., we must translate—‘he enrolled in tribes many metics, both strangers and slaves’: or, ‘he enrolled in tribes many strangers, and metics who had been slaves.’

III. 2 be called citizens; whether they ought to be so or not is a question which is bound up with the previous enquiry<sup>1</sup>.

3 A parallel question is raised respecting the state whether a certain act is or is not an act of the state; for example, in the transition from an oligarchy or a tyranny to a democracy.

2 In such cases persons refuse to fulfil their contracts or any other obligations on the ground that the tyrant, and not the state, contracted them; they argue that some constitutions are established by force, and not for the sake of the common good. But this would apply equally to democracies, for they too may be founded on violence, and then the acts of the democracy will be neither more nor less legitimate than those

3 of an oligarchy or of a tyranny. This question runs up into another—When shall we say that the state is the same, and when different? It would be a very superficial view which considered only the place and the inhabitants; for the soil and the population may be separated, and some of the inhabitants  
4 may live in one place and some in another. This, however, is not a very serious difficulty; we need only remark that the word 'state' is ambiguous, meaning both state and city.

It is further asked: When are men, living in the same place, to be regarded as a single city—what is the limit?  
5 Certainly not the wall of the city, for you might surround all Peloponnesus with a wall. But a city, having such vast circuit, would contain a nation rather than a state, like Babylon<sup>2</sup>, which, as they say, had been taken for three days before  
6 some part of the inhabitants became aware of the fact. This difficulty may, however, with advantage be deferred<sup>3</sup> to another occasion; the statesman has to consider the size of

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. i. § 1.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. ii. 6. § 6.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. vii. c. 4 and c. 5.

the state, and whether it should consist of more than one **III. 3**  
nation or not.

Again, shall we say that while the race of inhabitants, as well as their place of abode, remain the same, the city is also the same, although the citizens are always dying and being born, as we call rivers and fountains the same, although the water is always flowing away and coming again? Or shall we say that the generations of men, like the rivers, are the same, but that the state changes? For, since the state is <sup>1276 b</sup> a community of citizens united by sharing in one form of <sup>7</sup> government, when the form of the government changes and becomes different, then it may be supposed that the state is no longer the same, just as a tragic differs from a comic chorus, although the members of both may be identical. And <sup>8</sup> in this manner we speak of every union or composition of elements, when the form of their composition alters; for example, harmony of the same sounds is said to be different, accordingly as the Dorian or the Phrygian mode is employed. And if this is true it is evident that the sameness of the state <sup>9</sup> consists chiefly in the sameness of the constitution, and may be called or not called by the same name, whether the inhabitants are the same or entirely different. It is quite another question, whether a state ought or ought not to fulfil engagements when the form of government changes.

There is a point nearly allied to the preceding: Whether <sup>4</sup> the virtue of a good man and a good citizen is the same or not<sup>1</sup>. But, before entering on this discussion, we must first obtain some general notion of the virtue of the citizen. Like the sailor, the citizen is a member of a community. Now, <sup>2</sup> sailors have different functions, for one of them is a rower,

<sup>1</sup> Cp. N. Eth. v. 2. § 11.

III. 4 another a pilot, a third a look-out man, and a fourth is described by some similar term; and while the precise definition of each individual's virtue applies exclusively to him, there is, at the same time, a common definition applicable to them all. For they have all of them a common object, which  
 3 is safety in navigation. Similarly, one citizen differs from another, but the salvation of the community is the common business of them all. This community is the state; the virtue of the citizen must therefore be relative to the constitution of which he is a member. If, then, there are many forms of government, it is evident that the virtue of the good citizen cannot be the one perfect virtue. But we say that the good  
 4 man is he who has perfect virtue. Hence it is evident that the good citizen need not of necessity possess the virtue which makes a good man.

The same question may also be approached by another road,  
 5 from a consideration of the perfect state. If the state cannot be entirely composed of good men, and each citizen is expected to do his own business well, and must therefore have virtue,  
 1277 a inasmuch as all the citizens cannot be alike, the virtue of the citizen and of the good man cannot coincide. All must have the virtue of the good citizen—thus, and thus only, can the state be perfect; but they will not have the virtue of a good man, unless we assume that in the good state all the citizens must be good.

6 Again, the state may be compared to the living being: as the first elements into which the living being is resolved are soul and body, as the soul is made up of reason and appetite, the family of husband and wife, property of master and slave, so out of all these, as well as other dissimilar elements, the state is composed; and, therefore, the virtue of all the

citizens cannot possibly be the same, any more than the **III. 4** excellence of the leader of a chorus is the same as that of the performer who stands by his side. I have said enough to 7 show why the two kinds of virtue cannot be absolutely and always the same.

But will there then be no case in which the virtue of the good citizen and the virtue of the good man coincide? To this we answer [not that the good citizen, but] that the good ruler is a good and wise man, and that he who would be a statesman must be a wise man. And some persons say that 8 even the education of the ruler should be of a special kind; for are not the children of kings instructed in riding and military exercises? As Euripides says:

‘No subtle arts for me, but what the state requires<sup>1</sup>.’

As though there were a special education needed by a ruler. If then the virtue of a good ruler is the same as that of a good 9 man, and we assume further that the subject is a citizen as well as the ruler, the virtue of the good citizen and the virtue of the good man cannot be always the same, although in some cases [i.e. in the perfect state] they may; for the virtue of a ruler differs from that of a citizen. It was the sense of this difference which made Jason say that ‘he felt hungry when he was not a tyrant,’ meaning that he could not endure to live in a private station. But, on the other hand, it may be argued 10 that men are praised for knowing both how to rule and how to obey, and he is said to be a citizen of approved virtue who is able to do both. Now if we suppose the virtue of a good man to be that which rules, and the virtue of the citizen to include ruling and obeying, it cannot be said that they are

<sup>1</sup> Fragment from the *Aeolus*, quoted in Stobaeus, 45. 13.

III. 4 equally worthy of praise. Since, then, it is occasionally held

<sup>11</sup> that the ruler and the ruled should learn different things and not the same things, and that the citizen must know and share in both; the inference is obvious<sup>1</sup>. There is, indeed, the rule of a master which is concerned with menial offices<sup>2</sup>,—the master need not know how to perform these, but may employ others in the execution of them: anything else would be

<sup>12</sup> degrading; and by anything else I mean the menial duties which vary much in character and are executed by various classes of slaves, such, for example, as handicraftsmen, who, as their name signifies, live by the labour of their hands:—

<sup>1277</sup> b under these the mechanic is included. Hence in ancient times, and among some nations, the working classes had no share in the government—a privilege which they only acquired

<sup>13</sup> under the extreme democracy. Certainly the good man and the statesman and the good citizen ought not to learn the crafts of inferiors except for their own occasional use<sup>3</sup>; if they habitually practise them, there will cease to be a distinction between master and slave.

<sup>14</sup> This is not the rule of which we are speaking; but there is a rule of another kind, which is exercised over freemen and equals by birth—a constitutional rule, which the ruler must learn by obeying, as he would learn the duties of a general of cavalry by being under the orders of a general of cavalry, or the duties of a general of infantry by being under the orders of a general of infantry, or by having had the command of a company or brigade. It has been well said that ‘he who

<sup>15</sup> has never learned to obey cannot be a good commander.’ The

<sup>1</sup> Viz. that some kind of previous subjection is an advantage to the ruler. Cp. *infra*, § 14.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. i. 7. §§ 2-5.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. viii. 2. § 5.

two are not the same, but the good citizen ought to be capable **III. 4** of both; he should know how to govern like a freeman, and how to obey like a freeman—these are the virtues of a citizen. And, although the temperance and justice of a ruler are dis- 16 tinct from those of a subject, the virtue of a good man will include both; for the good man, who is free and also a subject, will not have one virtue only, say justice, but he will have distinct kinds of virtue, the one qualifying him to rule, the other to obey, and differing as the temperance and courage of men and women differ<sup>1</sup>. For a man would be thought a 17 coward if he had no more courage than a courageous woman, and a woman would be thought loquacious if she imposed no more restraint on her conversation than the good man; and indeed their part in the management of the household is different, for the duty of the one is to acquire, and of the other to preserve. Practical wisdom only is characteristic of the ruler<sup>2</sup>: it would seem that all other virtues must equally belong to ruler and subject. The virtue of the subject is 18 certainly not wisdom, but only true opinion; he may be compared to the maker of the flute, while his master is like the flute-player or user of the flute<sup>3</sup>.

From these considerations may be gathered the answer to the question, whether the virtue of the good man is the same as that of the good citizen, or different, and how far the same, and how far different<sup>4</sup>.

There still remains one more question about the citizen: **5** Is he only a true citizen who has a share of office, or is the mechanic to be included? If they who hold no office are to be deemed citizens, not every citizen can have this virtue of

<sup>1</sup> Cp. i. 13. § 9.      <sup>2</sup> Cp. Rep. iv. 428.      <sup>3</sup> Cp. Rep. x. 601 D, E.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. c. 5. § 10; c. 18. § 1; iv. 7. § 2; vii. 14. § 8.



- III. 5 ruling and obeying <sup>1</sup> which makes a citizen <sup>1</sup>. And if none of the lower class are citizens, in which part of the state are they to be placed? For they are not resident aliens, and they  
 1278 a are not foreigners. To this objection may we not reply, that  
<sup>2</sup> there is no more absurdity in excluding them than in excluding slaves and freedmen from any of the above-mentioned classes? It must be admitted that we cannot consider all those to be citizens who are necessary to the existence of the state; for example, children are not citizens equally with grown up men, who are citizens absolutely, but children, not being grown up,  
 3 are only citizens in a qualified sense. Doubtless in ancient times, and among some nations, the artisan class were slaves or foreigners, and therefore the majority of them are so now. The best form of state will not admit them to citizenship; but if they are admitted, then our definition of the virtue of a citizen will apply to some citizens and freemen only, and  
 4 not to those who work for their living. The latter class, to whom toil is a necessity, are either slaves who minister to the wants of individuals, or mechanics and labourers who are the servants of the community. These reflections carried a little further will explain their position; and indeed what has been said already is of itself explanation enough.
- 5 Since there are many forms of government there must be many varieties of citizens, and especially of citizens who are subjects; so that under some governments the mechanic and the labourer will be citizens, but not in others, as, for example,

<sup>1</sup> Or, 'for this man (i.e. the meaner sort of man) is a citizen and does not exercise rule' (see below, § 3, *εἰ δὲ καὶ οὗτος πολίτης*). According to the way of taking the passage which is followed in the text, *οὗτος* = *ὁ ἔχων τὴν τοιαύτην ἀρετὴν*: according to the second way, it refers to *βάνανσος*.

in aristocracy or the so-called government of the best (if there **III.** be such an one), in which honours are given according to virtue and merit; for no man can practise virtue who is living the life of a mechanic or labourer. In oligarchies the qualification for office is high, and therefore no labourer can ever be a citizen; but a mechanic may, for many of them are rich. At Thebes<sup>1</sup> there was a law that no man could hold office **7** who had not retired from business for ten years. In many states the law goes to the length of admitting aliens; for in some democracies a man is a citizen though his mother only be a citizen [and his father an alien]; and a similar principle is applied to illegitimate children; the law is relaxed when **8** there is a dearth of population. But when the number of citizens increases, first the children of a male or a female slave are excluded; then those whose mothers only are citizens; and at last the right of citizenship is confined to those whose fathers and mothers are both citizens.

Hence, as is evident, there are different kinds of citizens; **9** and he is a citizen in the highest sense who shares in the honours of the state. In the poems of Homer [Achilles complains of Agamemnon treating him] 'like some dishonoured stranger<sup>2</sup>;' for he who is excluded from the honours of the state is no better than an alien. But when this exclusion is concealed, then the object is to deceive one's fellow-countrymen.

As to the question whether the virtue of the good man is the **1278 b** same as that of the good citizen, the considerations already <sup>**10**</sup> adduced prove that in some states the two are the same, and in others different. When they are the same it is not the virtue of every citizen which is the same as that of the good

<sup>1</sup> Cp. vi. 7. § 4.

<sup>2</sup> Il. ix. 648.

III. 5 man, but only the virtue of the statesman and of those who have or may have, alone or in conjunction with others, the conduct of public affairs.

6 Having determined these questions, we have next to consider whether there is only one form of government or many, and if many, what they are, and how many, and what are the differences between them.

A constitution is the arrangement of magistracies in a state<sup>1</sup>, especially of the highest of all. The government is everywhere sovereign in the state, and the constitution is in fact the 2 government. For example, in democracies the people are supreme, but in oligarchies, the few; and, therefore, we say that these two forms of government are different: and so in other cases.

First, let us consider what is the purpose of a state, and how many forms of government there are by which human 3 society is regulated. We have already said, in the former part of this treatise<sup>2</sup>, when drawing a distinction between household-management and the rule of a master, that man is by nature a political animal. And therefore, men, even when they do not require one another's help, desire to live together all the same, and are in fact brought together by their common interests in proportion as they severally attain to any measure 4 of well-being. This is certainly the chief end, both of individuals and of states. And also for the sake of mere life (in which there is possibly some noble element) mankind meet together and maintain the political community, so long as the 5 evils of existence do not greatly overbalance the good<sup>3</sup>. And we all see that men cling to life even in the midst of

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. I. § 1; iv. I. § 10.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. i. 2. §§ 9, 10.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. Plato, Polit. 302 A.

misfortune, seeming to find in it a natural sweetness and **III. 6** happiness.

There is no difficulty in distinguishing the various kinds of authority; they have been often defined already in popular works<sup>1</sup>. The rule of a master, although the slave by nature 6 and the master by nature have in reality the same interests, is nevertheless exercised primarily with a view to the interest of the master, but accidentally considers the slave, since, if the slave perish, the rule of the master perishes with him. On 7 the other hand, the government of a wife and children and of a household, which we have called household-management, is exercised in the first instance for the good of the governed or for the common good of both parties, but essentially for the good of the governed, as we see to be the case in medicine, 1279 a gymnastics, and the arts in general, which are only accidentally concerned with the good of the artists themselves<sup>2</sup>. (For there is no reason why the trainer may not sometimes practise gymnastics, and the pilot is always one of the crew.) The 8 trainer or the pilot considers the good of those committed to his care. But, when he is one of the persons taken care of, he accidentally participates in the advantage, for the pilot is also a sailor, and the trainer becomes one of those in training. And so in politics: when the state is framed upon the prin- 9 ciple of equality and likeness, the citizens think that they ought to hold office by turns. In the order of nature every one would take his turn of service; and then again, somebody else would look after his interest, just as he, while in office, had looked after theirs<sup>3</sup>. [That was originally the way.] But nowadays, for the sake of the advantage which is to be 10

<sup>1</sup> Or, 'in our popular works.'

<sup>2</sup> Cp. Plato, Rep. i. 341 D.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. ii. 2. §§ 6, 7.

III. 6 gained from the public revenues and from office, men want to be always in office. One might imagine that the rulers, being sickly, were only kept in health while they continued in office; in that case we may be sure that they would be hunting  
 11 after places. The conclusion is evident: that governments, which have a regard to the common interest, are constituted in accordance with strict principles of justice, and are therefore true forms; but those which regard only the interest of the rulers are all defective and perverted forms, for they are despotic, whereas a state is a community of freemen.

7 Having determined these points, we have next to consider how many forms of government there are, and what they are; and in the first place what are the true forms, for when they are determined the perversions of them will at once be  
 2 apparent. The words constitution and government have the same meaning, and the government, which is the supreme authority in states, must be in the hands of one, or of a few, or of many. The true forms of government, therefore, are those in which the one, or the few, or the many, govern with a view to the common interest; but governments which rule with a view to the private interest, whether of the one, or of the few, or of the many, are perversions<sup>1</sup>. For citizens, if they are truly citizens, ought to participate in the advantages of a state. Of forms of government in which one rules, we  
 3 call that which regards the common interests, kingship or royalty; that in which more than one, but not many, rule, aristocracy [the rule of the best]; and it is so called, either because the rulers are the best men, or because they have at heart the best interests of the state and of the citizens. But when the citizens at large administer the state for the common

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Eth. viii, 10

interest, the government is called by the generic name—a **III. 7** constitution [πολιτεία]. And there is a reason for this use of language. One man or a few may excel in virtue; but of 4 virtue there are many kinds: and as the number increases it becomes more difficult for them to attain perfection in every 1279 b kind, though they may in military virtue, for this is found in the masses. Hence, in a constitutional government the fighting-men have the supreme power, and those who possess arms are the citizens.

Of the above-mentioned forms, the perversions are as 5 follows:—of royalty, tyranny; of aristocracy, oligarchy; of constitutional government, democracy. For tyranny is a kind of monarchy which has in view the interest of the monarch only; oligarchy has in view the interest of the wealthy; democracy, of the needy: none of them the common good of all.

But there are difficulties about these forms of government, 8 and it will therefore be necessary to state a little more at length the nature of each of them. For he who would make a philosophical study of the various sciences, and does not regard practice only, ought not to overlook or omit anything, but to set forth the truth in every particular. Tyranny, as 2 I was saying, is monarchy exercising the rule of a master over political society; oligarchy is when men of property have the government in their hands; democracy, the opposite, when the indigent, and not the men of property, are the rulers. And here arises the first of our difficulties, and it 3 relates to the definition just given. For democracy is said to be the government of the many. But what if the many are men of property and have the power in their hands? In like manner oligarchy is said to be the government of the few; but

**III. 8** what if the poor are fewer than the rich, and have the power in their hands because they are stronger? In these cases the distinction which we have drawn between these different forms of government would no longer hold good.

4 Suppose, once more, that we add wealth to the few and poverty to the many, and name the governments accordingly—an oligarchy is said to be that in which the few and the wealthy, and a democracy that in which the many and the  
5 poor are the rulers—there will still be a difficulty. For, if the only forms of government are the ones already mentioned, how shall we describe those other governments also just mentioned by us, in which the rich are the more numerous and the poor are the fewer, and both govern in their respective states?

6 The argument seems to show that, whether in oligarchies or in democracies, the number of the governing body, whether the greater number, as in a democracy, or the smaller number, as in an oligarchy, is an accident due to the fact that the rich everywhere are few, and the poor numerous. But if so, there is a misapprehension of the causes of the difference

7 between them. For the real difference between democracy  
1280 a and oligarchy is poverty and wealth. Wherever men rule by reason of their wealth, whether they be few or many, that is an oligarchy, and where the poor rule, that is a democracy. But as a fact the rich are few and the poor many: for few are well-to-do, whereas freedom is enjoyed by all, and wealth and freedom are the grounds on which the oligarchical and democratical parties respectively claim power in the state.

9 Let us begin by considering the common definitions of oligarchy and democracy, and what is justice oligarchical and



democratical. For all men cling to justice of some kind, but **III. 9**  
 their conceptions are imperfect and they do not express the  
 whole idea. For example, justice is thought by them to be,  
 and is, equality, not, however, for all, but only for equals.  
 And inequality is thought to be, and is, justice; neither is <sup>2</sup>  
 this for all, but only for unequals. When the persons are  
 omitted, then men judge erroneously. The reason is that  
 they are passing judgment on themselves, and most people  
 are bad judges in their own case. And whereas justice <sup>3</sup>  
 implies a relation to persons as well as to things, and a just  
 distribution, as I have already said in the *Ethics*<sup>1</sup>, embraces  
 alike persons and things, they acknowledge the equality of the  
 things, but dispute about the merit of the persons, chiefly for  
 the reason which I have just given—because they are bad  
 judges in their own affairs; and secondly, because both the  
 parties to the argument are speaking of a limited and partial  
 justice, but imagine themselves to be speaking of absolute  
 justice. For those who are unequal in one respect, for <sup>4</sup>  
 example wealth, consider themselves to be unequal in all;  
 and any who are equal in one respect, for example freedom,  
 consider themselves to be equal in all. But they leave out  
 the capital point. For if men met and associated out of <sup>5</sup>  
 regard to wealth only, their share in the state would be  
 proportioned to their property, and the oligarchical doctrine  
 would then seem to carry the day. It would not be just  
 that he who paid one mina should have the same share of  
 a hundred minae, <sup>2</sup> whether of the principal or of the profits<sup>2</sup>,  
 as he who paid the remaining ninety-nine. But a state <sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> N. Eth. v. 3. § 4.

<sup>2</sup> Or, with Bernays, 'either in the case of the original contributors or their successors.'

- III. 9 exists for the sake of a good life, and not for the sake of life only: if life only were the object, slaves and brute animals might form a state, but they cannot, for they have no share in happiness or in a life of free choice. Nor does a state exist for the sake of alliance and security from injustice<sup>1</sup>, nor yet for the sake of exchange and mutual intercourse; for then the Tyrrhenians and the Carthaginians, and all who have commercial treaties with one another, would be the citizens of  
 7 one state. True, they have agreements about imports, and engagements that they will do no wrong to one another, and  
 1280 b written articles of alliance. But there are no magistracies common to the contracting parties who will enforce their engagements; different states have each their own magistracies. Nor does one state take care that the citizens of the other are such as they ought to be, nor see that those who come under the terms of the treaty do no wrong or wickedness at all, but only that they do no injustice to one another.  
 8 Whereas, those who care for good government take into consideration [the larger question of] virtue and vice in states. Whence it may be further inferred that <sup>2</sup> virtue must be the serious care of a state which truly deserves the name<sup>2</sup>: for [without this ethical end] the community becomes a mere alliance which differs only in place from alliances of which the members live apart; and law is only a convention, 'a surety to one another of justice,' as the sophist Lycophron says, and has no real power to make the citizens good and just.  
 9 This is obvious; for suppose distinct places, such as

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. I. § 4.

<sup>2</sup> Or, 'virtue must be the care of a state which is truly so called, and not merely in name.'

Corinth and Megara, to be united by a wall, still they would **III. 9**  
not be one city, not even if the citizens had the right to **10**  
intermarry, which is one of the rights peculiarly characteristic  
of states. Again, if men dwelt at a distance from one  
another, but not so far off as to have no intercourse, and  
there were laws among them that they should not wrong  
each other in their exchanges, neither would this be a state.  
Let us suppose that one man is a carpenter, another a  
husbandman, another a shoemaker, and so on, and that their  
number is ten thousand : nevertheless, if they have nothing in  
common but exchange, alliance, and the like, that would not  
constitute a state. Why is this? Surely not because they **11**  
are at a distance from one another : for even supposing that  
such a community were to meet in one place, and that each  
man had a house of his own, which was in a manner his  
state, and that they made alliance with one another, but only  
against evil-doers ; still an accurate thinker would not deem  
this to be a state, if their intercourse with one another was of  
the same character after as before their union. It is clear **12**  
then that a state is not a mere society, having a common  
place, established for the prevention of crime and for the sake  
of exchange. These are conditions without which a state  
cannot exist ; but all of them together do not constitute  
a state, which is a community of well-being in families and  
aggregations of families, for the sake of a perfect and self-  
sufficing life. Such a community can only be established **13**  
among those who live in the same place and intermarry.  
Hence arise in cities family connexions, brotherhoods,  
common sacrifices, amusements which draw men together.  
They are created by friendship, for friendship is the motive  
of society. The end is the good life, and these are the

III. 9 means towards it. And the state is the union of families and  
<sup>14</sup> villages having for an end a perfect and self-sufficing life, by  
 1281 <sup>a</sup> which we mean a happy and honourable life <sup>1</sup>.

Our conclusion, then, is that political society exists for the  
 15 sake of noble actions, and not of mere companionship. And  
 they who contribute most to such a society have a greater  
 share in it than those who have the same or a greater freedom  
 or nobility of birth but are inferior to them in political virtue;  
 or than those who exceed them in wealth but are surpassed  
 by them in virtue.

From what has been said it will be clearly seen that all the  
 partisans of different forms of government speak of a part of  
 justice only.

10 There is also a doubt as to what is to be the supreme  
 power in the state:—Is it the multitude? Or the wealthy?  
 Or the good? Or the one best man? Or a tyrant? Any  
 of these alternatives seems to involve disagreeable conse-  
 quences. If the poor, for example, because they are more in  
 number, divide among themselves the property of the rich,  
 is not this unjust? No, by heaven (will be the reply), for  
 2 the lawful authority [i. e. the people] willed it. But if this is  
 not injustice, pray what is? Again, when [in the first  
 division] all has been taken, and the majority divide anew the  
 property of the minority, is it not evident, if this goes on,  
 that they will ruin the state? Yet surely, virtue is not the  
 ruin of those who possess her, nor is justice destructive of  
 a state <sup>2</sup>; and therefore this law of confiscation clearly cannot  
 3 be just. If it were, all the acts of a tyrant must of necessity  
 be just; for he only coerces other men by superior power,  
 just as the multitude coerce the rich. But is it just, then,

<sup>1</sup> Co. i. 2. § 8; N. Eth. i. 7. § 6.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. Plato, Rep. i. 351, 352.

that the few and the wealthy should be the rulers? And **III. 10** what if they, in like manner, rob and plunder the people—is this just? If so, the other case [i.e. the case of the majority plundering the minority] will likewise be just. But 4 there can be no doubt that all these things are wrong and unjust.

Then ought the good to rule and have supreme power? But in that case everybody else, being excluded from power, will be dishonoured. For the offices of a state are posts of honour; and if one set of men always hold them, the rest must be deprived of them. Then will it be well that the one 5 best man should rule? Nay, that is still more oligarchical, for the number of those who are dishonoured is thereby increased. Some one may say that it is bad for a man, subject as he is to all the accidents of human passion, to have the supreme power, rather than the law. But what if the law itself be democratical or oligarchical, how will that help us out of our difficulties<sup>1</sup>? Not at all; the same consequences will follow.

Most of these questions may be reserved for another **11** occasion. The principle that the multitude ought to be supreme rather than the few best is capable of a satisfactory explanation, and, though not free from difficulty, yet seems to contain an element of truth. For the many, of whom each 2 individual is but an ordinary person, when they meet together **1281 b** may very likely be better than the few good, if regarded not individually but collectively, just as a feast to which many contribute is better than a dinner provided out of a single purse. For each individual among the many has a share of virtue and prudence, and when they meet together they

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 11. § 20.

- III. 11 become in a manner one man, who has many feet, and hands, and senses; that is a figure of their mind and disposition.
- 3 Hence the many are better judges than a single man of music and poetry; for some understand one part, and some another,
- 4 and among them, they understand the whole. There is a similar combination of qualities in good men, who differ from any individual of the many, as the beautiful are said to differ from those who are not beautiful, and works of art from realities, because in them the scattered elements are combined, although, if taken separately, the eye of one person or some other feature in another person would be fairer than
- 5 in the picture. Whether this principle can apply to every democracy, and to all bodies of men, is not clear. Or rather, by heaven, in some cases it is impossible of application; for the argument would equally hold about brutes; and wherein, it will be asked, do some men differ from brutes? But there may be bodies of men about whom our statement is nevertheless true. And if so, the difficulty which has been already raised, and also another which is akin to it—viz. what power should be assigned to the mass of freemen and citizens, who are not rich and have no personal merit—are both solved.
- 7 There is still a danger in allowing them to share the great offices of state, for their folly will lead them into error, and their dishonesty into crime. But there is a danger also in not letting them share, for a state in which many poor men are
- 8 excluded from office will necessarily be full of enemies. The only way of escape is to assign to them some deliberative and judicial functions. For this reason Solon<sup>1</sup> and certain other legislators give them the power of electing to offices, and of calling the magistrates to account, but they do not allow

<sup>1</sup> Cp. ii. 12. § 5.

them to hold office singly. When they meet together their **III. 11** perceptions are quite good enough, and combined with the 9 better class they are useful to the state (just as impure food when mixed with what is pure sometimes makes the entire mass more wholesome than a small quantity of the pure would be), but each individual, left to himself, forms an imperfect judgment. On the other hand, the popular 10 form of government involves certain difficulties. In the first place, it might be objected that he who can judge of the healing of a sick man would be one who could himself heal his disease, and make him whole—that is, in other words, the physician; and so in all professions and arts. 1282 a. As, then, the physician ought to be called to account by physicians, so ought men in general to be called to account by their peers. But physicians are of three kinds:—there 11 is the apothecary, and there is the physician of the higher class, and thirdly the intelligent man who has studied the art: in all arts there is such a class; and we attribute the power of judging to them quite as much as to professors of the art. Now, does not the same principle apply to 12 elections? For a right election can only be made by those who have knowledge; a geometrician, for example, will choose rightly in matters of geometry, or a pilot in matters of steering; and, even if there be some occupations and arts with which private persons are familiar, they certainly cannot judge better than those who know. So that, according 13 to this argument, neither the election of magistrates, nor the calling of them to account, should be entrusted to the many. 14 Yet possibly these objections are to a great extent met by our old answer, that if the people are not utterly degraded, although individually they may be worse judges than those



III. 11 who have special knowledge—as a body they are as good or better. Moreover, there are some artists whose works are judged of solely, or in the best manner, not by themselves, but by those who do not possess the art; for example, the knowledge of the house is not limited to the builder only; the user, or, in other words, the master, of the house will even be a better judge than the builder, just as the pilot will judge better of a rudder than the carpenter, and the guest will judge better of a feast than the cook.

- 15 This difficulty seems now to be sufficiently answered, but there is another akin to it. That inferior persons should have authority in greater matters than the good would appear to be a strange thing, yet the election and calling to account of the magistrates is the greatest of all. And these, as I was saying, are functions which in some states are assigned to the people, for the assembly is supreme in all such matters.
- 16 Yet persons of any age, and having but a small property qualification, sit in the assembly and deliberate and judge, although for the great officers of state, such as controllers and generals, a high qualification is required. This difficulty may be solved in the same manner as the preceding, and the present practice of democracies may be really defensible.
- 17 For the power does not reside in the dicast, or senator, or ecclesiast, but in the court and the senate, and the assembly, of which individual senators, or ecclesiasts, or
- 18 dicasts, are only parts or members. And for this reason the many may claim to have a higher authority than the few; for the people, and the senate, and the courts consist of many persons, and their property collectively is greater than the property of one or of a few individuals holding great offices. But enough of this.

The discussion of the first question<sup>1</sup> shows nothing so clearly as that laws, when good, should be supreme; and that the magistrate or magistrates should regulate those matters only on which the laws are unable to speak with precision owing to the difficulty of any general principle embracing all particulars<sup>2</sup>. But what are good laws has not yet been clearly explained; the old difficulty remains<sup>3</sup>. The goodness or badness, justice or injustice, of laws is of necessity relative to the constitutions of states. But if so, true forms of government will of necessity have just laws, and perverted forms of government will have unjust laws.

In all sciences and arts the end is a good, and especially and above all in the highest of all<sup>4</sup>—this is the political science of which the good is justice, in other words, the common interest. All men think justice to be a sort of equality; and to a certain extent<sup>5</sup> they agree in the philosophical distinctions which have been laid down by us about Ethics<sup>6</sup>. For they admit that justice is a thing having relation to persons, and that equals ought to have equality. But there still remains a question—equality or inequality of what? Here is a difficulty which the political philosopher has to resolve. For very likely some persons will say that offices of state ought to be unequally distributed according to superior excellence, in whatever respect, of the citizen, although there is no other difference between him and the rest of the community; for that those who differ in any one respect have different rights and claims. But, surely, if this is true, the complexion or height of a man, or any other advantage, will be a reason

III. 11  
19  
1282 b

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 10. § 1.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. N. Eth. v. 10. § 4.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. c. 10. § 5.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. i. 1. § 1; N. Eth. i. 1. § 1.

<sup>5</sup> Cp. c. 9. § 1.

<sup>6</sup> Cp. N. Eth. v. 3.

III. 12 for his obtaining a greater share of political rights. The  
 4 error here lies upon the surface, and may be illustrated from  
 the other arts and sciences. When a number of flute-players  
 are equal in their art, there is no reason why those of them  
 who are better born should have better flutes given to them;  
 for they will not play any better on the flute, and the superior  
 instrument should be reserved for him who is the superior  
 artist. If what I am saying is still obscure, it will be made  
 5 clearer as we proceed. For if there were a superior flute-  
 player who was far inferior in birth and beauty, although  
 either of these may be a greater good than the art of flute-  
 playing, and persons gifted with these qualities may excel the  
 flute-player in a greater ratio than he excels them in his art,  
 1283 a still he ought to have the best flutes given to him, unless  
 the advantages of wealth and birth contribute to excellence  
 6 in flute-playing, which they do not. Moreover upon this  
 principle any good may be compared with any other. For  
 if a given height, then height in general may be measured  
 either against height or against freedom. Thus if A excels in  
 height more than B in virtue, and height in general is more  
 excellent than virtue, all things will be commensurable  
 [which is absurd]; for if a certain magnitude is greater  
 than some other, it is clear that some other will be equal.  
 7 But since no such comparison can be made, it is evident that  
 there is good reason why in politics men do not ground their  
 claim to office on every sort of inequality any more than  
 in the arts. For if some be slow, and others swift, that  
 is no reason why the one should have little and the others  
 much; it is in gymnastic contests that such excellence is  
 8 rewarded. Whereas the rival claims of candidates for office  
 can only be based on the possession of elements which enter

into the composition of a state, [such as wealth, virtue, etc.]. **III. 12**  
 And therefore the noble, or freeborn, or rich, may with good reason claim office; for holders of offices must be freemen and tax-payers: a state can be no more composed entirely of poor men than entirely of slaves. But if wealth <sup>9</sup> and freedom are necessary elements, justice and valour are equally so <sup>1</sup>; for without the former a state cannot exist at all, without the latter not well.

If the existence of the state is alone to be considered, then **13** it would seem that all, or some at least, of these claims are just; but, if we take into account a good life, as I have already said <sup>2</sup>, education and virtue have superior claims. As, however, those who are equal in one thing ought not to be equal in all, nor those who are unequal in one thing to be unequal in all, it is certain that all forms of government which rest on either of these principles are perversions. All men have a claim in a certain sense, as I have already <sup>2</sup> admitted, but they have not an absolute claim. The rich claim because they have a greater share in the land, and land is the common element of the state; also they are generally more trustworthy in contracts. The free claim under the same title as the noble; for they are nearly akin. And the noble are citizens in a truer sense than the ignoble, since good birth is always valued in a man's own home and country <sup>3</sup>. Another reason is, that those who are sprung from better <sup>3</sup> ancestors are likely to be better men, for nobility is excellence of race. Virtue, too, may be truly said to have a claim, for justice has been acknowledged by us to be a social <sup>4</sup> virtue, and it implies all others <sup>5</sup>. Again, the many may urge their <sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iv. 4. §§ 12-16.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. i. 6. § 7.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. i. 2. § 16.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 9. §§ 14, 15.

<sup>5</sup> Cp. N. Eth. v. 1. § 15.

- III. 13 claim against the few; for, when taken collectively, and compared with the few, they are stronger and richer and  
 1283 b better. But, what if the good, the rich, the noble, and the other classes who make up a state, are all living together in the same city; will there, or will there not, be any doubt  
 5 who shall rule?—No doubt at all in determining who ought to rule in each of the above-mentioned forms of government. For states are characterized by differences in their governing bodies—one of them has a government of the rich, another of the virtuous, and so on. But a difficulty arises when all  
 6 these elements coexist. How are we to decide? Suppose the virtuous to be very few in number: may we consider their numbers in relation to their duties, and ask whether they are enough to administer the state, or must they be so many as will make up a state? Objections may be urged against all  
 7 the aspirants to political power. For those who found their claims on wealth or family have no basis of justice; on this principle, if any one person were richer than all the rest, it is clear that he ought to be the ruler of them. In like manner he who is very distinguished by his birth ought to have the superiority over all those who claim on the ground that they are  
 8 freeborn. In an aristocracy, or government of the best, a like difficulty occurs about virtue; for if one citizen be better than the other members of the government, however good they may be, he too, upon the same principle of justice, should rule over them. And if the people are to be supreme because they are stronger than the few, then if one man, or more than one, but not a majority, is stronger than the many, they ought to rule, and not the many.
- 9 All these considerations appear to show that none of the principles on which men claim to rule, and hold all

other men in subjection to them, are strictly right. To **III. 13** those who claim to be the masters of state on the ground <sup>10</sup> of their virtue or their wealth, the many might fairly answer that they themselves are often better and richer than the few—I do not say individually, but collectively. And <sup>11</sup> another ingenious objection which is sometimes put forward may be met in a similar manner. Some persons doubt whether the legislator who desires to make the justest laws ought to legislate with a view to the good of the higher classes or of the many, when the case which we have mentioned occurs [i. e. when all the elements coexist<sup>1</sup>]. Now what is just or right is to be interpreted in the sense <sup>12</sup> of ‘what is equal’; and that which is right in the sense of being equal is to be considered with reference to the advantage of the state, and the common good of the citizens. And a citizen is one who shares in governing and being governed. He differs under different forms of government, <sup>1284 a</sup> but in the best state he is one who is able and willing to be governed and to govern with a view to the life of virtue.

If, however, there be some one person, or more than one, <sup>13</sup> although not enough to make up the full complement of a state, whose virtue is so pre-eminent that the virtues or the political capacity of all the rest admit of no comparison with his or theirs, he or they can be no longer regarded as part of a state; for justice will not be done to the superior, if he is reckoned only as the equal of those who are so far inferior to him in virtue and in political capacity. Such an one may truly be deemed a God among men. Hence we see that <sup>14</sup> legislation is necessarily concerned only with those who are equal in birth and in power; and that for men of pre-eminent

<sup>1</sup> Cp. § 4.

III. 13 virtue there is no law—they are themselves a law. Any one would be ridiculous who attempted to make laws for them: they would probably retort what, in the fable of Antisthenes, the lions said to the hares [‘where are your claws?’], when in the council of the beasts the latter began haranguing  
 15 and claiming equality for all. And for this reason democratic states have instituted ostracism; equality is above all things their aim, and therefore they ostracise and banish from the city for a time those who seem to predominate too much through their wealth, or the number of their friends, or  
 16 through any other political influence. Mythology tells us that the Argonauts left Heracles behind for a similar reason; the ship Argo would not take him because she feared that he would have been too much for the rest of the crew. Wherefore those who denounce tyranny and blame the counsel which Periander gave to Thrasybulus cannot be held altogether just in  
 17 their censure. The story is that Periander, when the herald was sent to ask counsel of him, said nothing, but only cut off the tallest ears of corn till he had brought the field to a level. The herald did not know the meaning of the action, but came and reported what he had seen to Thrasybulus, who understood that he was to cut off the principal men in the  
 18 state<sup>1</sup>; and this is a policy not only expedient for tyrants or in practice confined to them, but equally necessary in oligarchies and democracies. Ostracism<sup>2</sup> is a measure of the same kind, which acts by disabling and banishing the most  
 19 prominent citizens. Great powers do the same to whole cities and nations, as the Athenians did to the Samians, Chians, and Lesbians; no sooner had they obtained a firm grasp of the empire, than they humbled their allies contrary

<sup>1</sup> Cp. v. 10. § 13.<sup>2</sup> Cp. v. 3. § 3.



to treaty; and the Persian king has repeatedly crushed the **III. 13**  
Medes, Babylonians, and other nations, when their spirit has <sup>1284 b</sup>  
been stirred by the recollection of their former greatness.

The problem is a universal one, and equally concerns all <sup>20</sup>  
forms of government, true as well as false; for, although  
perverted forms with a view to their own interests may  
adopt this policy, those which seek the common interest do  
so likewise. The same thing may be observed in the arts <sup>21</sup>  
and sciences<sup>1</sup>; for the painter will not allow the figure to  
have a foot which, however beautiful, is not in proportion,  
nor will the ship-builder allow the stern or any other part  
of the vessel to be unduly large, any more than the chorus-  
master will allow any one who sings louder or better than all  
the rest to sing in the choir. <sup>2</sup> Monarchs, too, may practise <sup>22</sup>  
compulsion and still live in harmony with their cities, if  
their government is for the interest of the state<sup>2</sup>. Hence  
where there is an acknowledged superiority the argument in  
favour of ostracism is based upon a kind of political justice.  
It would certainly be better that the legislator should from the <sup>23</sup>  
first so order his state as to have no need of such a remedy.  
But if the need arises, the next best thing is that he should  
endeavour to correct the evil by this or some similar measure.  
The principle, however, has not been fairly applied in states;  
for, instead of looking to the public good, they have used  
ostracism for factious purposes. It is true that under perverted <sup>24</sup>  
forms of government, and from their special point of view,  
such a measure is just and expedient, but it is also clear that  
it is not absolutely just. In the perfect state there would be

<sup>1</sup> Cp. v. 3. § 6; 9. § 7; vii. 4. § 10; Rep. iv. 420.

<sup>2</sup> Or, 'Monarchies do not differ in this respect (i. e. the employment  
of compulsion) from free states, but their government must be,' etc.

III. 13 great doubts about the use of it, not when applied to excess in strength, wealth, popularity, or the like, but when used against some one who is pre-eminent in virtue,—what is to  
 25 be done with him? Mankind will not say that such an one is to be expelled and exiled; on the other hand, he ought not to be a subject—that would be as if men should claim to rule over Zeus on the principle of rotation of office. The only alternative is that all should joyfully obey such a ruler, according to what seems to be the order of nature, and that men like him should be kings in their state for life.

14 The preceding discussion, by a natural transition, leads to the consideration of royalty, which we admit to be one of the true forms of government<sup>1</sup>. Let us see whether in order to be well governed a state or country should be under the rule of a king or under some other form of government; and whether monarchy, although good for some, may not be  
 2 bad for others. But first we must determine whether there is  
 1285 a one species of royalty or many. It is not easy to see that there are many, and that the manner of government is not the same in all of them.

3 (1) Of royalties according to law, the Lacedaemonian is thought to answer best to the true pattern; but there the royal power is not absolute, except when the kings go on an expedition, and then they take the command. Matters of  
 4 religion are likewise committed to them. The kingly office is in truth a kind of generalship, irresponsible and perpetual. The king has not the power of life and death, except<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> ii. 9. § 29.

<sup>2</sup> Omitting *ἐν τινι βασιλείᾳ*, which is bracketed by Bekker in his 2nd edit.

when upon a campaign and in the field; after the manner of **III. 14** the ancients which is described in Homer. For Agamemnon is patient when he is attacked in the assembly, but when the army goes out to battle he has the power even of life and death. Does he not say?—

5

‘When I find a man skulking apart from the battle, nothing shall save him from the dogs and vultures, for in my hands is death<sup>1</sup>.’

This, then, is one form of royalty—a generalship for life: and of such royalties some are hereditary and others elective.

(2) There is another sort of monarchy not uncommon 6 among the barbarians, which nearly resembles tyranny. But even this is legal and hereditary. For barbarians, being more servile in character than Hellenes, and Asiatics than Europeans, do not rebel against a despotic government. Such 7 royalties have the nature of tyrannies because the people are by nature slaves<sup>2</sup>; but there is no danger of their being overthrown, for they are hereditary and legal. Wherefore also their guards are such as a king and not such as a tyrant would employ, that is to say, they are composed of citizens, whereas the guards of tyrants are mercenaries<sup>3</sup>. For kings rule according to law over voluntary subjects, but tyrants over involuntary; and the one are guarded by their fellow-citizens, the others are guarded against them.

These are two forms of monarchy, and there was a 8 third (3) which existed in ancient Hellas, called an Aesymnetia or dictatorship. This may be defined generally as an elective tyranny, which, like the barbarian monarchy, is legal,

<sup>1</sup> Il. ii. 391–393. The last clause is not found in our Homer.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. i. 2. § 4.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. v. 10. § 10.

III. 14 but differs from it in not being hereditary. Sometimes the  
 9 office is held for life, sometimes for a term of years, or until  
 certain duties have been performed. For example, the  
 Mitylenaeans elected Pittacus leader against the exiles, who  
 10 were headed by Antimenides and Alcaeus the poet. And  
 Alcaeus himself says in one of his <sup>1</sup>irregular songs <sup>1</sup>, 'They  
 chose Pittacus tyrant,' and he reproaches his fellow-citizens  
 for

'having made the low-born Pittacus tyrant of the spiritless  
 1285 b and ill-fated city, with one voice shouting his praises.'

11 These forms of government have always had the character  
 of despotism, because they possess tyrannical power; but  
 inasmuch as they are elective and acquiesced in by their  
 subjects, they are kingly.

(4) There is a fourth species of kingly rule—that of the  
 heroic times—which was hereditary and legal, and was exer-  
 12 cised over willing subjects. For the first chiefs were bene-  
 factors of the people <sup>2</sup> in arts or arms; they either gathered  
 them into a community, or procured land for them; and thus  
 they became kings of voluntary subjects, and their power was  
 inherited by their descendants. They took the command in  
 war and presided over the sacrifices, except those which  
 required a priest. They also decided causes either with or  
 without an oath; and when they swore, the form of the oath  
 13 was the stretching out of their sceptre. In ancient times their  
 power extended to all things whatsoever, in city and country,  
 as well as in foreign parts; but at a later date they relin-  
 quished several of these privileges, and others the people took  
 from them, until in some states nothing was left to them

<sup>1</sup> Or, 'banquet-odes,' σκόλια.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. v. c. 10. § 3.

but the sacrifices; and where they retained more of the **III. 14** reality they had only the right of leadership in war beyond the border.

These, then, are the four kinds of royalty. First the **14** monarchy of the heroic ages; this was exercised over voluntary subjects, but limited to certain functions; the king was a general and a judge, and had the control of religion. The second is that of the barbarians, which is an hereditary despotic government in accordance with law. A third is the power of the so-called Aesymnete or Dictator; this is an elective tyranny. The fourth is the Lacedaemonian, which is in fact a generalship, hereditary and perpetual. These **15** four forms differ from one another in the manner which I have described.

There is a fifth form of kingly rule in which one has the disposal of all, just as each tribe or each state has the disposal of the public property; this form corresponds to the control of a household. For as household management is the kingly rule of a house, so kingly rule is the household management of a city, or of a nation, or of many nations.

Of these forms we need only consider two, the Lacedae- **15** monian and the absolute royalty; for most of the others lie in a region between them, having less power than the last, and more than the first. Thus the enquiry is reduced to two **2** points: first, is it advantageous to the state that there should be a perpetual general, and if so, should the office be confined to one family, or open to the citizens in turn? Secondly, is **1286 a** it well that a single man should have the supreme power in all things? The first question falls under the head of laws rather than of constitutions; for perpetual generalship might equally exist under any form of government, so that this **3**

III. 15 matter may be dismissed for the present. The other kind of royalty is a sort of constitution; this we have now to consider, and briefly to run over the difficulties involved in it. We will begin by enquiring whether it is more advantageous to be ruled by the best man or by the best laws<sup>1</sup>.

4 The advocates of royalty maintain that the laws speak only in general terms, and cannot provide for circumstances; and that for any science to abide by written rules is absurd. Even in Egypt the physician is allowed to alter his treatment after the fourth day, but if sooner, he takes the risk. Hence it is argued that a government acting according to written laws is  
5 plainly not the best. Yet surely the ruler cannot dispense with the general principle which exists in law; and he is a better ruler who is free from passion than he who is passionate. Whereas the law is passionless, passion must ever sway the heart of man.

6 Yes, some one will answer, but then on the other hand an individual will be better able to advise in particular cases. [To whom we in turn make reply:] A king must legislate, and laws must be passed, but these laws will have no authority when they miss the mark, though in all other cases retaining their authority. [Yet a further question remains behind:] When the law cannot determine a point at all, or not well,  
7 should the one best man or should all decide? According to our present practice assemblies meet, sit in judgment, deliberate and decide, and their judgments all relate to individual cases. Now any member of the assembly, taken separately, is certainly inferior to the wise man. But the state is made up of many individuals. And as a feast to which all the guests contribute is better than a banquet furnished by a single man<sup>2</sup>,

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Plato, *Polit.* pp. 293-295.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. *supra*, c. 11. § 2.

so a multitude is a better judge of many things than any individual. III. 15

Again, the many are more incorruptible than the few; they 8 are like the greater quantity of water which is less easily corrupted than a little. The individual is liable to be overcome by anger or by some other passion, and then his judgment is necessarily perverted; but it is hardly to be supposed that a great number of persons would all get into a passion and go wrong at the same moment. Let us assume that they are 9 freemen, never acting in violation of the law, but filling up the gaps which the law is obliged to leave. Or, if such virtue is scarcely attainable by the multitude, we need only suppose that the majority are good men and good citizens, and ask which will be the more incorruptible, the one good ruler, or the many who are all good? Will not the many? But, you 1286 b will say, there may be parties among them, whereas the one man is not divided against himself. To which we may 10 answer that their character is as good as his. If we call the rule of many men, who are all of them good, aristocracy, and the rule of one man royalty, then aristocracy will be better for states than royalty, whether the government is supported by force or not<sup>1</sup>, provided only that a number of men equal in virtue can be found.

The first governments were kingships, probably for this 11 reason, because of old, when cities were small, men of eminent virtue were few. They were made kings because they were benefactors<sup>2</sup>, and benefits can only be bestowed by good men. But when many persons equal in merit arose, no longer enduring the pre-eminence of one, they desired to have a commonwealth, and set up a constitution. The ruling class 12

<sup>1</sup> Cp. *infra*, § 15.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 14. § 12.



III. 15 soon deteriorated and enriched themselves out of the public treasury; riches became the path to honour, and so oligarchies naturally grew up. These passed into tyrannies and tyrannies into democracies; for love of gain in the ruling classes was always tending to diminish their number, and so to strengthen the masses, who in the end set upon their masters and established democracies. Since cities have 13 increased in size, no other form of government appears to be any longer possible<sup>1</sup>.

Even supposing the principle to be maintained that kingly power is the best thing for states, how about the family of the king? Are his children to succeed him? If they are no 14 better than anybody else, that will be mischievous. But [says the lover of royalty] the king, though he might, will not hand on his power to his children. That, however, is hardly to be expected, and is too much to ask of human nature. There is also a difficulty about the force which he is to employ; should a king have guards about him by whose 15 aid he may be able to coerce the refractory? but if not, how will he administer his kingdom? Even if he be the lawful sovereign who does nothing arbitrarily or contrary to law, still he must have some force wherewith to maintain the law. 16 In the case of a limited monarchy there is not much difficulty in answering this question; the king must have such force as will be more than a match for one or more individuals, but not so great as that of the people. The ancients observed this principle when they gave the guards to any one whom they appointed dictator or tyrant. Thus, when Dionysius asked the Syracusans to allow him guards, somebody advised that they should give him only a certain number.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iv. 6. § 5; 13. § 10.

At this place in the discussion naturally follows the enquiry **III. 16**  
respecting the king who acts solely according to his own <sup>1287 a</sup>  
will; he has now to be considered. The so-called limited  
monarchy, or kingship according to law, as I have already  
remarked<sup>1</sup>, is not a distinct form of government, for under all  
governments, as, for example, in a democracy or aristocracy,  
there may be a general holding office for life, and one person  
is often made supreme over the internal administration of  
a state. A magistracy of this kind exists at Epidamnus<sup>2</sup>,  
and also at Opus, but in the latter city has a more limited  
power. Now, absolute monarchy, or the arbitrary rule of<sup>2</sup>  
a sovereign over all the citizens, in a city which consists of  
equals, is thought by some to be quite contrary to nature; it  
is argued that those who are by nature equals must have the  
same natural right and worth, and that for unequals to have  
an equal share, or for equals to have an unequal share, in the  
offices of state, is as bad as for different bodily constitutions  
to have the same food and clothing or the same different.  
Wherefore it is thought to be just that among equals every<sup>3</sup>  
one be ruled as well as rule, and that all should have their  
turn. We thus arrive at law; for an order of succession  
implies law. And the rule of the law is preferable to that  
of any individual. On the same principle, even if it be better<sup>4</sup>  
for certain individuals to govern, they should be made only  
guardians and ministers of the law. For magistrates there  
must be,—this is admitted; but then men say that to give  
authority to any one man when all are equal is unjust. There  
may indeed be cases which the law seems unable to determine,  
but in such cases can a man? Nay, it will be replied, the<sup>5</sup>  
law trains officers for this express purpose, and appoints them

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 15. § 2.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. v. 1. §§ 10, 11; 4. § 7.

**III. 16** to determine matters which are left undecided by it to the best of their judgment. Further it permits them to make any amendment of the existing laws which experience suggests. [But still they are only the ministers of the law.] He who bids the law rule, may be deemed to bid God and Reason alone rule, but he who bids man rule adds an element of the beast; for desire is a wild beast, and passion perverts the minds of rulers, even when they are the best of men. The  
 6 law is reason unaffected by desire. We are told that a patient should call in a physician; he will not get better if he is  
 7 doctored out of a book. But the parallel of the arts is clearly not in point; for the physician does nothing contrary to reason from motives of friendship; he only cures a patient and takes a fee; whereas magistrates do many things from spite and partiality. And, indeed, if a man suspected the physician of being in league with his enemies to destroy him  
 8 for a bribe, he would rather have recourse to the book. Even  
 1287<sup>b</sup> physicians when they are sick, call in other physicians, and training-masters when they are in training, other training-masters, as if they could not judge truly about their own case and might be influenced by their feelings. Hence it is evident that in seeking for justice men seek for the mean or  
 9 neutral<sup>1</sup>, and the law is the mean. Again, customary laws have more weight, and relate to more important matters, than written laws, and a man may be a safer ruler than the written law, but not safer than the customary law.

Again, it is by no means easy for one man to superintend many things; he will have to appoint a number of subordinates; and what difference does it make whether these subordinates always existed or were appointed by him because he

<sup>1</sup> Cp. N. Eth. v. 4. § 7.

needed them? If, as I said before<sup>1</sup>, the good man has **III. 16** a right to rule because he is better, then two good men are <sup>10</sup> better than one: this is the old saying,—

‘two going together<sup>2</sup>;’

and the prayer of Agamemnon,—

‘would that I had ten such counsellors<sup>3</sup>!’

And at this day there are some magistrates, for example judges<sup>4</sup>, who have authority to decide matters which the law is unable to determine, since no one doubts that the law would command and decide in the best manner whatever it could. But some things can, and other things cannot, be com- **11** prehended under the law, and this is the origin of the vexed question whether the best law or the best man should rule. For matters of detail about which men deliberate cannot be included in legislation. Nor does any one deny that the decision of such matters must be left to man, but it is argued that there should be many judges, and not one **12** only. For every ruler<sup>5</sup> who has been trained by the law **13** judges well; and it would surely seem strange that a person should see better with two eyes, or hear better with two ears, or act better with two hands or feet, than many with many; indeed, it is already the practice of kings to make to themselves many eyes and ears and hands and feet. For they make colleagues of those who are the friends of themselves and their governments. They must be friends of the monarch **13** and of his government; if not his friends, they will not do what he wants; but friendship implies likeness and equality; and, therefore, if he thinks that friends ought to

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 13. § 25.    <sup>2</sup> Il. x. 224.    <sup>3</sup> Il. ii. 372.    <sup>4</sup> ὁ δικαστής.

<sup>5</sup> Cp. for similar arguments c. 15. § 9.

**III. 16** rule, he must think that those who are equal to himself and like himself ought to rule. These are the principal controversies relating to monarchy.

**17** But may not all this be true in some cases and not in others? <sup>1</sup> for there is a natural justice and expediency in the relation of a master to his servants, or, again, of a king to his subjects, as also in the relation of free citizens to one another ; whereas there is no such justice or expediency in a tyranny <sup>1</sup>, or in any other perverted form of government, which comes  
 1288 a into being contrary to nature. Now, from what has been said,  
 2 it is manifest that, where men are alike and equal, it is neither expedient nor just that one man should be lord of all, whether there are laws, or whether there are no laws, but he himself is in the place of law. Neither should a good man be lord over good men, or a bad man over bad ; nor, even if he excels in virtue, should he have a right to rule, unless in a particular case, which I have already mentioned, and to which I will  
 3 once more recur<sup>2</sup>. But first of all, I must determine what natures are suited for royalties, and what for an aristocracy, and what for a constitutional government.

4 A people who are by nature capable of producing a race superior in virtue and political talent are fitted for kingly government ; and a people <sup>3</sup> submitting to be ruled as free-men by men whose virtue renders them capable of political

<sup>1</sup> Or, 'for there are men who are by nature fitted to be ruled by a master, others to be ruled by a king, others to live under a constitutional government, and for whom these several relations are just and expedient ; but there are no men naturally fitted to be ruled by a tyrant,' etc.

<sup>2</sup> c. 13. § 25, and § 5, *infra*.

<sup>3</sup> Omitting the words *πλήθος δ πέφυκε φέρειν*, which appear to be a repetition from the previous clause.

command are adapted for an aristocracy: while the people **III. 17** who are suited for constitutional freedom are those among whom there naturally exists<sup>1</sup> a warlike multitude<sup>2</sup> able to rule and to obey in turn by a law which gives office to the well-to-do according to their desert. But when a whole 5 family, or some individual, happens to be so pre-eminent in virtue as to surpass all others, then it is just that they should be the royal family and supreme over all, or that this one citizen should be king of the whole nation. For, as 6 I said before<sup>3</sup>, to give them authority is not only agreeable to that ground of right which the founders of all states, whether aristocratical, or oligarchical, or again democratical, are accustomed to put forward (for these all recognize the claim of excellence, although not the same excellence), but accords with the principle already laid down<sup>4</sup>. For it would not 7 be right to kill, or ostracize, or exile such a person, or require that he should take his turn in being governed. The whole is naturally superior to the part, and he who has this pre-eminence is in the relation of a whole to a part. But 8 if so, the only alternative is that he should have the supreme power, and that mankind should obey him, not in turn, but always. These are the conclusions at which we arrive respecting royalty and its various forms, and this is the answer to the question, whether it is or is not advantageous to states, and to whom, and how.

We maintain that the true forms of government are three, **18** and that the best must be that which is administered by the best, and in which there is one man, or a whole family,

<sup>1</sup> Omitting *καὶ ἔν.*

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 7. § 4.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. c. 9. § 15.

<sup>4</sup> Or, 'but differing in the manner already laid down.'

III. 18 or many persons, excelling in virtue, and both rulers and subjects are fitted, the one to rule, the others to be ruled<sup>1</sup>, in such a manner as to attain the most eligible life. We showed at the commencement of our enquiry<sup>2</sup> that the virtue of the good man is necessarily the same as the virtue of the citizen of the perfect state. Clearly then in the same manner, and by the same means through which a man becomes truly good, he will frame a state [which will be truly good] whether  
 1288 b aristocratical, or under kingly rule, and the same education and the same habits will be found to make a good man and a good statesman and king.

2 Having arrived at these conclusions, we must proceed to speak of the perfect state, and describe how it comes into being and is established. He who would proceed with the enquiry in due manner. . . .<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Omitting καὶ ἄρχειν, which is inserted, without MS. authority, in Bekker's 2nd edit.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 4.

<sup>3</sup> Retaining the words of the MSS., 'Ἀνάγκη δὲ τὸν μέλλοντα περὶ αὐτῆς ποιήσασθαι τὴν προσήκουσαν σκέψιν, which are omitted by Bekker in his 2nd edit.



## BOOK IV

IN all arts and sciences which embrace the whole of **IV. 1** any subject, and are not restricted to a part only, it is the province of a single art or science to consider all that appertains to a single subject. For example, the art of gymnastic considers not only the suitableness of different modes of training to different bodies (2), but what sort is absolutely the best (1) (for the absolutely best must suit that which is by nature best and best furnished with the means of life), and also what common form of training is adapted to the great majority of men (4). And if a man **2** does not desire the best habit of body or the greatest skill in gymnastics, which might be attained by him, still the trainer or the teacher of gymnastic should be able to impart any lower degree of either (3). The same principle equally holds in medicine and ship-building, and the making of clothes, and in the arts generally<sup>1</sup>.

Hence it is obvious that government too is the subject **3** of a single science, which has to consider what kind of government would be best and most in accordance with our aspirations, if there were no external impediment, and also what kind of government is adapted to particular states. For the best is often unattainable, and therefore the true legislator and statesman ought to be acquainted, not only with (1) that which is best in the abstract, but also with

<sup>1</sup> The numbers in this paragraph are made to correspond with the numbers in the next.

IV. 1 (2) that which is best relatively to circumstances. We  
 4 should be able further to say how a state may be constituted  
 under any given conditions (3); both how it is originally  
 formed and, when formed, how it may be longest preserved;  
 the supposed state being so far from the very best that it  
 is unprovided even with the conditions necessary for the very  
 best; neither is it the best under the circumstances, but of an  
 inferior type.

5 He ought, moreover, to know (4) the form of govern-  
 ment which is best suited to states in general; for political  
 writers, although they have excellent ideas, are often un-  
 6 practical. We should consider, not only what form of  
 government is best, but also what is possible and what is  
 easily attainable by all. There are some who would have  
 none but the most perfect; for this many natural advantages  
 1289 a are required. Others, again, speak of a more attainable form,  
 and, although they reject the constitution under which they  
 are living, they extol some one in particular, for example  
 7 the Lacedaemonian<sup>1</sup>. Any change of government which  
 has to be introduced should be one which men will be both  
 willing and able to adopt, since there is quite as much trouble  
 in the reformation of an old constitution as in the establish-  
 ment of a new one, just as to unlearn is as hard as to learn.  
 And therefore, in addition to the qualifications of the states-  
 man already mentioned, he should be able to find remedies  
 8 for the defects of existing constitutions<sup>2</sup>. This he cannot  
 do unless he knows how many forms of government there  
 are. It is often supposed that there is only one kind of  
 democracy and one of oligarchy. But this is a mistake;  
 and, in order to avoid such mistakes, we must ascertain what

<sup>1</sup> Cp. ii. 6. § 16.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. § 4.

differences there are in the constitutions of states, and in **IV. 1** how many ways they are combined. The same political **9** insight will enable a man to know which laws are the best, and which are suited to different constitutions; for the laws are, and ought to be, relative to the constitution, and not the constitution to the laws. A constitution is the organization of **10** offices in a state, and determines what is to be the governing body, and what is the end of each community. But <sup>1</sup> laws are not to be confounded with the principles of the constitution<sup>1</sup>: they are the rules according to which the magistrates should administer the state, and proceed against offenders. So that we must know the number and varieties of the **11** several forms of government, if only with a view to making laws. For the same laws cannot be equally suited to all oligarchies and to all democracies, and there is certainly more than one form both of democracy and of oligarchy.

In our original discussion<sup>2</sup> about governments we divided **2** them into three true forms: kingly rule, aristocracy, and constitutional government, and three corresponding perversions—tyranny, oligarchy, and democracy. Of kingly rule and of aristocracy we have already spoken, for the enquiry into the perfect state is the same thing with the discussion of the two forms thus named, since both imply a principle of virtue provided with external means. We have already determined in what aristocracy and kingly rule differ from one another, and when the latter should be established<sup>3</sup>. In what follows we have to describe the so-called constitutional government, which bears the common

<sup>1</sup> Or, 'laws, though in themselves distinct, show the character of the constitution.'

<sup>2</sup> Book iii. 7; N. Eth. viii 10.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. iii. 17. § 8.

IV. 2 name of all constitutions, and the other forms, tyranny, oligarchy, and democracy.

2 It is obvious which of the three perversions is the worst, and which is the next in badness. That which is the perversion of the first and most divine is necessarily the  
1289 b worst. And just as a royal rule, if not a mere name, must exist by virtue of some great personal superiority in the king, so tyranny, which is the worst of governments, is necessarily the farthest removed from a well-constituted form; oligarchy is a little better, but a long way from aristocracy, and democracy is the most tolerable of the three.

3 A writer<sup>1</sup> who preceded me has already made these distinctions, but his point of view is not the same as mine. For he lays down the principle that of all good constitutions (under which he would include a virtuous oligarchy and the like) democracy is the worst, but the best of bad ones. Whereas we maintain that they are all defective, and that one oligarchy is not to be accounted better than another, but only less bad.

4 Not to pursue this question further at present, let us begin by determining (1)<sup>2</sup> how many varieties of states there are (since of democracy and oligarchy there are several); (2)<sup>3</sup> what constitution is the most generally acceptable, and what is eligible in the next degree <sup>4</sup>after the perfect or any other aristocratical and well-constituted form of government—if any other there be—which is at the same time adapted to states in general<sup>4</sup>; (3)<sup>5</sup> of the other forms of

<sup>1</sup> Plato, *Polit.* 303 A.,

<sup>2</sup> c. 4-6.

<sup>3</sup> c. 7-9 and 11.

<sup>4</sup> Or, 'after the perfect state; and besides this what other there is which is aristocratical and well constituted, and at the same time adapted to states in general.'

<sup>5</sup> c. 12.

government to whom each is suited. For democracy may **IV. 2** meet the needs of some better than oligarchy, and conversely. **5** In the next place (4)<sup>1</sup> we have to consider in what manner a man ought to proceed who desires to establish some one among these various forms, whether of democracy or of oligarchy; and lastly, (5)<sup>2</sup> having briefly discussed these **6** subjects to the best of our power, we will endeavour to ascertain whence arise the ruin and preservation of states, both generally and in individual cases, and to what causes they are to be attributed.

The reason why there are many forms of government **8** is that every state contains many elements. In the first place we see that all states are made up of families, and in the multitude of citizens there must be some rich and some poor, and some in a middle condition; <sup>3</sup> the rich are heavy-armed, and the poor not<sup>3</sup>. Of the common people, some **2** are husbandmen, and some traders, and some artisans. There are also among the notables differences of wealth and property—for example, in the number of horses which they keep, for they cannot afford to keep them unless they are rich. And therefore in old times the cities whose strength **3** lay in the cavalry were oligarchies, and they used cavalry <sup>4</sup> in wars against their neighbours; as was the practice of the Eretrians and Chalcidians, and also of the Magnesians on the river Maeander, and of other peoples in Asia. Besides **4** differences of wealth there are differences of rank and merit,

<sup>1</sup> Book vi.

<sup>2</sup> Book v.

<sup>3</sup> Or, 'and again both of rich and poor some are armed and some are unarmed.'

<sup>4</sup> Reading either *πολέμους* with v. tr. (Moerbek) and Bekk. 2nd edit., or *πολεμίους* with the Greek MSS.; cp. c. 13. § 10; vi. c. 7. § 1.

IV. 3 and there are some other elements which were mentioned  
 1290 a by us when in treating of aristocracy we enumerated the  
 essentials of a state<sup>1</sup>. Of these elements, sometimes all,  
 sometimes the lesser and sometimes the greater number,  
 5 have a share in the government. It is evident then that  
 there must be many forms of government, differing in kind,  
 since the parts of which they are composed differ from  
 each other in kind. For a constitution is an organization  
 of offices which all the citizens distribute among themselves,  
 according to the power which different classes possess, for  
 example the rich or the poor, or according to some common  
 equality subsisting among them or some power common to  
 6 both. There must therefore be as many forms of government  
 as there are modes of arranging the offices, according to the  
 superiorities and other inequalities of the different parts of  
 the state.

There are generally thought to be two principal forms:  
 as men say of the winds that there are but two—north  
 and south—and that the rest of them are only variations  
 of these, so of governments there are said to be only two  
 7 forms—democracy and oligarchy. For aristocracy is con-  
 sidered to be a kind of oligarchy, as being the rule of  
 a few, and the so-called constitutional government to be  
 really a democracy, just as among the winds we make the  
 west a variation of the north, and the east of the south  
 wind. Similarly of harmonies there are said to be two  
 kinds, the Dorian and the Phrygian; the other arrangements  
 of the scale are comprehended under one of these two.  
 8 About forms of government this is a very favourite notion.  
 But in either case the better and more exact way is to

<sup>1</sup> Not in what has preceded, but cp. vii. 8.

distinguish, as I have done, the one or two which are **IV. 3** true forms, and to regard the others as perversions, whether of the most perfectly attempered harmony or of the best form of government; we may compare the oligarchical forms to the severer and more overpowering modes, and the democratic to the more relaxed and gentler ones.

It must not be assumed, as some are fond of saying, that **4** democracy is simply that form of government in which the greater number are sovereign<sup>1</sup>, for in oligarchies, and indeed in every government, the majority rules; nor again is oligarchy that form of government in which a few are sovereign. Suppose the whole population of a city to be <sup>a</sup> 1300, and that of these 1000 are rich, and do not allow the remaining 300 who are poor, but free, and in all other respects their equals, a share of the government—no one will say that this is a democracy. In like manner, if the <sup>3</sup> poor were few and the masters of the rich, who outnumber them, no one would ever call such a government, in which the rich majority have no share of office, an oligarchy. Therefore we should rather say that democracy is the <sup>1290 b</sup> form of government in which the free are rulers, and oligarchy in which the rich; it is only an accident that <sup>4</sup> the free are the many and the rich are the few. Otherwise a government in which the offices were given according to stature, as is said to be the case in Ethiopia, or according to beauty, would be an oligarchy; for the number of tall or good-looking men is small. And yet oligarchy and democracy <sup>5</sup> are not sufficiently distinguished merely by these two characteristics of wealth and freedom. Both of them contain many other elements, and therefore we must carry our

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iii. 8. §§ 3-7.



IV. 4 analysis further, and say that the government is not a democracy in which the freemen, being few in number, rule over the many who are not free, as at Apollonia, on the Ionian Gulf, and at Thera (for in each of these states the nobles, who were also the earliest settlers, were held in chief honour, although they were but a few out of many). Neither is it a democracy when the rich have the government, because they exceed in number; as was the case formerly at Colophon, where the bulk of the inhabitants were possessed  
6 of large property before the Lydian War. But the form of government is a democracy when the free, who are also poor and the majority, govern, and oligarchy when the rich and the noble govern, they being at the same time few in number.

7 I have said that there are many forms of government, and have explained to what causes the variety is due. Why there are more than those already mentioned, and what they are, and whence they arise, I will now proceed to consider, starting from the principle already admitted<sup>1</sup>, which is that  
8 every state consists, not of one, but of many parts. If we were going to speak of the different species of animals, we should first of all determine the organs which are indispensable to every animal, as for example some organs of sense and instruments of receiving and digesting food, such as the mouth and the stomach, besides organs of locomotion. Assuming now that there are only so many kinds of organs, but that there may be differences in them—I mean different kinds of mouths, and stomachs, and perceptive and locomotive organs—the possible combinations of these differences will necessarily furnish many varieties of animals. (For animals

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 3. § 1.

cannot be the same which have different kinds of mouths or IV. 4  
of ears.) And when all the combinations are exhausted,  
there will be as many sorts of animals as there are combina-  
tions of the necessary organs. In like manner the forms of 9  
government which have been described, as I have repeatedly  
said, are composed, not of one, but of many elements. One  
element is the food-producing class, who are called husband-  
men; a second, a class of mechanics, who practise the arts 1291 a  
without which a city cannot exist;—of these arts some are  
absolutely necessary, others contribute to luxury or to the  
grace of life. The third class is that of traders, and by traders 10  
I mean those who are engaged in buying and selling, whether  
in commerce or in retail trade. A fourth class is that of the  
serfs or labourers. The warriors make up the fifth class, and  
they are as necessary as any of the others, if the country is not  
to be the slave of every invader. For how can a state which 11  
has any title to the name be of a slavish nature? The state is  
independent and self-sufficing, but a slave is the reverse of inde-  
pendent. Hence we see that this subject, though ingeniously,  
has not been satisfactorily treated in the Republic<sup>1</sup>. Socrates 12  
says that a state is made up of four sorts of people who are  
absolutely necessary; these are a weaver, a husbandman,  
a shoemaker, and a builder; afterwards, finding that they  
are not enough, he adds a smith, and again a herdsman, to  
look after the necessary animals; then a merchant, and then  
a retail trader. All these together form the complement of the 13  
first state, as if a state were established merely to supply the  
necessaries of life, rather than for the sake of the good, or  
stood equally in need of shoemakers and of husbandmen.  
But he does not admit into the state a military class until the

<sup>1</sup> Rep. ii. 369.

- IV. 4 country has increased in size, and is beginning to encroach on its neighbour's land, whereupon they go to war. Yet even amongst his four original citizens, or whatever be the number of those whom he associates in the state, there must be some one who will dispense justice and determine what is just.
- 14 And as the soul may be said to be more truly part of an animal than the body, so the higher parts of states, that is to say, the warrior class, the class engaged in the administration of justice, and in deliberation, which is the special business of political common sense,—these are more essential to the state than the parts which minister to the necessities of life.
- 15 Whether their several functions are the functions of different citizens, or of the same—for it may often happen that the same persons are both warriors and husbandmen—is immaterial to the argument. The higher as well as the lower elements are to be equally considered parts of the state, and if so, the military element must be included. There are also the wealthy who minister to the state with their property;
- 16 these form the seventh class. The eighth class is that of magistrates and of officers; for the state cannot exist without rulers. And therefore some must be able to take office and to
- 17 serve the state, either always or in turn. There only remains the class of those who deliberate and who judge between disputants; we were just now distinguishing them. If the fair and equitable organization of all these elements is necessary to
- 1291 b states, then there must also be persons who have the ability of
- 18 statesmen. <sup>1</sup> Many are of opinion that different functions can be combined in the same individual<sup>1</sup>; for example, the warrior may be a husbandman, or an artisan; or again, the counsellor a judge. And all claim to possess political ability, and

<sup>1</sup> Or, 'Different functions appear to be often combined,' etc.

think that they are quite competent to fill most offices. But **IV. 4** the same persons cannot be rich and poor at the same time. For this reason the rich and the poor are regarded in an **19** especial sense as parts of a state. Again, because the rich are generally few in number, while the poor are many, they appear to be antagonistic, and as the one or the other prevails they form the government. Hence arises the common opinion that there are two kinds of government—democracy and oligarchy.

I have already explained <sup>1</sup> that there are many differences **20** of constitutions, and to what causes the variety is due. Let me now show that there are different forms both of democracy and oligarchy, as will indeed be evident from what has preceded. For both in the common people and in the notables **21** various classes are included; of the common people, one class are husbandmen, another artisans; another traders, who are employed in buying and selling; another are the seafaring class, whether engaged in war or in trade, as ferrymen or as fishermen. (In many places any one of these classes forms quite a large population; for example, fishermen at Tarentum and Byzantium, crews of triremes at Athens, merchant seamen at Aegina and Chios, ferrymen at Tenedos.) To the classes already mentioned may be added day-labourers, and those who, owing to their needy circumstances, have no leisure, or those who are not free of birth on both sides; and there may be other classes as well. The notables again may **22** be divided according to their wealth, birth, virtue, education, and similar differences.

Of forms of democracy first comes that which is said to be based strictly on equality. In such a democracy the law

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iii. c. 6.

IV. 4 says that it is just for nobody to be poor, and for nobody to be rich<sup>1</sup>; and that neither should be masters, but both equal.

23 For if liberty and equality, as is thought by some, are chiefly to be found in democracy, they will be best attained when all persons alike share in the government to the utmost. And since the people are the majority, and the opinion of the majority is decisive, such a government must necessarily be

24 a democracy. Here then is one sort of democracy. There is another in which the magistrates are elected according to a certain property qualification, but a low one; he who has the required amount of property has a share in the govern-

1292 a ment, but he who loses his property loses his rights. Another kind is that in which all the citizens who are under no disqualification share in the government, but still the law is

25 supreme. In another, everybody, if he be only a citizen, is admitted to the government, but the law is supreme as before. A fifth form of democracy, in other respects the same, is that in which, not the law, but the multitude, have the supreme

26 power, and supersede the law by their decrees. This is a state of affairs brought about by the demagogues. For in democracies which are subject to the law the best citizens hold the first place, and there are no demagogues; but where the laws are not supreme, there demagogues spring up. For the people becomes a monarch, and is many in one; and the many have the power in their hands, not as individuals, but

27 collectively. Homer says that, 'it is not good to have a rule

<sup>1</sup> Or, reading ἀρχειν with Victorius, 'that the poor should no more govern than the rich.' The emendation is not absolutely necessary, though supported by vi. 2. § 9, ἴσον γὰρ τὸ μηθὲν μᾶλλον ἀρχειν τοὺς ἀπόρους ἢ τοὺς εὐπόρους μηδὲ κυρίους εἶναι μόνους ἀλλὰ πάντας ἐξ ἴσου κατ' ἀριθμόν.

of many<sup>1</sup>, but whether he means this corporate rule, or the **IV. 4** rule of many individuals, is uncertain. And the people, who is now a monarch, and no longer under the control of law, seeks to exercise monarchical sway, and grows into a despot; the flatterer is held in honour; this sort of democracy being relatively to other democracies what tyranny is to other forms of monarchy. The spirit of both is the same, and they alike **28** exercise a despotic rule over the better citizens. The decrees of the demos correspond to the edicts of the tyrant; and the demagogue is to the one what the flatterer is to the other. Both have great power—the flatterer with the tyrant, the demagogue with democracies of the kind which we are describing. The demagogues make the decrees of the people **29** override the laws, and refer all things to the popular assembly. And therefore they grow great, because the people have all things in their hands, and they hold in their hands the votes of the people, who are too ready to listen to them. Further, **30** those who have any complaint to bring against the magistrates say, ‘let the people be judges’; the people are too happy to accept the invitation; and so the authority of every office is undermined. Such a democracy is fairly open to the objection that it is not a constitution at all; for where the laws have no authority, there is no constitution. The law **31** ought to be supreme over all, and the magistracies and the government should judge only of particulars. So that if democracy be a real form of government, the sort of constitution in which all things are regulated by decrees is clearly not a democracy in the true sense of the word, for decrees relate only to particulars<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> II. ii. 204.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. N. Eth. v. 10. § 7.

- IV. 5 These then are the different kinds of democracies. Of oligarchies, too, there are different kinds—one where the property qualification for office is so high that the poor, although they form the majority, have no share in the government, yet he who acquires a qualification may obtain a share.
- 1292 b Another sort is when there is a qualification for office, but a high one, and the vacancies in the governing body are filled by co-optation. If the election is made out of all the qualified persons, a constitution of this kind inclines to an aristocracy, 2 if out of a privileged class, to an oligarchy. Another sort of oligarchy is when the son succeeds the father. There is a fourth form, likewise hereditary, in which the magistrates are supreme and not the law. Among oligarchies this is what tyranny is among monarchies, and the last-mentioned form of democracy among democracies; and in fact this sort of oligarchy receives the name of a dynasty (or rule of powerful families).
- 3 These are the different sorts of oligarchies and democracies. It should however be remembered that in many states<sup>1</sup> the constitution which is established by law, although not democratic, owing to the character and habits of the people, may be administered democratically, and conversely in other states the established constitution may incline to democracy, 4 but may be administered in an oligarchical spirit. This most often happens after a revolution: for governments do not change at once; at first the dominant party are content with encroaching a little upon their opponents. The laws which existed previously continue in force, but the authors of the revolution have the power in their hands.
- 6 From what has been already said we may safely infer that

<sup>1</sup> Cp. v. i. § 8.



there are so many different kinds of democracies and of **IV. 6** oligarchies. For it is evident that either all the classes whom we mentioned must share in the government, or some only and not others. When the class of husbandmen and of those <sup>2</sup> who possess moderate fortunes have the supreme power, the government is administered according to law. For the citizens being compelled to live by their labour have no leisure; and so they set up the authority of the law, and attend assemblies only when necessary. Since they all obtain <sup>3</sup> a share in the government when they have acquired the qualification which is fixed by the law, nobody is excluded—the absolute exclusion of any class would be a step towards oligarchy. But leisure cannot be provided for them unless there are revenues to support them. This is one sort of democracy, and these are the causes which give birth to it. Another kind is based on the mode of election, <sup>1</sup> which naturally comes next in order<sup>1</sup>; in this, every one to whose birth there is no objection is eligible, and may share in the government if he can find leisure. And in such a democracy <sup>4</sup> the supreme power is vested in the laws, because the state has no means of paying the citizens. A third kind is when all freemen have a right to share in the government, but do not actually share, for the reason which has been already given; so that in this form again the law must rule. A fourth kind <sup>5</sup> of democracy is that which comes latest in the history of <sup>1293 a</sup> states. In our own day, when cities have far outgrown their original size, and their revenues have increased, all the citizens have a place in the government, through the great preponderance of their numbers; and they all, including the poor who receive pay, and therefore have leisure to exercise their

<sup>1</sup> Or, 'which is proper to it.'

IV. 6 rights, share in the administration. Indeed, when they are  
6 paid, the common people have the most leisure, for they are  
not hindered by the care of their property, which often fetters  
the rich, who are thereby prevented from taking part in the  
assembly or in the courts, and so the state is governed by the  
7 poor, who are a majority, and not by the laws. So many  
kinds of democracies there are, and they grow out of these  
necessary causes.

Of oligarchies, one form is that in which the majority of  
the citizens have some property, but not very much; and this  
is the first form, which allows to any one who obtains the  
8 required amount the right of sharing in the government. The  
sharers in the government being a numerous body, it follows  
that the law must govern, and not individuals. For in pro-  
portion as they are further removed from a monarchical form  
of government, and in respect of property have neither so  
much as to be able to live without attending to business, nor so  
little as to need state support, they must admit the rule of law  
9 and not claim to rule themselves. But if the men of property  
in the state are fewer than in the former case, and own more  
property, there arises a second form of oligarchy. For the  
stronger they are, the more power they claim, and having this  
object in view, they themselves select those of the other  
classes who are to be admitted to the government; but, not  
being as yet strong enough to rule without the law, they make  
10 the law represent their wishes. When this power is inten-  
sified by a further diminution of their numbers and increase  
of their property, there arises a third and further stage of  
oligarchy, in which the governing class keep the offices in  
their own hands, and the law ordains that the son shall  
11 succeed the father. When, again, the rulers have great

wealth and numerous friends, this sort of dynastia or family **IV. 6** despotism approaches a monarchy ; individuals rule and not the law. This is the fourth sort of oligarchy, and is analogous to the last sort of democracy.

There are still two forms besides democracy and oligarchy ; **7** one of them is universally recognized and included among the four principal forms of government, which are said to be (1) monarchy, (2) oligarchy, (3) democracy, and (4) the so-called aristocracy or government of the best. But there is also a fifth, which retains the generic name of polity or constitutional government ; this is not common, and therefore has not been noticed by writers who attempt to enumerate the different kinds of government ; like Plato in his books about the **1293 b** state, they recognize four only. The term 'aristocracy' **2** is rightly applied to the form of government which is described in the first part of our treatise : for that only can be rightly called aristocracy [the government of the best] which is a government formed of the best men absolutely, and not merely of men who are good when tried by any given standard. In the perfect state the good man is absolutely the same as the good citizen ; whereas in other states the good citizen is only good relatively to his own form of government. But there are some states differing from oligarchies **3** and also differing from the so-called polity or constitutional government ; these are termed aristocracies, and in them magistrates are certainly chosen, both according to their wealth and according to their merit. Such a form of government is not the same with the two just now mentioned, and is termed an aristocracy. For indeed in states which do not **4** make virtue the aim of the community, men of merit and reputation for virtue may be found. And so where a govern-

IV. 7 ment has regard to wealth, virtue, and numbers, as at Carthage<sup>1</sup>, that is aristocracy; and also where it has regard only to two out of the three, as at Lacedaemon, to virtue and numbers, and the two principles of democracy and virtue  
5 temper each other. There are these two forms of aristocracy in addition to the first and perfect state, and there is a third form, viz. the polities which incline towards oligarchy.

8 I have yet to speak of the so-called polity and of tyranny. I put them in this order, not because a polity or constitutional government is to be regarded as a perversion any more than the above-mentioned aristocracies. The truth is, that they all fall short of the most perfect form of government, and so they are reckoned among perversions, and other forms (*sc.* the really perverted forms) are perversions of these, as I  
2 said before<sup>2</sup>. Last of all I will speak of tyranny, which I place last in the series because I am enquiring into the constitutions of states, and this is the very reverse of a constitution.

Having explained why I have adopted this order, I will proceed to consider constitutional government; of which the nature will be clearer now that oligarchy and democracy  
3 have been defined. For polity or constitutional government may be described generally as a fusion of oligarchy and democracy; but the term is usually applied to those forms of government which incline towards democracy, and the term aristocracy to those which incline towards oligarchy, because birth and education are commonly the accompani-  
4 ments of wealth. Moreover, the rich already possess the external advantages the want of which is a temptation to crime, and hence they are called noblemen and gentlemen.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. ii. 11, §§ 5-10.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. iii. 7.

And inasmuch as aristocracy seeks to give predominance to **IV. 8** the best of the citizens, people say also of oligarchies that they are composed of noblemen and gentlemen. Now <sup>1294</sup> it appears to be an impossible thing that the state which <sup>5</sup> is governed by the best citizens should be ill-governed<sup>1</sup>, and equally impossible that the state which is ill-governed should be governed by the best. But we must remember that good laws, if they are not obeyed, do not constitute good government. For there are two parts of good government; one <sup>6</sup> is the actual obedience of citizens to the laws, the other part is the goodness of the laws which they obey; they may obey bad laws as well as good. And there may be a further subdivision; they may obey either the best laws which are attainable to them, or the best absolutely.

The distribution of offices according to merit is a special <sup>7</sup> characteristic of aristocracy, for the principle of an aristocracy is virtue, as wealth is of an oligarchy, and freedom of a democracy. In all of them there of course exists the right of the majority, and whatever seems good to the majority of those who share in the government has authority. Generally, <sup>8</sup> however, a state of this kind is called a constitutional government [not an aristocracy], for the fusion goes no further than the attempt to unite the freedom of the poor and the wealth of the rich, who commonly take the place of the noble. And as there are three grounds on which men claim <sup>9</sup> an equal share in the government—freedom, wealth, and virtue (for the fourth or good birth is the result of the two last, being only ancient wealth and virtue)—it is clear that the admixture of the two elements, that is to say, of the rich and poor, is to be called a polity or constitutional government;

<sup>1</sup> Omitting ἀλλὰ πονηροκρατουμένην.

IV. 8 and the union of the three is to be called aristocracy or the government of the best, and more than any other form of government, except the true and ideal, has a right to this name.

10 Thus far I have described the different forms of states which exist besides monarchy, democracy, and oligarchy, and what they are, and in what aristocracies differ from one another, and polities from aristocracies—that the two latter are not very unlike is obvious.

9 Next we have to consider how by the side of oligarchy and democracy the so-called polity or constitutional government springs up, and how it should be organized. The nature of it will be at once understood from a comparison of oligarchy and democracy; we must ascertain their different characteristics, and taking a portion from each, put the two  
2 together, like the parts of an indenture. Now there are three modes in which fusions of government may be effected. The nature of the fusion will be made intelligible by an example of the manner in which different governments legislate, say concerning the administration of justice. In oligarchies they impose a fine on the rich if they do not serve as judges, and to the poor they give no pay; but in democracies they give  
3 pay to the poor and do not fine the rich. Now (1) the union of these two modes<sup>1</sup> is a common or middle term between  
1294 b them, and is therefore characteristic of a constitutional government, for it is a combination of both. This is one mode of uniting the two elements. Or (2) a mean may be taken between the enactments of the two: thus democracies require no property qualification, or only a small one, from members of the assembly, oligarchies a high one; here

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 13. § 6.

neither of these is the common term, but a mean between them. **IV. 9**

(3) There is a third mode, in which something is borrowed 4  
from the oligarchical and something from the democratical  
principle. For example, the appointment of magistrates by  
lot is democratical, and the election of them oligarchical;  
democratical again when there is no property qualification,  
oligarchical when there is. In the aristocratical or constitu- 5  
tional state, one element will be taken from each—from oli-  
garchy the mode of electing to offices, from democracy the  
disregard of qualification. Such are the various modes of 6  
combination.

There is a true union of oligarchy and democracy when the  
same state may be termed either a democracy or an oligarchy;  
those who use both names evidently feel that the fusion  
is complete. Such a fusion there is also in the mean; for  
both extremes appear in it. The Lacedaemonian constitution, 7  
for example, is often described as a democracy, because it has  
many democratical features. In the first place the youth  
receive a democratical education. For the sons of the poor  
are brought up with the sons of the rich, who are educated  
in such a manner as to make it possible for the sons of the  
poor to be educated like them. A similar equality prevails 8  
in the following period of life, and when the citizens are  
grown up to manhood the same rule is observed; there is  
no distinction between the rich and poor. In like manner  
they all have the same food at their public tables, and  
the rich wear only such clothing as any poor man can  
afford. Again, the people elect to one of the two greatest 9  
offices of states, and in the other they share<sup>1</sup>; for they elect  
the Senators and share in the Ephoralty. By others the

<sup>1</sup> Cp. ii. 9. § 21.



IV. 9 Spartan constitution is said to be an oligarchy, because it has many oligarchical elements. That all offices are filled by election and none by lot, is one of these oligarchical characteristics; that the power of inflicting death or banishment rests with a few persons is another; and there are  
 10 others. In a well tempered polity there should appear to be both elements and yet neither; also the government should rely on itself, and not on foreign aid, nor on the good will of a majority of foreign states—they might be equally well-disposed when there is a vicious form of government—but on the general willingness of all classes in the state to maintain the constitution.

Enough of the manner in which a constitutional government, and in which the so-called aristocracies ought to be framed.

10 1295<sup>a</sup> Of the nature of tyranny I have still to speak, in order that it may have its place in our enquiry, since even tyranny is reckoned by us to be a form of government, although there is not much to be said about it. I have already in the former part of this treatise<sup>1</sup> discussed royalty or kingship according to the most usual meaning of the term, and considered whether it is or is not advantageous to states, and what kind of royalty should be established, and whence, and how it arises.

2 When speaking of royalty we also spoke of two forms of tyranny, which are both according to law, and therefore easily pass into royalty. Among Barbarians there are elected monarchs who exercise a despotic power; despotic rulers were also elected in ancient Hellas, called Aesymnetes or  
 3 dictators. These monarchies, when compared with one another, exhibit certain differences. And they are, as I

<sup>1</sup> iii. 14-17.

said before, royal, in so far as the monarch rules according to law and over willing subjects; but they are tyrannical in so far as he is despotic and rules according to his own fancy. There is also a third kind of tyranny, which is the most typical form, and is the counterpart of the perfect monarchy. This tyranny is just that arbitrary power of an individual which is responsible to no one, and governs all alike, whether equals or betters, with a view to its own advantage, not to that of its subjects, and therefore against their will. No freeman, if he can escape from it, will endure such a government.

The kinds of tyranny are such and so many, and for the reasons which I have given.

We have now to enquire what is the best constitution for most states, and the best life for most men, neither assuming a standard of virtue which is above ordinary persons, nor an education which is exceptionally favoured by nature and circumstances, nor yet an ideal state which is an aspiration only, but having regard to the life in which the majority are able to share, and to the form of government which states in general can attain. As to those aristocracies, as they are called, of which we were just now speaking, they either lie beyond the possibilities of the greater number of states, or they approximate to the so-called constitutional government, and therefore need no separate discussion. And in fact the conclusion at which we arrive respecting all these forms rests upon the same grounds. For if it has been truly said in the *Ethics*<sup>1</sup> that the happy life is the life according to unimpeded virtue, and that virtue is a mean, then the life which is in a mean, and in a mean attainable by every

<sup>1</sup> N. Eth. vii. 13. § 2.

IV. 11 one, must be the best. And the same criteria of virtue  
1295 b and vice apply both to cities and to constitutions; for the  
constitution is in a figure the life of the city<sup>1</sup>.

4 Now in all states there are three elements; one class is  
very rich, another very poor, and a third in a mean. It  
is admitted that moderation and the mean are best, and there-  
fore it will clearly be best to possess the gifts of fortune  
in moderation; for in that condition of life men are most  
5 ready to listen to reason. But he who greatly excels in  
beauty, strength, birth or wealth, or on the other hand who  
is very poor, or very weak, or very much disgraced, finds it  
difficult to follow reason<sup>2</sup>. Of these two the one sort grow  
into violent and great criminals, the others into rogues and  
petty rascals. And two sorts of offences correspond to them<sup>3</sup>,  
the one committed from violence, the other from roguery.  
The petty rogues are disinclined to hold office, whether  
military or civil, and their aversion to these two duties is  
as great an injury to the state as their tendency to crime.  
6 Again, those who have too much of the goods of fortune,  
strength, wealth, friends, and the like, are neither willing  
nor able to submit to authority. The evil begins at home:  
for when they are boys, by reason of the luxury in which  
they are brought up<sup>4</sup>, they never learn, even at school, the  
habit of obedience. On the other hand, the very poor, who  
7 are in the opposite extreme, are too degraded. So that the  
one class cannot obey, and can only rule despotically; the  
other knows not how to command and must be ruled like  
slaves. Thus arises a city, not of freemen, but of masters  
and slaves, the one despising, the other envying; and nothing

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iii. 3. §§ 7, 8.

<sup>3</sup> Laws, viii. 831 E.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. Pl. Rep. iv. 421 C, D ff.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. v. 9. § 13.

can be more fatal to friendship and good fellowship in states **IV. 11**  
than this: for good fellowship tends to friendship; when men  
are at enmity with one another, they would rather not even  
share the same path. But a city ought to be composed, as far 8  
as possible, of equals and similars; and these are generally the  
middle classes. Wherefore the city which is composed  
of middle-class citizens is necessarily best governed; they  
are, as we say, the natural elements of a state. And this is  
the class of citizens which is most secure in a state, for they  
do not, like the poor, covet their neighbours' goods; nor do 9  
others covet theirs, as the poor covet the goods of the rich;  
and as they neither plot against others, nor are themselves  
plotted against, they pass through life safely. Wisely then  
did Phocylides pray—

‘Many things are best in the mean; I desire to be of  
a middle condition in my city.’

Thus it is manifest that the best political community is 10  
formed by citizens of the middle class, and that those states  
are likely to be well-administered, in which the middle class  
is large, and larger if possible than both the other classes,  
or at any rate than either singly; for the addition of the  
middle class turns the scale, and prevents either of the  
extremes from being dominant. Great then is the good 11  
fortune of a state in which the citizens have a moderate and  
sufficient property; for where some possess much, and the 1296 a  
others nothing, there may arise an extreme democracy, or  
a pure oligarchy; or a tyranny may grow out of either  
extreme—either out of the most rampant democracy, or out  
of an oligarchy; but it is not so likely to arise out of a middle  
and nearly equal condition. I will explain the reason of this 12

- IV. 11 hereafter, when I speak of the revolutions of states<sup>1</sup>. The mean condition of states is clearly best, for no other is free from faction; and where the middle class is large, there are least likely to be factions and dissensions. For a similar reason large states are less liable to faction than small ones, because in them the middle class is large; whereas in small states it is easy to divide all the citizens into two classes who are either rich or poor, and to leave nothing in the middle.
- 14 And democracies are safer<sup>2</sup> and more permanent than oligarchies, because they have a middle class which is more numerous and has a greater share in the government; for when there is no middle class, and the poor greatly exceed in number, troubles arise, and the state soon comes to an end. A proof of the superiority of the middle class is that the best legislators have been of a middle condition; for example, Solon, as his own verses testify; and Lycurgus, for he was not a king; and Charondas, and almost all legislators.
- 16 These considerations will help us to understand why most governments are either democratical or oligarchical. The reason is that the middle class is seldom numerous in them, and whichever party, whether the rich or the common people, transgresses the mean and predominates, draws the government to itself, and thus arises either oligarchy or democracy.
- 17 There is another reason—the poor and the rich quarrel with one another, and whichever side gets the better, instead of establishing a just or popular government, regards political supremacy as the prize of victory, and the one party sets up a democracy and the other an oligarchy. Both the parties which had the supremacy in Hellas looked only to the

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Bk. v.<sup>2</sup> Cp. v. 1. § 15; 7. § 6.

interest of their own form of government, and established in **IV. 11** states, the one, democracies, and the other, oligarchies; they thought of their own advantage, of the public not at all. For **19** these reasons the middle form of government has rarely, if ever, existed, and among a very few only. One man alone of all who ever ruled in Hellas was induced to give this middle constitution to states. But it has now become a habit among **1296 b** the citizens of states, not even to care about equality; all men are seeking for dominion, or, if conquered, are willing to submit.

What then is the best form of government, and what makes **20** it the best, is evident; and of other states, since we say that there are many kinds of democracy and many of oligarchy, it is not difficult to see which has the first and which the second or any other place in the order of excellence, now that we have determined which is the best. For that which **21** is nearest to the best must of necessity be better, and that which is furthest from it worse, if we are judging absolutely and not relatively to given conditions: I say 'relatively to given conditions,' since a particular government may be preferable for some, but another form may be better for others.

We have now to consider what and what kind of govern- **12** ment is suitable to what and what kind of men. I may begin by assuming, as a general principle common to all governments, that the portion of the state which desires permanence ought to be stronger than that which desires the reverse. Now every city is composed of quality and quantity. By quality I mean freedom, wealth, education, good birth, and by quantity, superiority of numbers. Quality may exist in one of **2** the classes which make up the state, and quantity in the

- IV. 12 other. For example, the meanly-born may be more in number than the well-born, or the poor than the rich, yet they may not so much exceed in quantity as they fall short in  
 3 quality; and therefore there must be a comparison of quantity and quality. Where the number of the poor is more than proportioned to the wealth of the rich, there will naturally be a democracy, varying in form with the sort of people who compose it in each case. If, for example, the husbandmen exceed in number, the first form of democracy will then arise; if the artisans and labouring class, the last; and so with the intermediate forms. But where the rich and the notables exceed in quality more than they fall short in quantity, there oligarchy arises, similarly assuming various forms according to the kind of superiority possessed by the oligarchs.
- 4 The legislator should always include the middle class in his government; if he makes his laws oligarchical, to the middle class let him look; if he makes them democratical, he should equally by his laws try <sup>1</sup> to attach this class to the state<sup>1</sup>. There only can the government ever be stable  
 1297 a where the middle class exceeds one or both of the others, and  
 5 in that case there will be no fear that the rich will unite with the poor against the rulers. For neither of them will ever be willing to serve the other, and if they look for some form of government more suitable to both, they will find none better than this, for the rich and the poor will never consent to rule in turn, because they mistrust one another. The arbiter is always the one trusted, and he who is in the middle is an  
 6 arbiter. The more perfect the admixture of the political elements, the more lasting will be the state. Many even of

<sup>1</sup> Or, if προσάγεσθαι can govern τοῖς νόμοις, 'to win this class over to his laws.'



those who desire to form aristocratical governments make **IV. 12** a mistake, not only in giving too much power to the rich, but in attempting to overreach the people. There comes a time when out of a false good there arises a true evil, since the encroachments of the rich are more destructive to the state than those of the people.

The devices by which oligarchies deceive the people are **13** five in number; they relate to (1) the assembly; (2) the magistracies; (3) the courts of law; (4) the use of arms; (5) gymnastic exercises. (1) The assemblies are thrown open to all, but either the rich only are fined for non-attendance, or a much larger fine is inflicted upon them. (2) As to the magistracies, those who are qualified by **4** property cannot decline office upon oath, but the poor may. (3) In the law-courts the rich, and the rich only, are fined if they do not serve, the poor are let off with impunity, or, as in the laws of Charondas, a large fine is inflicted on the rich, and a smaller one on the poor. In some states all **3** citizens who have registered themselves are allowed to attend the assembly and to try causes; but if after registration they do not attend in the assembly or at the courts, heavy fines are imposed upon them. The intention is that through fear of the fines they may avoid registering themselves, and then they cannot sit in the law-courts or in the assembly. (4) Concerning the possession of arms, and (5) gymnastic **4** exercises, they legislate in a similar spirit. For the poor are not obliged to have arms, but the rich are fined for not having them; and in like manner no penalty is inflicted on the poor for non-attendance at the gymnasium, and consequently, having nothing to fear, they do not attend, whereas the rich are liable to a fine, and therefore they take care to attend.

IV. 13 These are the devices of oligarchical legislators, and  
 5 in democracies they have counter devices. They pay the poor  
 for attending the assemblies and the law-courts, and they  
 6 inflict no penalty on the rich for non-attendance. It is  
 obvious that he who would duly mix the two principles should  
 combine the practice of both, and provide that the poor  
 should be paid to attend, and the rich fined if they do not  
 attend, for then all will take part; if there is no such combina-  
 1297 b tion, power will be in the hands of one party only. The  
 7 government should be confined to those who carry arms. As  
 to the property qualification, no absolute rule can be laid  
 down, but we must see what is the highest qualification  
 sufficiently comprehensive to secure that the number of those  
 who have the rights of citizens exceeds the number of those  
 8 excluded. Even if they have no share in office, the poor,  
 provided only that they are not outraged or deprived of their  
 property, will be quiet enough.

But to secure gentle treatment for the poor is not an easy  
 9 thing, since a ruling class is not always humane. And in time  
 of war the poor are apt to hesitate unless they are fed; when  
 fed, they are willing enough to fight. In some states the  
 government is vested, not only in those who are actually  
 serving, but also in those who have served; among the  
 Malians, for example, the governing body consisted of the  
 latter, while the magistrates were chosen from those actually  
 10 on service. And the earliest government which existed among  
 the Hellenes, after the overthrow of the kingly power, grew  
 up out of the warrior class, and was originally taken from the  
 knights (for strength and superiority in war at that time  
 depended on cavalry<sup>1</sup>); indeed, without discipline, infantry

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iv. 3. § 3; vi. 7. § 1.

## *The Distribution of Political Power* 175

are useless, and in ancient times there was no military know- **IV. 13**  
ledge or tactics, and therefore the strength of armies lay  
in their cavalry. But when cities increased and the heavy  
armed grew in strength, more had a share in the government ;  
and this is the reason why the states, which we call con- **11**  
stitutional governments, have been hitherto called democracies.  
Ancient constitutions, as might be expected, were oligarchical  
and royal ; their population being small they had no consider-  
able middle class ; the people were weak in numbers and  
organization, and were therefore more contented to be  
governed.

I have explained why there are various forms of govern- **12**  
ment, and why there are more than is generally supposed ;  
for democracy, as well as other constitutions, has more than  
one form : also what their differences are, and whence they  
arise, and what is the best form of government, speaking  
generally, and to whom the various forms of government  
are best suited ; all this has now been explained.

Having thus gained an appropriate basis of discussion we **14**  
will proceed to speak of the points which follow next in  
order. We will consider the subject not only in general but  
with reference to particular states. All states have three  
elements, and the good law-giver has to regard what is  
expedient for each state. When they are well-ordered, the  
state is well-ordered, and as they differ from one another,  
constitutions differ. What is the element first (1) which **2**  
deliberates about public affairs ; secondly (2) which is con- **1298 a**  
cerned with the magistrates and determines what they should  
be, over whom they should exercise authority, and what  
should be the mode of electing them ; and thirdly (3) which **3**  
has judicial power ?

IV. 14 The deliberative element has authority in matters of war and peace, in making and unmaking alliances ; it passes laws, inflicts death, exile, confiscation, audits the accounts of magistrates. All these powers must be assigned either to all the citizens or to some of them, for example, to one or more magistracies ; or different causes to different magistracies, or  
 4 some of them to all, and others of them only to some. That all things should be decided by all is characteristic of democracy ; this is the sort of equality which the people desire. But there are various ways in which all may share in the government ; they may deliberate, not all in one body, but by turns, as in the constitution of Telecles the Milesian. There are other states in which the boards of magistrates meet and deliberate, but come into office by turns, and are elected out of the tribes and the very smallest divisions of the state, until every one has obtained office in his turn. The citizens, on the other hand, are assembled only for the purposes of legislation, and to consult about the con-  
 5 stitution, and to hear the edicts of the magistrates. In another variety of democracy the citizens form one assembly, but meet only to elect magistrates, to pass laws, to advise about war and peace, and to make scrutinies. Other matters are referred severally to special magistrates, who are elected  
 6 by vote or by lot out of all the citizens. Or again, the citizens meet about election to offices and about scrutinies, and deliberate concerning war or alliances, while other matters are administered by the magistrates, who, as far as is possible, are elected by vote<sup>1</sup>. I am speaking of those magistracies in  
 7 which special knowledge is required. A fourth form of democracy is when all the citizens meet to deliberate about

<sup>1</sup> Cp. vi. 2. § 5.

everything, and the magistrates decide nothing, but only make **IV. 14** the preliminary enquiries; and that is the way in which the last and worst form of democracy, corresponding, as we maintain, to the close family oligarchy and to tyranny, is at present administered. All these modes are democratical.

On the other hand, that some should deliberate about all is oligarchical. This again is a mode which, like the demo- 8 cratical, has many forms. When the deliberative class, being elected out of those who have a moderate qualification, are numerous and they respect and obey the law without altering it, and any one who has the required qualification shares in the government, then, just because of this moderation, the oligarchy inclines towards polity. But when only selected in- 1298 b dividuals and not the whole people share in the deliberations of the state, then, although, as in the former case, they observe the law, the government is a pure oligarchy. Or, again, 9 when those who have the power of deliberation are self-elected, and son succeeds father, and they and not the laws are supreme—the government is of necessity oligarchical. Where, again, particular persons have authority in particular 10 matters—for example, when the whole people decide about peace and war and hold scrutinies, but the magistrates regulate everything else, and they are elected either by vote or by lot—there <sup>1</sup> the form of government is an aristocracy or polity <sup>1</sup>. And if some questions are decided by magistrates elected by vote, and others by magistrates elected by lot, either absolutely or out of select candidates, or elected both by vote and by lot—these practices are partly characteristic of an

<sup>1</sup> Reading with several of the MSS. ἀριστοκρατία ἢ πολιτεία, and omitting μέν. Or, with Bekker's text, ἀριστοκρατία μὲν ἢ πολιτεία, 'the government is an aristocracy.'

IV. 14 aristocratical government, and partly of a pure constitutional government.

- 11 These are the various forms of the deliberative body ; they correspond to the various forms of government. And the government of each state is administered according to one or
- 12 other of the principles which have been laid down. Now it is for the interest of democracy, according to the most prevalent notion of it (I am speaking of that extreme form of democracy, in which the people are supreme even over the laws), with a view to better deliberation to adopt the custom of oligarchies respecting courts of law. For in oligarchies the rich who are wanted to be judges are compelled to attend under pain of a fine, whereas in democracies the poor are paid to attend. And this practice of oligarchies should be adopted by democracies in their public assemblies, for they will advise better if they all deliberate together—the people
- 13 with the notables and the notables with the people. It is also a good plan that those who deliberate should be elected by vote or by lot in equal numbers out of the different classes ; and that if the people greatly exceed in number those who have political training, pay should not be given to all, but only to as many as would balance the number of the notables, or that the number in excess should be eliminated
- 14 by lot. But in oligarchies either certain persons should be chosen out of the mass, or a class of officers should be appointed such as exist in some states, who are termed probuli and guardians of the law ; and the citizens should occupy themselves exclusively with matters on which these have previously deliberated ; for so the people will have a share in the deliberations of the state, but will not be able
- 15 to disturb the principles of the constitution. Again, in

oligarchies either the people ought to accept the measures **IV. 14** of the government, or not to pass anything contrary to them; or, if all are allowed to share in counsel, the decision should rest with the magistrates. The opposite of what is done in constitutional governments should be the rule in oligarchies; the veto of the majority should be final, their assent not final, but the proposal should be referred back to the magistrates. Whereas in constitutional governments they take the contrary **16** course; the few have the negative not the affirmative power; the affirmation of everything rests with the multitude. **1299 a**

These, then, are our conclusions respecting the deliberative, that is, the supreme element in states.

Next we will proceed to consider the distribution of **15** offices; this, too, being a part of politics concerning which many questions arise:—What shall their number be? Over what shall they preside, and what shall be their duration? Sometimes they last for six months, sometimes for less; sometimes they are annual, whilst in other cases offices are held for still longer periods. Shall they be for life or for a long term of years; or, if for a short term only, shall the same persons hold them over and over again, or once only? Also about the appointment to them—from whom are they to be chosen, by whom, and how? We should **2** first be in a position to say what are the possible varieties of them, and then we may proceed to determine which are suited to different forms of government. But what are to be included under the term ‘offices’? That is a question not quite so easily answered. For a political community requires many officers; and not every one who is chosen by vote or by lot is to be regarded as a ruler. In the first place there are the priests, who must be distinguished from political



IV. 15 officers; masters of choruses and heralds, even ambassadors,  
3 are elected by vote [but still they are not political officers].

Some duties of superintendence again are political, extending either to all the citizens in a single sphere of action, like the office of the general who superintends them when they are in the field, or to a section of them only, like the inspectorships of women or of youth. Other offices are concerned with household management, like that of the corn measurers who exist in many states and are elected officers.

There are also menial offices which the rich have executed by  
4 their slaves. Speaking generally, they are to be called offices to which the duties are assigned of deliberating about certain measures and of judging and commanding, especially the last; for to command is the especial duty of a magistrate. But the question is not of any importance in practice; no one has ever brought into court the meaning of the word, although such problems have a speculative interest.

5 What kinds of offices, and how many, are necessary to the existence of a state, and which, if not necessary, yet conduce to its well-being, are much more important considerations,  
6 affecting all states, but more especially small ones. For in great states it is possible, and indeed necessary, that every office should have a special function; where the citizens are numerous, many may hold office. And so it happens that vacancies occur in some offices only after long intervals, or the office is held once only; and certainly every work is  
1299 b better done which receives of the sole<sup>1</sup>, and not the divided,  
7 attention of the worker. But in small states it is necessary to combine many offices in a few hands<sup>2</sup>, since the small number of citizens does not admit of many holding office:—

<sup>1</sup> Cp. ii. 2. § 6.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. vi. 8.

for who will there be to succeed them? And yet small **IV. 15** states at times require the same offices and laws as large ones; the difference is that the one want them often, the others only after long intervals. Hence there is no reason why the care 8 of many offices should not be imposed on the same person, for they will not interfere with each other. When the population is small, offices should be like the spits which also serve to hold a lamp<sup>1</sup>. We must first ascertain how many magistrates are necessary in every state, and also how many are not exactly necessary, but are nevertheless useful, and then there will be no difficulty in judging what offices can be combined in one. We should also know when local tribunals 9 are to have jurisdiction over many different matters, and when authority should be centralized: for example, should one person keep order in the market and another in some other place, or should the same person be responsible everywhere? Again, should offices be divided according to the subjects with which they deal, or according to the persons with whom they deal: I mean to say, should one person see to good order in general, or one look after the boys, another after the women, and so on? Further, under different constitutions, 10 should the magistrates be the same or different? For example, in democracy, oligarchy, aristocracy, monarchy, should there be the same magistrates, although they are elected, not out of equal or similar classes of citizens, but differently under different constitutions—in aristocracies, for example, they are chosen from the educated, in oligarchies from the wealthy, and in democracies from the free—or are there different offices proper to different constitutions<sup>2</sup>, and

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Note on i. 2. § 3.

<sup>2</sup> See note.

IV. 15 may the same be suitable to some, but unsuitable to others?

For in some states it may be convenient that the same office should have a more extensive, in other states a narrower  
 11 sphere. Special offices are peculiar to certain forms of government:—for example, [to oligarchies] that of probuli, which is not a democratic office, although a bule or council is. There must be some body of men whose duty is to prepare measures for the people in order that they may not be diverted from their business; when these are few in number, the state inclines to an oligarchy: or rather the probuli must always be  
 12 few, and are therefore an oligarchical element. But when both institutions exist in a state, the probuli are a check on the council; for the counsellor is a democratic element, but the probuli are oligarchical. Even the power of the council disappears when democracy has taken that extreme  
 1300 a form, in which the people themselves are always meeting and  
 13 deliberating about everything. This is the case when the members of the assembly are wealthy or receive pay; for they have nothing to do and are always holding assemblies and deciding everything for themselves. A magistracy which controls the boys or the women, or any similar office, is suited to an aristocracy rather than to a democracy; for how can the magistrates prevent the wives of the poor from going out of doors? Neither is it an oligarchical office; for the wives of the oligarchs are too fine to be controlled.  
 14 Enough of these matters. I will now enquire into the appointment of offices. There are three questions to be answered, and the combinations of answers give all possible differences: first, who appoints? secondly, from whom? and  
 15 thirdly, how? Each of these three may further differ in three ways: (1) All the citizens, or only some, appoint;

(2) Either the magistrates are chosen out of all or out of **IV. 15** some who are distinguished either by a property qualification, or by birth, or merit, or for some special reason, as at Megara only those were eligible who had returned from exile and fought together against the democracy; (3) They may be appointed either by vote or by lot. Again, these several **16** modes may be combined; I mean that some officers may be elected by some, others by all, and some again out of some, and others out of all, and some by vote and others by lot. Each of these differences admits of four variations. **17**

(1) Either all may elect out of all by vote, or all out of all by lot; and either out of all collectively or by sections, as, for example, by tribes, and wards, and phratries, until all the citizens have been gone through; or the citizens may be in all cases eligible indiscriminately, and in some cases they may be elected by vote, and in some by lot. Again, (2) if only **18** some appoint, they may appoint out of all by vote, or out of all by lot; or out of some by vote, out of some by lot, and some offices may be appointed in one way and some in another; I mean if they are appointed by all they may be appointed partly by vote and partly by lot<sup>1</sup>. Thus there will be twelve forms of appointment without including the two combinations in the mode of election. Of these varieties two **19** are democratic forms, namely, when the choice is made by all the people out of all by vote or by lot, or by both, that is to say, some by lot and some by vote. The cases in which they do not all appoint at one time, but some appoint out of all or out of some by vote or by lot or by both (I mean some by lot and some by vote), or some out of all and others out

<sup>1</sup> i. e. partly out of all and partly out of some, and partly by vote and partly by lot (see *infra* c. 16. § 6).

IV. 15 of some both by lot and vote, are characteristic of a polity or  
 20 constitutional government. That some should be appointed  
 out of all by vote or by lot or by both, is oligarchical, and still  
 more oligarchical when some are elected from all and some  
 from some. That some should be elected out of all and  
 some out of some, or again some by vote and others by  
 1300 b lot, is characteristic of a constitutional government, which  
 21 inclines to an aristocracy. That some should be chosen out  
 of some, and some taken by lot out of some, is oligarchical  
<sup>1</sup> though not equally oligarchical<sup>1</sup>; oligarchical, too, is the  
 appointment of some out of some in both ways, and of some  
 out of all. But that all should elect by vote out of some is  
 aristocratical.

22 These are the different ways of constituting magistrates,  
 and in this manner officers correspond to different forms  
 of government:—which are proper to which, or how they  
 ought to be established, will be evident when we determine  
 the nature of their powers<sup>2</sup>. By powers I mean such power  
 as a magistrate exercises over the revenue or in defence of  
 the country; for there are various kinds of power: the power  
 of the general, for example, is not the same with that which  
 regulates contracts in the market.

16 Of the three parts of government, the judicial remains  
 to be considered, and this we shall divide on the same  
 principle. There are three points on which the varieties  
 of law-courts depend—the persons from whom they are  
 appointed, the matters with which they are concerned, and the  
 manner of their appointment. I mean, (1) are the judges  
 taken from all, or from some only? (2) how many kinds of

<sup>1</sup> These words are bracketed by Bekker in both editions.

<sup>2</sup> Omitting *καί* with some MSS. and the old translator.

## *Different Modes of Appointing Judges* 185

law-courts are there? (3) are the judges chosen by vote or **IV. 16** by lot?

First, let me determine how many kinds of law-courts<sup>2</sup> there are. They are eight in number: One is the court of audits or scrutinies; a second takes cognizance of [ordinary] offences against the state; a third is concerned with treason against the government; the fourth determines disputes respecting penalties, whether raised by magistrates or by private persons; the fifth decides the more important civil cases; the sixth tries cases of homicide, which are of various kinds,<sup>3</sup> (a) premeditated, (b) unpremeditated, (c) cases in which the guilt is confessed but the justice is disputed; and there may be a fourth court (d) in which murderers who have fled from justice are tried after their return; such as the Court of Phreatto is said to be at Athens. But cases of this sort rarely happen at all even in large cities. The different kinds of homicide may be tried either by the same or by different courts. (7) There are courts for strangers:—of these there<sup>4</sup> are two subdivisions, (a) for the settlement of their disputes with one another, (b) for the settlement of disputes between them and the citizens. And besides all these there must be (8) courts for small suits about sums of a drachma up to five drachmas, or a little more, which have to be determined, but they do not require many judges.

Nothing more need be said of these small suits, nor of the<sup>5</sup> courts for homicide and for strangers:—I would rather speak of political cases, which, when mismanaged, create division and disturbances in states.

Now if all the citizens judge, in all the different cases which I have distinguished, they may be appointed by vote or by lot, or sometimes by lot and sometimes by vote. Or

**IV. 16** when a certain class of causes are tried, the judges who decide them may be appointed, some by vote, and some by lot.

1301 **a** These then are the four modes of appointing judges from the  
 6 whole people, and there will be likewise four modes, if they are elected from a part only ; for they may be appointed from some by vote and judge in all causes ; or they may be appointed from some by lot and judge in all causes ; or they may be elected in some cases by vote, and in some cases taken by lot, or some courts, even when judging the same causes, may be composed of members some appointed by vote and some by lot. These then are the ways in which the aforesaid judges may be appointed.

7 Once more, the modes of appointment may be combined, I mean, that some may be chosen out of the whole people, others out of some, some out of both ; for example, the same tribunal may be composed of some who were elected out of all, and of others who were elected out of some, either by vote or by lot or by both.

8 In how many forms law-courts can be established has now been considered. The first form, viz. that in which the judges are taken from all the citizens, and in which all causes are tried, is democratical ; the second, which is composed of a few only who try all causes, oligarchical ; the third, in which some courts are taken from all classes, and some from certain classes only, aristocratical and constitutional.



Chap. 12-14. Revises their causes -  
to avoid them

## BOOK V

THE design which we proposed to ourselves is now nearly V. 1 completed<sup>1</sup>. Next in order follow the causes of revolution in states, how many, and of what nature they are; what elements work ruin in particular states, and out of what, and into what they mostly change; also what are the elements of preservation in states generally, or in a particular state, and by what means each state may be best preserved: these questions remain to be considered.

In the first place we must assume as our starting-point<sup>2</sup> that in the many forms of government which have sprung up there has always been an acknowledgement of justice and<sup>3</sup> proportionate equality, although mankind fail in attaining them, as indeed I have already explained<sup>3</sup>. Democracy,<sup>3</sup> for example, arises out of the notion that those who are equal in any respect are equal in all respects; because men are equally free, they claim to be absolutely equal. Oligarchy is based on the notion that those who are unequal in one respect are in all respects unequal; being unequal, that is, in property, they suppose themselves to be unequal absolutely. The democrats think that as they are equal they ought to be<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iv. c. 2.

<sup>2</sup> Reading καί with the MSS. and Bekker's 1st ed.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. iii. 9. §§ 1-4.

V. 1 equal in all things; while the oligarchs, under the idea that they are unequal, claim too much, which is one form of  
 5 inequality. All these forms of government have a kind of justice, but, tried by an absolute standard, they are faulty; and, therefore, both parties, whenever their share in the government does not accord with their preconceived ideas,  
 6 stir up revolution. Those who excel in virtue have the best  
 1301 b right of all to rebel (for they alone can with reason be deemed absolutely unequal)<sup>1</sup>, but then they are of all men the least  
 7 inclined to do so<sup>2</sup>. There is also a superiority which is claimed by men of rank; for they are thought noble because they spring from wealthy and virtuous ancestors<sup>3</sup>. Here  
 8 then, so to speak, are opened the very springs and fountains of revolution; and hence arise two sorts of changes in governments; the one affecting the constitution, when men seek to change from an existing form into some other, for example, from democracy into oligarchy, and from oligarchy into democracy, or from either of them into constitutional government or aristocracy, and conversely; the other not affecting the constitution, when, without disturbing the form of government, whether oligarchy, or monarchy, or any other, they try to get  
 9 the administration into their own hands<sup>4</sup>. Further, there is a question of degree; an oligarchy, for example, may become more or less oligarchical, and a democracy more or less democratical; and in like manner the characteristics of the other forms of government may be more or less strictly maintained.  
 10 Or, the revolution may be directed against a portion of the constitution only, e.g. the establishment or overthrow of a particular office: as at Sparta it is said that Lysander

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iii. 13. § 25.<sup>3</sup> Cp. iv. 8. § 9.<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 4. § 12.<sup>4</sup> Cp. iv. 5. § 3.

attempted to overthrow the monarchy, and king Pausanias<sup>1</sup> V. 1 the ephoralty. At Epidamnus, too, the change was partial. For instead of phylarchs or heads of tribes, a council was appointed; but to this day the magistrates are the only 11 members of the ruling class who are compelled to go to the Heliaea when an election takes place, and the office of the single archon<sup>2</sup> [survives, which] is another oligarchical feature. Everywhere inequality is a cause of revolution, but an inequality in which there is no proportion, for instance, a perpetual monarchy among equals; and always it is the desire of equality which rises in rebellion.

Now equality is of two kinds, numerical and proportional; 12 by the first I mean sameness or equality in number or size; by the second, equality of ratios. For example, the excess of three over two is equal to the excess of two over one; whereas four exceeds two in the same ratio in which two exceeds one, for two is the same part of four that one is of two, namely, the half. As I was saying before<sup>3</sup>, men agree 13 about justice in the abstract, that it is treating others according to their deserts, but there is a difference of opinion about the application of the principle; some think that if they are equal in any respect they are equal absolutely, others that if they are unequal in any respect they are unequal in all. Hence there 14 are two principal forms of government, democracy and oligarchy; for good birth and virtue are rare, but wealth and 1302a numbers are more common. In what city shall we find a hundred persons of good birth and of virtue? whereas the poor everywhere abound. That a state should be ordered, simply and wholly, according to either kind of equality, is not

<sup>1</sup> Cp. vii. 14. § 20.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. iii. 16. § 1.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. § 2; iii. 9. §§ 1-4.

V. 1 a good thing ; the proof is the fact that such forms of govern-  
 15 ment never last. They are originally based on a mistake, and,  
 as they begin badly, cannot fail to end badly. The inference  
 is that both kinds of equality should be employed ; numerical  
 in some cases, and proportionate in others.

Still democracy appears to be safer and less liable to revo-  
 16 lution than oligarchy<sup>1</sup>. For in oligarchies<sup>2</sup> there is the double  
 danger of the oligarchs falling out among themselves and also  
 with the people ; but in democracies<sup>3</sup> there is only the danger  
 of a quarrel with the oligarchs. No dissension worth men-  
 tioning arises among the people themselves. And we may  
 further remark that a government which is composed of the  
 middle class more nearly approximates to democracy than to  
 oligarchy<sup>4</sup>, and is the safest of the imperfect forms of  
 government.

2 In considering how dissensions and political revolutions  
 arise, we must first of all ascertain the beginnings and causes  
 of them which affect constitutions generally. They may be  
 said to be three in number ; and we have now to give an out-  
 line of each. We want to know (1) what is the feeling ?  
 and (2) what are the motives of those who make them ?  
 2 (3) whence arise political disturbances and quarrels ? The  
 universal and chief cause of this revolutionary feeling has been  
 already mentioned ; viz. the desire of equality, when men think  
 that they are equal to others who have more than themselves ;  
 or, again, the desire of inequality and superiority, when con-  
 ceiving themselves to be superior they think that they have  
 3 not more but the same or less than their inferiors ; pretensions  
 which may and may not be just. Inferiors revolt in order

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iv. 11. § 14.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 5.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. c. 6.

<sup>4</sup> Omitting *ἡ* before *τῶν δολίγων*.

that they may be equal, and equals that they may be superior. V. 2  
 Such is the state of mind which creates revolutions. The  
 motives for making them are the desire of gain and honour,  
 or the fear of dishonour and loss ; the authors of them want  
 to divert punishment or dishonour from themselves or their  
 friends. The causes and reasons of these motives and dis- 4  
 positions which are excited in men, about the things which  
 I have mentioned, viewed in one way, may be regarded as  
 seven, and in another as more than seven. Two of them 5  
 have been already noticed<sup>1</sup> ; but they act in a different  
 manner, for men are excited against one another by the love  
 of gain and honour—not, as in the case which I have just  
 supposed, in order to obtain them for themselves, but at seeing 1802 b  
 others, justly or unjustly, engrossing them. Other causes are 6  
 insolence, fear, love of superiority, contempt, disproportionate  
 increase in some part of the state ; causes of another sort are  
 election intrigues, carelessness, neglect about trifles, dissimi-  
 larity of elements.

What share insolence and avarice have in creating revolu- 3  
 tions, and how they work, is plain enough. When the  
 magistrates are insolent and grasping they conspire against  
 one another and also against the constitution from which they  
 derive their power, making their gains either at the expense of  
 individuals or of the public. It is evident, again, what an a  
 influence honour exerts and how it is a cause of revolution. Men  
 who are themselves dishonoured and who see others obtaining  
 honours rise in rebellion ; the honour or dishonour when un-  
 deserved is unjust, and just when awarded according to  
 merit. Again, superiority is a cause of revolution when one 3  
 or more persons have a power which is too much for the

<sup>1</sup> *Supra* §§ 2, 3.

V. 3 state and the power of the government ; this is a condition of affairs out of which there arises a monarchy, or a family oligarchy. And, therefore, in some places, as at Athens and Argos, they have recourse to ostracism<sup>1</sup>. But how much better to provide from the first that there should be no such pre-eminent individuals instead of letting them come into existence and then finding a remedy.

4 Another cause of revolution is fear. Either men have committed wrong, and are afraid of punishment, or they are expecting to suffer wrong and are desirous of anticipating their enemy<sup>2</sup>. Thus at Rhodes the notables conspired against the people through fear of the suits that were brought  
5 against them. Contempt is also a cause of insurrection and revolution ; for example, in oligarchies—when those who have no share in the state are the majority, they revolt, because they think that they are the stronger. Or, again, in democracies, the rich despise the disorder and anarchy of the state ; at Thebes, for example, where, after the battle of Oenophyta, the bad administration of the democracy led to its ruin. At Megara the fall of the democracy was due to a defeat occasioned by disorder and anarchy. And at Syracuse the democracy was overthrown before the tyranny of Gelo arose ; at Rhodes before the insurrection.

6 Political revolutions also spring from a disproportionate increase in any part of the state. For as a body is made up of many members, and every member ought to grow in proportion<sup>3</sup>, that symmetry may be preserved, but loses its nature if the foot be four cubits long and the rest of the  
1803 a body two spans ; and, should the abnormal increase be one of

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iii. 13. § 15.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 5. § 2.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. iii. 13. § 21.

quality as well as of quantity, may even take the form of **V. 3** another animal: even so a state has many parts, of which some one may often grow imperceptibly; for example, the number of poor in democracies and in constitutional states. And this disproportion may sometimes happen by an accident, 7 as at Tarentum, from a defeat in which many of the notables were slain in a battle with the Iapygians just after the Persian War, the constitutional government in consequence becoming a democracy; or, as was the case at Argos, where after the losses inflicted in 'the Battle of the Seventh Day' by Cleomenes the Lacedaemonian, the Argives were compelled to admit to citizenship some of their perioeci: and at Athens, when, after frequent defeats of their infantry in the times of the Peloponnesian War, the notables were reduced in number, because the soldiers had to be taken from the roll of citizens. Revolutions arise from this cause in 8 democracies as well as in other forms of government, but not to so great an extent. When the rich <sup>1</sup> grow numerous or properties increase, the form of government changes into an oligarchy or a government of families. Forms of government 9 also change—sometimes even without revolution, owing to election contests, as at Heraea (where, instead of electing their magistrates, they took them by lot, because the electors were in the habit of choosing their own partisans); or owing to carelessness, when disloyal persons are allowed to find their way into the highest offices, as at Oreum, where, upon the accession of Heracleodorus to office, the oligarchy was overthrown, and changed by him into a constitutional and democratical government.

<sup>1</sup> Reading *εὐπόρων*.



**V. 3** Again, the revolution may be accomplished by small  
 10 degrees; I mean that a great change may sometimes slip  
 into the constitution through neglect of a small matter; at  
 Ambracia, for instance, the qualification for office, small  
 at first, was eventually reduced to nothing. For the  
 Ambraciots thought that a small qualification was much the  
 same as none at all.

11 Another cause of revolution is difference of races which do  
 not at once acquire a common spirit; for a state is not the  
 growth of a day, neither is it a multitude brought together  
 by accident. Hence the reception of strangers in colonies,  
 either at the time of their foundation or afterwards, has  
 generally produced revolution; for example, the Achaeans  
 who joined the Troezenians in the foundation of Sybaris,  
 being the more numerous, afterwards expelled them; hence  
 12 the curse fell upon Sybaris. At Thurii the Sybarites  
 quarrelled with their fellow-colonists; thinking that the land  
 belonged to them, they wanted too much of it and were  
 driven out. At Byzantium the new colonists were detected  
 in a conspiracy, and were expelled by force of arms; the  
 people of Antissa, who had received the Chian exiles, fought  
 with them, and drove them out; and the Zancleans, after  
 having received the Samians, were driven by them out of  
 13 their own city. The citizens of Apollonia on the Euxine,  
 after the introduction of a fresh body of colonists, had a  
 revolution; the Syracusans, after the expulsion of their  
 1303 b tyrants, having admitted strangers and mercenaries to the  
 rights of citizenship, quarrelled and came to blows; the  
 people of Amphipolis, having received Chalcidian colonists,  
 were nearly all expelled by them.

14 Now, in oligarchies the masses make revolution under the

idea that they are unjustly treated, because, as I said before, **V. 3** they are equals, and have not an equal share, and in democracies the notables revolt, because they are not equals, and yet have only an equal share.

Again, the situation of cities is a cause of revolution when **15** the country is not naturally adapted to preserve the unity of the state. For example, the Chytrians at Clazomenae did not agree with the people of the island; and the people of Colophon quarrelled with the Notians; at Athens, too, the inhabitants of the Piraeus are more democratic than those who live in the city. For just as in war, the impediment of **16** a ditch, though ever so small, may break a regiment, so every cause of difference, however slight, makes a breach in a city. The greatest opposition is confessedly that of virtue and vice; next comes that of wealth and poverty; and there are other antagonistic elements, greater or less, of which one is this difference of place.

In revolutions the occasions may be trifling, but great **4** interests are at stake. Trifles are most important when they concern the rulers, as was the case of old at Syracuse; for the Syracusan constitution was once changed by a love-quarrel of two young men, who were in the government. The story is that while one of them was away from home **2** his beloved was gained over by his companion, and he to revenge himself seduced the other's wife. They then drew all the members of the ruling class into their quarrel and made a revolution. We learn from this story that we should **3** be on our guard against the beginnings of such evils, and should put an end to the quarrels of chiefs and mighty men. The mistake lies in the beginning—as the proverb says, 'Well begun is half done'—so an error at the beginning,

V. 4 though quite small, has the proportion of a half to the whole matter. In general, when the notables quarrel, the whole city is involved, as happened in Hestiaea after the Persian War. The occasion was the division of an inheritance; one of two brothers refused to give an account of their father's property and the treasure which he had found: so the poorer of the two quarrelled with him and enlisted in his cause the popular party, the other, who was very rich, the wealthy classes.

5 At Delphi, again, a quarrel about a marriage was the  
 1304 a beginning of all the troubles which followed. In this case the bridegroom, fancying some occurrence to be of evil omen, came to the bride, and went away without taking her. Whereupon her relations, thinking that they were insulted by him, put some of the sacred treasure [among his offerings] while he was sacrificing, and then slew him, pretending that  
 6 he had been robbing the temple. At Mitylene, too, a dispute about heiresses was the beginning of many misfortunes, and led to the war with the Athenians in which Paches took their city. A wealthy citizen, named Timophanes, left two daughters; Doxander, another citizen, wanted to obtain them for his sons, but he was rejected in his suit, whereupon he stirred up a revolution, and instigated the Athenians (of  
 7 whom he was proxenus) to interfere. A similar quarrel about an heiress arose at Phocis between Mnaseas the father of Mnason, and Euthykrates the father of Onomarchus; this was the beginning of the Sacred War. A marriage-quarrel was also the cause of a change in the government of Epidamnus. A certain man bethrothed his daughter secretly to a person whose father, having been made a magistrate, fined the father of the girl, and the latter, stung by the insult,

conspired with the unenfranchised classes to overthrow the **V. 4** state.

Governments also change into oligarchy or into democracy **8** or into a constitutional government because the magistrates, or some other section of the state, increase in power or renown. Thus at Athens the reputation gained by the court of the Areopagus, in the Persian War, seemed to tighten the reins of government. On the other hand, the victory of Salamis<sup>1</sup>, which was gained by the common people who served in the fleet, and won for the Athenians the empire of the sea, strengthened the democracy. At Argos, the notables, **9** having distinguished themselves against the Lacedaemonians in the battle of Mantinea, attempted to put down the democracy. At Syracuse, the people having been the chief authors of the victory in the war with the Athenians, changed the constitutional government into democracy. At Chalcis, the people, uniting with the notables, killed Phoxus the tyrant, and then seized the government. At Ambracia<sup>2</sup>, the people, in like manner, having joined with the conspirators in expelling the tyrant Periander, transferred the government to themselves. And generally, it should be remembered that **10** those who have secured power to the state, whether private citizens, or magistrates, or tribes, or any other part or section of the state, are apt to cause revolutions. For either envy of their greatness draws others into rebellion, or they themselves, in their pride of superiority, are unwilling to remain on a level with others.

Revolutions break out when opposite parties, e.g. the rich **11** and the poor, are equally balanced, and there is little or **1304 b**

<sup>1</sup> Cp. ii. 12. § 5; viii. 6. § 11.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. supra c. 3. § 10, and infra c. 10. § 16.

V. 4 nothing between them; for, if either party were manifestly  
 12 superior, the other would not risk an attack upon them. And,  
 for this reason, those who are eminent in virtue do not stir up  
 insurrections, being always a minority. Such are the beginnings  
 and causes of the disturbances and revolutions to which every  
 form of government is liable.

Revolutions are effected in two ways, by force and by  
 fraud. Force may be applied either at the time of making the  
 13 revolution or afterwards. Fraud, again, is of two kinds; for  
 (1) sometimes the citizens are deceived into a change of  
 government, and afterwards they are held in subjection against  
 their will. This was what happened in the case of the Four  
 Hundred, who deceived the people by telling them that the  
 king would provide money for the war against the Lacedaemonians,  
 and when the deception was over, still endeavoured  
 to retain the government. (2) In other cases the people are  
 persuaded at first, and afterwards, by a repetition of the  
 persuasion, their goodwill and allegiance are retained. The  
 revolutions which affect constitutions generally spring from  
 the above-mentioned causes<sup>1</sup>.

5 And now, taking each constitution separately, we must see  
 what follows from the principles already laid down.

Revolutions in democracies are generally caused by the in-  
 temperance of demagogues, who either in their private capacity  
 lay information against rich men until they compel them  
 to combine (for a common danger unites even the bitterest  
 enemies), or coming forward in public they stir up the people  
 against them. The truth of this remark is proved by a  
 2 variety of examples. At Cos the democracy was overthrown  
 because wicked demagogues arose, and the notables combined.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. *supra* c. 2, § 1.

At Rhodes the demagogues not only provided pay for the **V. 5** multitude, but prevented them from making good to the trierarchs the sums which had been expended by them; and they, in consequence of the suits which were brought against them, were compelled to combine and put down the democracy<sup>1</sup>. The democracy at Heraclea was overthrown **3** shortly after the foundation of the colony by the injustice of the demagogues, which drove out the notables, who came back in a body and put an end to the democracy. Much in **4** the same manner the democracy at Megara<sup>2</sup> was overturned; there the demagogues drove out many of the notables in order that they might be able to confiscate their property. At length the exiles, becoming numerous, returned, and engaging and defeating the people, established an oligarchy. The same **1305 a** thing happened with the democracy of Cyme which was overthrown by Thrasymachus. And we may observe that in most **5** states the changes have been of this character. For sometimes the demagogues, in order to curry favour with the people, wrong the notables and so force them to combine;—either they make a division of their property, or diminish their incomes by the imposition of public services, and sometimes they bring accusations against the rich that they may have their wealth to confiscate<sup>3</sup>.

Of old, the demagogue was also a general, and then democ- **6** racies changed into tyrannies. Most of the ancient tyrants were originally demagogues<sup>4</sup>. They are not so now, but **7** they were then; and the reason is that they were generals and not orators, for oratory had not yet come into fashion. Whereas in our day, when the art of rhetoric has made such

<sup>1</sup> Cp. *supra* c. 3. § 4.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 3. § 5, and iv. 15. § 15.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. *infra* c. 8. § 20.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. c. 10. § 4; Plato, *Rep.* viii. 565 D.

V. 5 progress, the orators lead the people, but their ignorance of military matters prevents them from usurping power; at any  
 8 rate instances to the contrary are few and slight. Formerly tyrannies were more common than they are now, because great power was often placed in the hands of individuals; thus a tyranny arose at Miletus out of the office of the Prytanis, who had supreme authority in many important matters<sup>1</sup>. Moreover, in those days, when cities were not large, the people dwelt in the fields, busy at their work; and their chiefs,  
 9 if they possessed any military talent, seized the opportunity, and winning the confidence of the masses by professing their hatred of the wealthy, they succeeded in obtaining the tyranny. Thus at Athens Peisistratus led a faction against the men of the plain<sup>2</sup>, and Theagenes at Megara slaughtered the cattle of the wealthy, which he found by the river side where they  
 10 had put them to graze. Dionysius, again, was thought worthy of the tyranny because he denounced Daphnaeus and the rich; his enmity to the notables won for him the confidence of the people. Changes also take place from the ancient to the latest form of democracy; for where there is a popular election of the magistrates and no property qualification, the aspirants for office get hold of the people, and contrive at  
 11 last even to set them above the laws. A more or less complete cure for this state of things is for the separate tribes, and not the whole people, to elect the magistrates.

These are the principal causes of revolutions in democracies.

6 There are two patent causes of revolutions in oligarchies [one coming from without, the other from within the government]: (1) First, when the oligarchs oppress the people,

<sup>1</sup> Cp. *infra* c. 10. § 5.

<sup>2</sup> See Herod. i. 59.



for then anybody is good enough to be their champion, **V. 6** especially if he be himself a member of the oligarchy, as 1305 b Lygdamis at Naxos, who afterwards came to be tyrant. But 2 revolutions which commence outside the governing class may be further subdivided. Sometimes, when the government is very exclusive, the revolution is brought about by persons of the wealthy class who are excluded, as happened at Massalia and Istros and Heraclea, and other cities. Those who had 3 no share in the government created a disturbance, until first the elder brothers, and then the younger, were admitted; for in some places father and son, in others elder and younger brothers, do not hold office together. At Massalia the oligarchy became more like a constitutional government, but at Istros ended in a democracy, and at Heraclea was enlarged to 600. At Cnidos, again, the oligarchy underwent a con- 4 siderable change. For the notables fell out among themselves, because only a few shared in the government; there existed among them the rule already mentioned, that father and son could not hold office together, and, if there were several brothers, only the eldest was admitted. The people took advantage of the quarrel, and choosing one of the notables to be their leader, attacked and conquered the oligarchs, who were divided, and division is always a source of weakness. The city of Erythrae, too, in old times was ruled, and ruled 5 well, by the Basilidae, but the people took offence at the narrowness of the oligarchy and changed the government.

(2) Of internal causes of revolutions in oligarchies one is the personal rivalry of the oligarchs, which leads them to play the demagogue. Now, the oligarchical demagogue is of 6 two sorts: either (1) he practises upon the oligarchs themselves (for, although the oligarchy are quite a small number,

V. 6 there may be a demagogue among them, as at Athens the party of Charicles predominated among the Thirty, that of Phrynichus in the Four Hundred); or (2) the oligarchs may play the demagogue with the people. This was the case at Larissa, where the guardians of the citizens endeavoured to gain over the people because they were elected by them; and such is the fate of all oligarchies in which the magistrates are elected, as at Abydos, not by the class to which they belong, but by the heavy-armed or by the people, although they may be required to have a high qualification, or to be members of  
 7 a political club; or, again, where the law-courts are independent of the government, the oligarchs flatter the people in order to obtain a decision in their own favour, and so they change the constitution; this happened at Heraclea in Pontus. Again, oligarchies change whenever any attempt is made to narrow them; for then those who desire equal rights are com-  
 8 pelled to call in the people. Changes in the oligarchy also occur when the oligarchs waste their private property by extravagant living; for then they want to innovate, and  
 1306 a either try to make themselves tyrants, or install some one else in the tyranny, as Hipparinus did Dionysius at Syracuse, and as at Amphipolis<sup>1</sup> a man named Cleotimus introduced Chalcidian colonists, and when they arrived, stirred them up  
 9 against the rich. For a like reason in Aegina the person who carried on the negotiation with Chares endeavoured to revolutionize the state. Sometimes a party among the oligarchs try to create a political change; sometimes they rob the treasury, and then, either the other oligarchs quarrel with the thieves, as happened at Apollonia in Pontus, or they with the other oligarchs. But an oligarchy which is at unity

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 3. § 13.

with itself is not easily destroyed from within; of this we **V. 6** may see an example at Pharsalus, for there, although the **10** rulers are few in number, they govern a large city, because they have a good understanding among themselves.

Oligarchies, again, are overthrown when another oligarchy is created within the original one, that is to say, when the **11** whole governing body is small and yet they do not all share in the highest offices. Thus at Elis the governing body was a small senate; and very few ever found their way into it, because, although in number ninety, the senators were elected for life and out of certain families in a manner similar to the Lacedaemonian elders. Oligarchy is liable to revolutions **12** alike in war and in peace; in war because, not being able to trust the people, the oligarchs are compelled to hire mercenaries, and the general who is in command of them often ends in becoming a tyrant, as Timophanes did at Corinth; or if there are more generals than one they make themselves into a company of tyrants<sup>1</sup>. Sometimes the oligarchs, fearing this danger, give the people a share in the government because their services are necessary to them. And in time of peace, **13** from mutual distrust, the two parties hand over the defence of the state to the army and to an arbiter between the two factions who often ends the master of both. This happened at Larissa when Simos and the Aleuadae had the government, and at Abydos in the days of Iphiades and the political clubs. Revolutions also arise out of marriages or lawsuits which lead **14** to the overthrow of one party among the oligarchs by another. Of quarrels about marriages I have already mentioned<sup>2</sup> some instances; another occurred at Eretria, where Diagoras overturned the oligarchy of the knights because he had been

<sup>1</sup> *δυναστεία*.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 4. §§ 5-7.

V. 6 wronged about a marriage. A revolution at Heraclea, and  
 15 another at Thebes, both arose out of decisions of law-courts  
 upon a charge of adultery; in both cases the punishment was  
 just, but executed in the spirit of party, at Heraclea upon  
 1806 b Eurytion, and at Thebes upon Archias; for their enemies  
 were jealous of them and so had them pilloried in the  
 16 agora. Many oligarchies have been destroyed by some  
 members of the ruling class taking offence at their excessive  
 despotism; for example, the oligarchy at Cnidus and at  
 Chios.

Changes of constitutional governments, and also of oligarchies which limit the office of counsellor, judge, or other magistrate to persons having a certain money qualification,  
 17 often occur by accident. The qualification may have been  
 originally fixed according to the circumstances of the time, in  
 such a manner as to include in an oligarchy a few only, or  
 in a constitutional government the middle class. But after  
 a time of prosperity, whether arising from peace or some  
 other good fortune, the same property becomes many times  
 as large, and then everybody participates in every office; this  
 happens sometimes gradually and insensibly, and sometimes  
 18 quickly. These are the causes of changes and revolutions in  
 oligarchies.

We must remark generally, both of democracies and oligarchies, that they sometimes change, not into the opposite forms of government, but only into another variety of the same class; I mean to say, from those forms of democracy and oligarchy which are regulated by law into those which are arbitrary, and conversely.

7 In aristocracies revolutions are stirred up when a few only share in the honours of the state; a cause which has been

already shown to affect oligarchies ; for an aristocracy is **V. 7**  
a sort of oligarchy, and, like an oligarchy, is the government  
of a few, although the few are the virtuous and not the  
wealthy ; hence the two are often confounded. And revo- 2  
lutions will be most likely to happen, and must happen, when  
the majority of the people are high-spirited, and have a notion  
that they are as good as their rulers. Thus at Lacedaemon  
the so-called Partheniae, who were the [illegitimate] sons of  
the Spartan peers, attempted a revolution, and, being detected,  
were sent away to colonize Tarentum. Again, revolutions  
occur when great men who are at least of equal merit are  
dishonoured by those higher in office, as Lysander was by 3  
the kings of Sparta : or, when a brave man is excluded from  
the honours of the state, like Cinadon, who conspired against  
the Spartans under Agesilaus ; or, again, when some are very  
poor and others very rich, a state of society which is most  
often the result of war, as at Lacedaemon in the days of the  
Messenian War ; this is proved from the poem of Tyrtaeus, 4  
entitled ' Good Order ' ; for he speaks of certain citizens who 1307 a  
were ruined by the war and wanted to have a redistribution of  
the land. Again, revolutions arise when an individual who  
is great, and might be greater, wants to rule alone, as at Lace-  
daemon, Pausanias, who was general in the Persian War, or  
like Hanno at Carthage.

Constitutional governments and aristocracies are commonly 5  
overthrown owing to some deviation from justice in the con-  
stitution itself ; the cause of the downfall is, in the former,  
the ill-mingling of the two elements democracy and oligarchy ;  
in the latter, of the three elements, democracy, oligarchy, and  
virtue, but especially democracy and oligarchy. For to com-  
bine these is the endeavour of constitutional governments ;

V. 7 and most of the so-called aristocracies have a like aim<sup>1</sup>, but 6 differ from polities by the addition of virtue; hence some of them are more and some less permanent. Those which incline more to oligarchy are called aristocracies, and those which incline to democracy constitutional governments. And therefore the latter are the safer of the two; for the greater the number, the greater the strength, and when men are equal 7 they are contented. But the rich, if the government gives them power, are apt to be insolent and avaricious; and, in general, whichever way the constitution inclines, in that direction it changes as either party gains strength, a constitutional government becoming a democracy, an aristocracy, an oligarchy. 8 But the process may be reversed, and aristocracy may change into democracy. This happens when the poor, under the idea that they are being wronged, force the constitution to take an opposite form. In like manner constitutional governments change into oligarchies. The only stable principle of government is equality according to proportion, and for every man to enjoy his own.

9 What I have just mentioned actually happened at Thurii<sup>2</sup>, where the qualification for office, though at first high, was reduced, and the magistrates increased in number. The notables had previously acquired the whole of the land contrary to law; for the government tended to oligarchy, and they were able to encroach. But the people, who had been trained by war, soon got the better of the guards kept by the oligarchs, until those who had too much gave up their land.

10 Again, since all aristocratical governments incline to oligarchy, the notables are apt to be grasping; thus at Lacedaemon, where property has passed into few hands<sup>3</sup>, the notables

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iv. c. 7.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 3. § 12.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. ii. 9. § 14.

can do too much as they like, and are allowed to marry whom V. 7 they please. The city of Locri was ruined by a marriage connexion with Dionysius, but such a thing could never have happened in a democracy, or in a well-balanced aristocracy.

I have already remarked that in all states revolutions are 11 occasioned by trifles<sup>1</sup>. In aristocracies, above all, they are of 1307 b a gradual and imperceptible nature. The citizens begin by giving up some part of the constitution, and so with greater ease the government change something else which is a little more important, until they have undermined the whole fabric of the state. At Thurii there was a law that generals should 12 only be re-elected after an interval of five years, and some high-spirited young men who were popular with the soldiers of the guard, despising the magistrates and thinking that they would easily gain their purpose, wanted to abolish this law and allow their generals to hold perpetual commands; for they well knew that the people would be glad enough to elect them. Whereupon the magistrates who had charge of these matters, 13 and who are called councillors, at first determined to resist, but they afterwards consented, thinking that, if only this one law was changed, no further inroad would be made on the constitution. But other changes soon followed which they in vain attempted to oppose; and the state passed into the hands of the revolutionists who established a dynastic oligarchy.

All constitutions are overthrown either from within or from 14 without; the latter, when there is some government close at hand having an opposite interest, or at a distance, but powerful. This was exemplified in the old times of the Athenian and the Lacedaemonian supremacies; the Athenians everywhere

<sup>1</sup> c. 4. § 1.



V. 7 put down the oligarchies, and the Lacedaemonians the democracies<sup>1</sup>.

I have now explained what are the chief causes of revolutions and dissensions in states.

8 We have next to consider what means there are of preserving states in general, and also in particular cases. In the first place it is evident that if we know the causes which destroy states, we shall also know the causes which preserve them; for opposites produce opposites, and destruction is the opposite of preservation<sup>2</sup>.

2 In all well-tempered governments there is nothing which should be more jealously maintained than the spirit of obedience to law, more especially in small matters; for transgression creeps in unperceived and at last ruins the state, just as the constant recurrence of small expenses in time eats up a fortune. The change does not take place all at once, and therefore is not observed; the mind is deceived, as in the fallacy which says that 'if each part is little, then the whole is little.' And this is true in one way, but not in another, for the whole and the all are not little, although they are made up of littles.

4 In the first place, then, men should guard against the beginning of change, and in the second place they should not  
1308 a rely upon the political devices of which I have already spoken<sup>3</sup>, invented only to deceive the people, for they are  
5 proved by experience to be useless. Further we note that oligarchies as well as aristocracies may last, not from any inherent stability in such forms of government, but because the rulers are on good terms both with the unenfranchised and

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iv. 11. § 18.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. Nic. Eth. v. 1. § 4.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. iv. 13. § 1.

with the governing classes, not maltreating any who are excluded from the government, but introducing into it the leading spirits among them<sup>1</sup>. They should never wrong the ambitious in a matter of honour, or the common people in a matter of money; and they should treat one another and their fellow-citizens in a spirit of equality. The equality which the friends of democracy seek to establish for the multitude is not only just but likewise expedient among equals. Hence, if the governing class are numerous, many democratic institutions are useful; for example, the restriction of the tenure of offices to six months, that all those who are of equal rank may share in them. Indeed, equals or peers when they are numerous become a kind of democracy, and therefore demagogues are very likely to arise among them, as I have already remarked<sup>2</sup>. The short tenure of office prevents oligarchies and aristocracies from falling into the hands of families; it is not easy for a person to do any great harm when his tenure of office is short, whereas long possession begets tyranny in oligarchies and democracies. For the aspirants to tyranny are either the principal men of the state, who in democracies are demagogues and in oligarchies members of ruling houses, or those who hold great offices, and have a long tenure of them<sup>3</sup>.

States are preserved when their destroyers are at a distance, and sometimes also because they are near, for the fear of them makes the government keep in hand the state. Wherefore the ruler who has a care of the state should invent terrors, and bring distant dangers near, in order that the citizens may be on their guard, and, like sentinels in a night-watch, never relax their attention. He should endeavour too by help of the laws

<sup>1</sup> vi. 7. § 4.<sup>2</sup> *Supra* c. 6. § 6.<sup>3</sup> *Cp.* c. 5. § 6.

V. 8 to control the contentions and quarrels of the notables, and to prevent those who have not hitherto taken part in them from being drawn in. No ordinary man can discern the beginning of evil<sup>1</sup>, but only the true statesman.

10 As to the change produced in oligarchies and constitutional governments<sup>2</sup> by the alteration of the qualification, when this arises, not out of any variation in the census but only out of the increase of money, it is well to compare the general valuation of property with that of past years, annually in those cities in which the census is taken annually, and in larger  
1308 b cities every third or fifth year. If the whole is many times greater or many times less than when the rates were fixed at the previous census, there should be power given by law to raise or lower the qualification as the amount is greater or less.

11 Where in the absence of any such provision the standard is raised, a constitutional government passes into an oligarchy, and an oligarchy is narrowed to a rule of families; where the standard is lowered, constitutional government becomes democracy, and oligarchy either constitutional government or democracy.

12 It is a principle common to democracy, oligarchy<sup>3</sup>, and every other form of government not to allow the disproportionate increase of any citizen, but to give moderate honour for a long time rather than great honour for a short time. For men are easily spoiled; not every one can bear prosperity. But if this rule is not observed, at any rate the honours which are given all at once should be taken away by degrees and not all at once. Especially should the laws provide against any one

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 4. §§ 1-3.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 3. § 8; c. 6. §§ 16-18.

<sup>3</sup> Or, adding καὶ μοναρχία, 'monarchy,' with many MSS. and Bekker's first edition.

having too much power, whether derived from friends or **V. 8** money; if he has, he and his followers should be sent out of the country<sup>1</sup>. And since innovations creep in through the **13** private life of individuals, there ought to be a magistracy which will have an eye to those whose life is not in harmony with the government, whether oligarchy or democracy or any other. And for a like reason an increase of prosperity in any part of the state should be carefully watched. The proper remedy **14** for this evil is always to give the management of affairs and offices of state to opposite elements; such opposites are the virtuous and the many, or the rich and the poor. Another way is to combine the poor and the rich in one body, or to increase the middle class: thus an end will be put to the revolutions which arise from inequality.

But above all every state should be so administered and so **15** regulated by law that its magistrates cannot possibly make money<sup>2</sup>. In oligarchies special precautions should be used against this evil. For the people do not take any great **16** offence at being kept out of the government—indeed they are rather pleased than otherwise at having leisure for their private business—but what irritates them is to think that their rulers are stealing the public money; then they are doubly annoyed; for they lose both honour and profit. If office brought no **17** profit, then and then only could democracy and aristocracy be combined; for both notables and people might have their **1809 a** wishes gratified. All would be able to hold office, which is the aim of democracy, and the notables would be magistrates, which is the aim of aristocracy. And this result may be **18** accomplished when there is no possibility of making money

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 3. § 3; iii. 13. § 15.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 12. § 14.

V. 8 out of the offices; for the poor will not want to have them when there is nothing to be gained from them—they would rather be attending to their own concerns; and the rich, who do not want money from the public treasury, will be able to take them; and so the poor will keep to their work and grow rich, and the notables will not be governed by the lower class.

- 19 In order to avoid speculation of the public money, the transfer of the revenue should be made at a general assembly of the citizens, and duplicates of the accounts deposited with the different brotherhoods, companies, and tribes. And honours should be given by law to magistrates who have the reputation  
20 of being incorruptible. In democracies the rich should be spared; not only should their property not be divided, but their incomes also, which in some states are taken from them imperceptibly, should be protected. It is a good thing to prevent the wealthy citizens, even if they are willing, from undertaking expensive and useless public services, such as the giving of choruses, torch-races, and the like. In an oligarchy, on the other hand, great care should be taken of the poor, and lucrative offices should go to them; if any of the wealthy classes insult them, the offender should be punished more severely <sup>1</sup> than one of their own class for a like offence<sup>1</sup>. Provision should be made that estates pass by inheritance and not by gift, and no person should have more than one inheritance; for in this way properties will be equalized, and more  
21 of the poor rise to competency. It is also expedient both in a democracy and in an oligarchy to assign to those who have less share in the government (for example, to the rich in a democracy and to the poor in an oligarchy) an equality or preference in all but the principal offices of state. The latter

<sup>1</sup> Or, 'than if he had wronged one of his own class.'

should be entrusted chiefly or only to members of the governing class. V. 8

There are three qualifications required in those who have to fill the highest offices—(1) first of all, loyalty to the established constitution; (2) the greatest administrative capacity; (3) virtue and justice of the kind proper to each form of government; for, if what is just is not the same in all governments, the quality of justice must also differ. There may be a doubt however, when all these qualities do not meet in the same person, how the selection is to be made; suppose, for example, a good general is a bad man and not a friend to the constitution, and another man is loyal and just, which should we choose? In making the election ought we not to consider two points? what qualities are common, and what are rare. Thus in the choice of a general, we should regard his skill rather than his virtue; for few have military skill, but many have virtue. In keeping watch or in any office of stewardship, on the other hand, the opposite rule should be observed; for more virtue than ordinary is required in the holder of such an office, but the necessary knowledge is of a sort which all men possess. 1309 b

It may, however, be asked what a man wants with virtue if he have political ability and is loyal, since these two qualities alone will make him do what is for the public interest. But may not men have both of them and yet be deficient in self-control? If, knowing and loving their own interests, they do not always attend to them, may they not be equally negligent of the interests of the public? 4

Speaking generally, we may say that whatever legal enactments are held to be for the interest of states, all these preserve states. And the great preserving principle is the one which 5

V. 9 has been repeatedly mentioned<sup>1</sup>—to have a care that the loyal  
 6 citizens should outnumber the disloyal. Neither should we  
 forget the mean, which at the present day is lost sight of in  
 perverted forms of government: for many practices which  
 appear to be democratical are the ruin of democracies, and  
 many which appear to be oligarchical are the ruin of oligarchies.  
 7 Those who think that all virtue is to be found in their own  
 party principles push matters to extremes; they do not con-  
 sider that disproportion destroys a state. A nose which varies  
 from the ideal of straightness to a hook or snub may still be  
 of good shape and agreeable to the eye; but if the excess be  
 very great, all symmetry is lost, and the nose at last ceases to  
 be a nose at all on account of some excess in one direction or  
 defect in the other; and this is true of every other part of the  
 8 human body. The same law of proportion equally holds in  
 states. Oligarchy or democracy, although a departure from  
 the most perfect form, may yet be a good enough government,  
 but if any one attempts to push the principles of either to an  
 extreme, he will begin by spoiling the government and end by  
 9 having none at all. Wherefore the legislator and the states-  
 man ought to know what democratical measures save and  
 what destroy a democracy, and what oligarchical measures save  
 or destroy an oligarchy. For neither the one nor the other  
 can exist or continue to exist unless both rich and poor are  
 included in it. If equality of property is introduced, the state  
 1310 a must of necessity take another form; for when by laws carried  
 to excess one or other element in the state is ruined, the con-  
 stitution is ruined.

10 There is an error common both to oligarchies and to  
 democracies:—in the latter the demagogues, when the multi-

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iv. 12. § 1; vi. 6. § 2.



tude are above the law, are always cutting the city in two by **V. 9**  
 quarrels with the rich, whereas they should always profess to  
 be maintaining their cause; just as in oligarchies, the oligarchs  
 should profess to maintain the cause of the people, and should  
 take oaths the opposite of those which they now take. For **11**  
 there are cities in which they swear—‘I will be an enemy to  
 the people, and will devise all the harm against them which  
 I can;’ but they ought to exhibit and to entertain the very  
 opposite feeling; in the form of their oath there should be an  
 express declaration—‘I will do no wrong to the people.’

But of all the things which I have mentioned, that which  
 most contributes to the permanence of constitutions is the *Education*  
 adaptation of education to the form of government<sup>1</sup>, and yet *in our day*  
 in our own day this principle is universally neglected. *The* **12**  
 best laws, though sanctioned by every citizen of the state,  
 will be of no avail unless the young are trained by habit and  
 education in the spirit of the constitution, if the laws are  
 democratical, democratically, or oligarchically if the laws are  
 oligarchical. For there may be a want of self-discipline in  
 states as well as in individuals. Now, to have been educated **13**  
 in the spirit of the constitution is not to perform the actions in  
 which oligarchs or democrats delight, but those by which the  
 existence of an oligarchy or of a democracy is made possible.  
 Whereas among ourselves the sons of the ruling class in an  
 oligarchy live in luxury<sup>2</sup>, but the sons of the poor are hardened  
 by exercise and toil, and hence they are both more inclined  
 and better able to make a revolution<sup>3</sup>. And in democracies **14**  
 of the more extreme type there has arisen a false idea of  
 freedom which is contradictory to the true interests of the

<sup>1</sup> Cp. i. 13. § 15.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. iv. 11. § 6.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. Pl. Rep. viii. 556 D.

V. 9 state. For two principles are characteristic of democracy, the  
 15 government of the majority and freedom. Men think that what is just is equal; and that equality is the supremacy of the popular will; and that freedom and equality mean the doing what a man likes. In such democracies every one lives as he pleases, or in the words of Euripides, 'according to his fancy.' But this is all wrong; men should not think it slavery to live according to the rule of the constitution; for it is their salvation.

I have now discussed generally the causes of the revolution and destruction of states, and the means of their preservation and continuance.

10 I have still to speak of monarchy, and the causes of its destruction and preservation. What I have said already  
 1310 b respecting other forms of government applies almost equally  
 2 to royal and to tyrannical rule. For royal rule is of the nature of an aristocracy, and a tyranny is a compound of oligarchy and democracy in their most extreme forms; it is therefore most injurious to its subjects, being made up of two evil forms of government, and having the perversions and  
 3 errors of both. These two forms of monarchy differ in their very origin. The appointment of a king is the resource of the better classes against the people, and he is elected by them out of their own number, because either he himself or his family excel in virtue and virtuous actions; whereas a tyrant is chosen from the people to be their protector against the notables, and in order to prevent them from being injured.  
 4 History shows that almost all tyrants have been demagogues  
 1 who gained the favour of the people by their accusation of the  
 5 notables<sup>1</sup>. At any rate this was the manner in which the

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 5. § 6; Plato, Rep. 565 D.

tyrannies arose in the days when cities had increased in power. V. 10 Others which were older originated in the ambition of kings wanting to overstep the limits of their hereditary power and become despots. Others again grew out of the class which were chosen to be chief magistrates; for in ancient times the people who elected them gave the magistrates, whether civil or religious, a long tenure. Others arose out of the custom which oligarchies had of making some individual supreme over the highest offices. In any of these<sup>1</sup> ways an ambitious man 6 had no difficulty, if he desired, in creating a tyranny, since he had the power in his hands already, either as king or as one of the officers of state<sup>2</sup>. Thus Pheidon at Argos and several others were originally kings, and ended by becoming tyrants; Phalaris, on the other hand, and the Ionian tyrants, acquired the tyranny by holding great offices. Whereas Panaetius at Leontini, Cypselus at Corinth, Peisistratus at Athens, Dionysius at Syracuse, and several others who afterwards became tyrants, were at first demagogues.

And so, as I was saying, royalty ranks with aristocracy, for 7 it is based upon merit, whether of the individual or of his family, or on benefits conferred<sup>3</sup>, or on these claims with power added to them. For all who have obtained this honour 8 have benefited, or had in their power to benefit, states and nations; some, like Codrus, have prevented the state from being enslaved in war; others, like Cyrus, have given their country freedom, or have settled or gained a territory, like the Lacedaemonian, Macedonian, and Molossian kings<sup>4</sup>. The 9 idea of a king is to be a protector of the rich against unjust 1311 a

<sup>1</sup> Retaining *τούτοις*, which is omitted in Bekker's second edition, apparently by mistake.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 5. § 8.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. iii. 14. § 12.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. c. 11. § 2.

V. 10 treatment, of the people against insult and oppression. Whereas a tyrant, as has often been repeated, has no regard to any public interest, but only to his private ends; his aim is pleasure, the aim of a king, honour. Wherefore also in their desires they differ; the tyrant is desirous of riches, the king, of what brings honour. And the guards of a king are citizens, but of a tyrant mercenaries<sup>1</sup>.

11 That tyranny has all the vices both of democracy and oligarchy is evident. As of oligarchy so of tyranny, the end is wealth; (for by wealth only can the tyrant maintain either his guard or his luxury). Both mistrust the people, and therefore deprive them of their arms. Both agree too in injuring the people and driving them out of the city and dispersing them. From democracy tyrants have borrowed the art of making war upon the notables and destroying them secretly or openly, or of exiling them because they are rivals and stand in the way of their power; and also because plots against them are contrived by men of this class, who either  
12 want to rule or escape subjection. Hence Periander advised Thrasybulus<sup>2</sup> to cut off the tops of the tallest ears of corn, meaning that he must always put out of the way the citizens who overtop the rest. And so, as I have already intimated, the beginnings of change are the same in monarchies as in other forms of government; subjects attack their sovereigns out of fear or contempt, or because they have been unjustly treated by them. And of injustice, the most common form is insult, another is confiscation of property.

14 The ends sought by conspiracies against monarchies, whether tyrannies or royalties, are the same as the ends sought by conspiracies against other forms of government.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iii. 14. § 7.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. iii. 13. § 16.

Monarchs have great wealth and honour which are objects of V. 10  
desire to all mankind. The attacks are made sometimes  
against their lives, sometimes against the office; where the  
sense of insult is the motive, against their lives. Any sort of 15  
insult (and there are many) may stir up anger, and when men  
are angry, they commonly act out of revenge, and not from  
ambition. For example, the attempt made upon the Peisis-  
tratidae arose out of the public dishonour offered to the sister  
of Harmodius and the insult to himself. He attacked the  
tyrant for his sister's sake, and Aristogeiton joined in the  
attack for the sake of Harmodius. A conspiracy was also 16  
formed against Periander, the tyrant of Ambracia, because,  
when drinking with a favourite youth, he asked him whether 1811 b  
by this time he was not with child by him. Philip, too, was  
attacked by Pausanias because he permitted him to be insulted  
by Attalus and his friends, and Amyntas the little, by Derdas,  
because he boasted of having enjoyed his youth. Evagoras of  
Cyprus, again, was slain by the eunuch to revenge an insult;  
for his wife had been carried off by Evagoras' son. Many 17  
conspiracies have originated in shameful attempts made by  
sovereigns on the persons of their subjects. Such was the  
attack of Crataeus upon Archelaus; he had always hated the  
connexion with him, and so, when Archelaus, having promised  
him one of his two daughters in marriage, did not give him  
either of them, but broke his word and married the elder to  
the king of Elymaea, when he was hard pressed in a war  
against Sirrhas and Arrhibaeus, and the younger to his own  
son Amyntas, under the idea that he would then be less likely  
to quarrel with the son of Cleopatra—Crataeus made this  
slight a pretext for attacking Archelaus, though even a less  
reason would have sufficed, for the real cause of the estrange-

V. 10 ment was the disgust which he felt at his connexion with the  
 18 king. And from a like motive Hellanocrates of Larissa conspired with him; for when Archelaus, who was his lover, did not fulfil his promise of restoring him to his country, he thought that the connexion between them had originated, not in affection, but in the wantonness of power. Parrhon, too, and Heracleides of Aenos, slew Cotys in order to avenge their father, and Adamas revolted from Cotys in revenge for the wanton outrage which he had committed in mutilating him when a child.

19 <sup>1</sup> Many, too, irritated at blows inflicted on the person which they deemed an insult, have either killed or attempted to kill officers of state and royal princes by whom they have been injured<sup>1</sup>. Thus, at Mitylene, Megacles and his friends attacked and slew the Penthalidae, as they were going about and striking people with clubs. At a later date Smerdis, who had been beaten and torn away from his wife by Penthilus,  
 20 slew him. In the conspiracy against Archelaus, Decamnichus stimulated the fury of the assassins and led the attack; he was enraged because Archelaus had delivered him to Euripides to be scourged; for the poet had been irritated at some remark made by Decamnichus on the foulness of his breath. Many other examples might be cited of murders and conspiracies which have arisen from similar causes.

21 Fear is another motive which has caused conspiracies as well in monarchies as in more popular forms of government. Thus Artapanes conspired against Xerxes and slew him, fearing that he would be accused of hanging Darius against his orders—he being under the impression that Xerxes would

<sup>1</sup> Or: 'Many persons too, even of those connected with the government or the royal family,' taking τῶν περὶ, etc. with the subject.

forget what he had said in the middle of a meal, and that the **V. 10** offence would be forgiven.

Another motive is contempt, as in the case of Sardanapulus, <sup>1812 a</sup><sub>22</sub> whom some one saw carding wool with his women, if the story-tellers say truly; and the tale may be true, if not of him, of some one else<sup>1</sup>. Dion attacked the younger Dionysius <sub>23</sub> because he despised him, and saw that he was equally despised by his own subjects, and that he was always drunk. Even the friends of a tyrant will sometimes attack him out of contempt; for the confidence which he reposes in them breeds contempt, and they think that they will not be found out. The expectation of success is likewise a sort of contempt; <sub>24</sub> the assailants are ready to strike, and think nothing of the danger, because they seem to have the power in their hands. Thus generals of armies attack monarchs; as, for example, Cyrus attacked Astyages, despising the effeminacy of his life, and believing that his power was worn out. Thus, again, Seuthes the Thracian conspired against Amadocus, whose general he was.

And sometimes men are actuated by more than one motive, <sub>25</sub> like Mithridates, who conspired against Ariobarzanes, partly out of contempt and partly from the love of gain.

Bold natures, placed by their sovereigns in a high military position, are most likely to make the attempt in the expectation of success; for courage is emboldened by power, and the union of the two inspires them with the hope of an easy victory.

Attempts of which the motive is ambition arise from other causes. There are men who will not risk their lives in the <sub>26</sub> hope of gains and rewards however great, but who nevertheless

<sup>1</sup> Cp. i. 11. § 8.



V. 10 regard the killing of a tyrant simply as an extraordinary action which will make them famous and honourable in the world ;  
 27 they wish to acquire, not a kingdom, but a name. It is rare, however, to find such men ; he who would kill a tyrant must  
 28 be prepared to lose his life if he fail. He must have the resolution of Dion, who, when he made war upon Dionysius, took with him very few troops, saying, 'that whatever measure of success he might attain would be enough for him, even if he were to die the moment he landed ; such a death would be welcome to him.' But this is a temper to which few can attain.

29 Once more, tyrannies, like all other governments, are  
 1312 b destroyed from without by some opposite and more powerful form of government. That such a government will have the will to attack them is clear ; for the two are opposed in  
 30 principle ; and all men, if they can, do what they will. Democracy is also antagonistic to tyranny, on the principle of Hesiod, 'Potter hates Potter,' because they are nearly akin, for the extreme form of democracy is tyranny, and royalty and aristocracy are both alike opposed to tyranny, because they are constitutions of a different type. And therefore the Lacedaemonians put down most of the tyrannies, and so did the Syracusans during the time when they were well governed.

31 Again, tyrannies are destroyed from within, when the reigning family are divided among themselves, as that of Gelo was, and more recently that of Dionysius ; in the case of Gelo because Thrasybulus, the brother of Hiero, flattered the son of Gelo and led him into excesses in order that he might rule in his name. Whereupon the family conspired to get rid of Thrasybulus and save the tyranny ; but the party who con-

spired<sup>1</sup> with them seized the opportunity and drove them all **V. 10** out. In the case of Dionysius, Dion, his own relative, 32 attacked and expelled him with the assistance of the people; he afterwards perished himself.

There are two chief motives which induce men to attack tyrannies—hatred and contempt. Hatred of tyrants is inevitable, and contempt is also a frequent cause of their destruction. Thus we see that most of those who have 33 acquired, have retained their power, but those who have inherited<sup>2</sup>, have lost it, almost at once; for living in luxurious ease, they have become contemptible, and offer many opportunities to their assailants. Anger, too, must be included under hatred, and produces the same effects. It is oftentimes 34 even more ready to strike—the angry are more impetuous in making an attack, for they do not listen to reason. And men are very apt to give way to their passions when they are insulted. To this cause is to be attributed the fall of the Peisistratidae and of many others. Hatred is more reasonable, 35 but anger is accompanied by pain, which is an impediment to reason, whereas hatred is painless<sup>3</sup>.

In a word, all the causes which I have mentioned as destroying the last and most unmixed form of oligarchy, and the extreme form of democracy, may be assumed to affect tyranny; indeed the extreme forms of both are only tyrannies distributed among several persons. Kingly rule is little 36 affected by external causes, and is, therefore, lasting; it is generally destroyed from within. And there are two ways in which the destruction may come about; (1) when the 1313 a

<sup>1</sup> Omitting *κατ'* inserted by Bekker in 2nd ed.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. Plato, *Laws*, iii. 695.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. *Rhetoric*, ii. 4. § 31.

V. 10 members of the royal family quarrel among themselves, and  
 (2) when the kings attempt to administer the state too much  
 37 after the fashion of a tyranny, and to extend their authority  
 contrary to the law. There are now no royalties ; monarchies,  
 where they exist, are<sup>1</sup> tyrannies. For the rule of a king is  
 over voluntary subjects, and he is supreme in all important  
 matters ; but in our own day men are more upon an equality,  
 and no one is so immeasurably superior to others as to repre-  
 sent adequately the greatness and dignity of the office. Hence  
 mankind will not, if they can help, endure it, and any one who  
 obtains power by force or fraud is at once thought to be  
 38 a tyrant. In hereditary monarchies a further cause of destruc-  
 tion is the fact that kings often fall into contempt, and,  
 although possessing not tyrannical but only royal power, are  
 apt to outrage others. Their overthrow is then readily  
 effected ; for there is an end to the king when his subjects  
 do not want to have him, but the tyrant lasts, whether they  
 like him or not.

The destruction of monarchies is to be attributed to these  
 and the like causes.

11 And they are preserved, to speak generally, by the opposite  
 causes ; or, if we consider them separately, (1) royalty is  
 preserved by the limitation of its powers. The more re-  
 stricted the functions of kings, the longer their power will last  
 unimpaired ; for then they are more moderate and not so  
 despotic in their ways ; and they are less envied by their  
 2 subjects. This is the reason why the kingly office has lasted  
 so long among the Molossians. And for a similar reason it  
 has continued among the Lacedaemonians, because there it  
 was always divided between two, and afterwards further

<sup>1</sup> Omitting *καί* with Bekker's 2nd ed.

limited by Theopompus in various respects, more particularly **V. 11** by the establishment of the Ephoralty. He diminished the power of the kings, but established on a more lasting basis the kingly office, which was thus made in a certain sense not less, but greater. There is a story that when his wife once 3 asked him whether he was not ashamed to leave to his sons a royal power which was less than he had inherited from his father, he replied, 'No indeed, for the power which I leave to them will be more lasting.'

As to (2) tyrannies, they are preserved in two most 4 opposite ways. One of them is the old traditional method in which most tyrants administer their government. Of such arts Periander of Corinth is said to have been the great master, and many similar devices may be gathered from the Persians in the administration of their government. There 5 are also the ancient prescriptions for the preservation of a tyranny, in so far as this is possible; viz. that the tyrant should lop off those who are too high; he must put to death men of spirit: he must not allow common meals, clubs, education, and the like; he must be upon his guard against 1313 b anything which is likely to inspire either courage or confidence among his subjects; he must prohibit literary assemblies or other meetings for discussion, and he must take every means to prevent people from knowing one another (for acquaintance begets mutual confidence). Further, he must compel the 6 inhabitants to appear in public and live <sup>1</sup>at his gates<sup>1</sup>; then he will know what they are doing; if they are always kept under, they will learn to be humble. In short, he should practise these and the like Persian and barbaric arts which all have the same object. A tyrant should also endeavour to 7

<sup>1</sup> Or, 'at their doors.'

V. 11 know what each of his subjects says or does, and should employ spies, like the 'female detectives' at Syracuse, and the eavesdroppers whom Hiero was in the habit of sending to any place of resort or meeting; for the fear of informers prevents people from speaking their minds, and if they do, 8 they are more easily found out. Another art of the tyrant is to sow quarrels among the citizens; friends should be embroiled with friends, the people with the notables, and the rich with one another. Also he should impoverish his subjects; he thus provides money for the support of his guards<sup>1</sup>, and the people, having to keep hard at work, are 9 prevented from conspiring. The Pyramids of Egypt afford an example of this policy; also the offerings of the family of Cypselus, and the building of the temple of Olympian Zeus by the Peisistratidae, and the great Polycratean monuments at Samos; all these works were alike intended to occupy the 10 people and keep them poor. Another practice of tyrants is to multiply taxes, after the manner of Dionysius at Syracuse, who contrived that within five years his subjects should bring into the treasury their whole property. The tyrant is also fond of making war in order that his subjects may have something to do and be always in want of a leader. And whereas the power of a king is preserved by his friends, the characteristic of a tyrant is to distrust his friends, because he knows that all men want to overthrow him, and they above all have the power<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Reading ἡ τε with Bekker's 2nd ed.

<sup>2</sup> This, which is probably the meaning of the passage, cannot be elicited from the text as it stands. The addition is required of some such phrase as αὐτὸν καθελεῖν, which is not wholly without manuscript authority.

Again, the evil practices of the last and worst forms of V. 11 democracy are all found in tyrannies. Such are the power <sup>11</sup> given to women in their families in the hope that they will inform against their husbands, and the licence which is allowed to slaves in order that they may betray their masters; for slaves and women do not conspire against tyrants; and they are of course friendly to tyrannies and also to democracies, since under them they have a good time. For the people too would fain be a monarch, and therefore by them, as well as by <sup>12</sup> the tyrant, the flatterer is held in honour; in democracies he is the demagogue; and the tyrant also has his humble companions who flatter him.

1314 a

Hence tyrants are always fond of bad men, because they love to be flattered, but no man who has the spirit of a free-man in him will demean himself by flattery; good men love others, but they do not flatter anybody. Moreover the bad <sup>13</sup> are useful for bad purposes; 'nail knocks out nail,' as the proverb says. It is characteristic of a tyrant to dislike every one who has dignity or independence; he wants to be alone in his glory, but any one who claims a like dignity or asserts his independence encroaches upon his prerogative, and is hated by him as an enemy to his power. Another mark of a tyrant is <sup>14</sup> that he likes foreigners better than citizens, and lives with them and invites them to his table; for the one are enemies, but the others enter into no rivalry with him.

Such are the notes of the tyrant and the arts by which he preserves his power; there is no wickedness too great for him. All that we have said may be summed up under three heads, which answer to the three aims of the tyrant. These are, <sup>15</sup> (1) the humiliation of his subjects; he knows that a mean-spirited man will not conspire against anybody: (2) the crea-

V. 11 tion of mistrust among them; for a tyrant is not overthrown until men begin to have confidence in one another; and this is the reason why tyrants are at war with the good; they are under the idea that their power is endangered by them, not only because they will not be ruled despotically, but also because they are loyal to one another, and to other men, and do not inform against one another or against other men:

16 (3) the tyrant desires that his subjects shall be incapable of action, for no one attempts what is impossible, and they will not attempt to overthrow a tyranny, if they are powerless. Under these three heads the whole policy of a tyrant may be summed up, and to one or other of them all his ideas may be referred: (1) he sows distrust among his subjects; (2) he takes away their power; (3) he humbles them.

17 This then is one of the two methods by which tyrannies are preserved; and there is another which proceeds upon  
18 a different principle of action. The nature of this latter method may be gathered from a comparison of the causes which destroy kingdoms, for as one mode of destroying kingly power is to make the office of king more tyrannical, so the salvation of a tyranny is to make it more like the rule of a king. But of one thing the tyrant must be careful; he must keep power enough to rule over his subjects, whether they like him or not, for if he once gives this up he gives up  
19 his tyranny. But though power must be retained as the foundation, in all else the tyrant should act or appear to act in  
1314 b the character of a king. In the first place he should pretend a care of the public revenues, and not waste money in making presents of a sort at which the common people get excited when they see their miserable earnings taken from them and lavished on courtesans and strangers and artists. He should



give an account of what he receives and of what he spends **V. 11** (a practice which has been adopted by some tyrants); for then he will seem to be the manager of a household rather than a tyrant; nor need he fear that, while he is the lord of 20 the city, he will ever be in want of money. Such a policy is much more advantageous for the tyrant when he goes from home, than to leave behind him a hoard, for then the garrison who remain in the city will be less likely to attack his power; and a tyrant, when he is absent from home, has more reason to fear the guardians of his treasure than the citizens, for the one accompany him, but the others remain behind. In the 21 second place, he should appear to collect taxes and to require public services only for state purposes; and that he may form a fund in case of war, he ought to make himself the guardian and treasurer of them, as if they belonged, not to him, but to the public. He should appear, not harsh, but dignified, and when men meet him they should look upon him with reverence, and not with fear. Yet it is hard for him to be respected if 22 he inspires no respect, and therefore whatever virtues he may neglect, at least he should maintain the character of a statesman, and produce the impression that he is one. Neither he nor any of his associates should ever be guilty of the least offence against modesty towards the young of either sex who are his subjects, and the women of his family should observe 23 a like self-control towards other women; the insolence of women has ruined many tyrannies. In the indulgence of pleasures he should be the opposite of our modern tyrants, who not only begin at dawn and pass whole days in sensuality, but want other men to see them, that they may admire their happy and blessed lot. In these things a tyrant should be 24 especially moderate, or at any rate should not parade his vices

V. 11 to the world; for a drunken and drowsy tyrant is soon despised and attacked; not so he who is temperate and wide awake. His conduct should be the very reverse of nearly everything which has been said before about tyrants. He ought to adorn and improve his city, as though he were not  
 25 a tyrant, but the guardian of the state. Also he should  
 1315 a appear to be particularly earnest in the service of the Gods; for if men think that a ruler is religious and has a reverence for the Gods, they are less afraid of suffering injustice at his hands, and they are less disposed to conspire against him, because they believe him to have the very Gods fighting on  
 26 his side. At the same time his religion must not be thought foolish. And he should honour men of merit, and make them think that they would not be held in more honour by the citizens if they had a free government. The honour he should distribute himself, but the punishment should be in-  
 27 flicted by officers and courts of law. It is a precaution which is taken by all monarchs not to make one person great; but if one, then two or more should be raised, that they may look sharply after one another. If after all some one has to be made great, he should not be a man of bold spirit; for such dispositions are ever most inclined to strike. And if any one is to be deprived of his power, let it be diminished gradually,  
 28 not taken from him all at once<sup>1</sup>. The tyrant should abstain from all outrage; in particular from personal violence and from wanton conduct towards the young. He should be especially careful of his behaviour to men who are lovers of honour; for as the lovers of money are offended when their property is touched, so are the lovers of honour and the  
 29 virtuous when their honour is affected. Therefore a tyrant

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 8. § 12.

ought either not to use force at all, or he should be thought **V. 11** only to employ fatherly correction, and not to trample upon others; and his acquaintance with youth should be supposed to arise from affection, and not from the insolence of power, and in general he should compensate the appearance of dishonour by the increase of honour.

Of those who attempt assassination they are the most **30** dangerous, and require to be most carefully watched who do not care to survive, if they effect their purpose. Therefore **31** special precaution should be taken about any who think that either they or their relatives have been insulted; for when men are led away by passion to assault others they are regardless of themselves. As Heracleitus says, 'It is difficult to fight against anger; for a man will buy revenge with life <sup>1</sup>.'

And whereas states consist of two classes, of poor men **32** and of rich, the tyrant should lead both to imagine that they are preserved and prevented from harming one another by his rule, and whichever of the two is stronger he should attach to his government; for, having this advantage, he has no need either to emancipate slaves or to disarm the citizens; either party added to the force which he already has, will make him stronger than his assailants.

But enough of these details;—what should be the general **33** policy of the tyrant is obvious. He ought to show himself to his subjects in the light, not of a tyrant, but of the master of a household and of a king. He should not appropriate what **1315 b** is theirs, but should be their guardian; he should be moderate, not extravagant in his way of life; he should be the companion of the notables, and the hero of the multitude. For **34** then his rule will of necessity be nobler and happier, because

<sup>1</sup> *Fragm. 69 (ed. Mullach).*

V. 11 he will rule over better men<sup>1</sup> whose spirits are not crushed, over men to whom he himself is not an object of hatred, and of whom he is not afraid. His power too will be more lasting. Let his disposition be virtuous, or at least half virtuous; and if he must be wicked, let him be half wicked only.

12 Yet no forms of government are so short-lived as oligarchy and tyranny. The tyranny which lasted longest was that of Orthagoras and his sons at Sicyon; this continued for a hundred years. The reason was that they treated their subjects with moderation, and to a great extent observed the laws; and in various ways gained the favour of the people by the care which they took of them. Cleisthenes, in particular, 2 was respected for his military ability. If report may be believed, he crowned the judge who decided against him in the games; and, as some say, the sitting statue in the Agora of Sicyon is the likeness of this person. A similar story is told of Peisistratus, who is said on one occasion to have allowed himself to be summoned and tried before the Areopagus.

3 Next in duration to the tyranny of Orthagoras was that of the Cypselidae at Corinth, which lasted seventy-three years and six months: Cypselus reigned thirty years, Periander forty-four, and Psammetichus the son of Gordius three. 4 Their continuance was due to similar causes: Cypselus was a popular man, who during the whole time of his rule never had a body-guard; and Periander, although he was a tyrant, 5 was a great soldier. Third in duration was the rule of the Peisistratidae at Athens, but it was interrupted; for Peisistratus was twice driven out, so that during three-and-thirty

<sup>1</sup> Cp. i. 5. § 2.

years he reigned only seventeen; and his sons reigned V. 12 eighteen—together thirty-five years. Of other tyrannies, that of Hiero and Gelo at Syracuse was the most lasting. Even this, however, was short, not more than eighteen years 6 in all; for Gelo continued tyrant for seven years, and died in the eighth; Hiero reigned for ten years, and Thrasybulus was driven out in the eleventh month. In fact, tyrannies generally have been of quite short duration.

I have now gone through all the causes by which consti- 7 tutional governments and monarchies are either destroyed or 1316 a preserved.

In the Republic of Plato<sup>1</sup>, Socrates treats of revolutions, but not well, for he mentions no cause of change which peculiarly affects the first or perfect state. He only says 8 that nothing is abiding, but that all things change in a certain cycle; and that the origin of the change is a base of numbers which are in the ratio of four to three, and this when combined with a figure of five gives two harmonies—(he means when the number of this figure becomes solid); he conceives that nature will then produce bad men who will not submit to education; in which latter particular he may very likely be not far wrong, for there may well be some men who cannot be educated and made virtuous. But why is such 9 a cause of change peculiar to his ideal state, and not rather common to all states, nay to everything which comes into being at all? <sup>2</sup> Or how is the state specially changed by the agency of time, which, as he declares, makes all things change? And things which did not begin together, change together <sup>2</sup>, for example, if something has come into being the

<sup>1</sup> Rep. viii. 546.

<sup>2</sup> Placing a note of interrogation after μεταβάλλειν. Or: 'And

V. 12 day before the completion of the cycle, it will change with it.

Further, why should the perfect state change into the Spartan?  
 10 for governments more often take an opposite form than  
 one akin to them. The same remark is applicable to the  
 other changes; he says that the Spartan constitution changes  
 into an oligarchy, and this into a democracy, and this again  
 11 into a tyranny. And yet the contrary happens quite as often;  
 for a democracy is even more likely to change into an oligarchy  
 than into a monarchy. Further, he never says whether  
 tyranny is, or is not, liable to revolutions, and if it is, what  
 is the cause of them, or into what form it changes. And  
 the reason is, that he could not very well have told: for there  
 is no rule; according to him it should revert to the first and  
 12 best, and then there would be a complete cycle. But in point  
 of fact a tyranny often changes into a tyranny, as that at  
 Sicily changed from the tyranny of Myron into that of  
 Cleisthenes; into oligarchy, as the tyranny of Antileon did at  
 Chalcis; into democracy, as that of Gelo did at Syracuse;  
 into aristocracy, as at Carthage, and the tyranny of Charilaus  
 13 at Lacedaemon. Often an oligarchy changes into a tyranny,  
 like most of the ancient oligarchies in Sicily; for example,  
 the oligarchy at Leontini changed into the tyranny of Panae-  
 tius; that at Gela into the tyranny of Cleander; that at  
 Rhegium into the tyranny of Anaxilaus; the same thing has  
 14 happened in many other states. And it is absurd to suppose  
 that the state changes into oligarchy merely because [as Plato

in the period of time which, as he says, makes all things change, things which did not begin together change together.]

Bekker in his 2nd edition has altered the reading of the MSS. *διὰ τε τοῦ χρόνου* to *διὰ γε τὸν χρόνον*. The rendering of the text agrees with either reading; that of the note with the reading of the MSS. only.

says<sup>1</sup>] the ruling class are lovers and makers of money, **V. 12** and not because the very rich think it unfair that the very poor <sup>1316 b</sup> should have an equal share in the government with themselves. Moreover, in many oligarchies there are laws against making money in trade. But at Carthage, which is a democracy, there is no such prohibition; and yet to this day the Carthaginians have never had a revolution. It is absurd too for him **15** to say that an oligarchy is two cities, one of the rich, and the other of the poor<sup>2</sup>. Is not this just as much the case in the Spartan constitution, or in any other in which either all do not possess equal property, or in which all are not equally good men? Nobody need be any poorer than he was before, **16** and yet the oligarchy may change all the same into a democracy, if the poor form the majority; and a democracy may change into an oligarchy, if the wealthy class are stronger than the people, and the one are energetic, the other indifferent. Once more, although the causes of revolutions are **17** very numerous, he mentions only one<sup>3</sup>, which is, that the citizens become poor through dissipation and debt, as though he thought that all, or the majority of them, were originally rich. This is not true: though it is true that when any of the leaders lose their property they are ripe for revolution; but, when anybody else, it is no great matter. And an **18** oligarchy does not more often pass into a democracy than into any other form of government. Again, if men are deprived of the honours of state, and are wronged, and insulted, they make revolutions, and change forms of government, even although they have not wasted their substance because they

<sup>1</sup> Rep. viii. 550 E.

<sup>2</sup> Rep. viii. 551 D.

<sup>3</sup> Rep. viii. 555 D.



V. 12 might do what they liked—of which extravagance he declares excessive freedom to be the cause<sup>1</sup>.

Finally, although there are many forms of oligarchies and democracies, Socrates speaks of their revolutions as though there were only one form of either of them.

<sup>1</sup> Rep. viii. 564.

## BOOK VI

WE have now considered the varieties of the deliberative VI. 1  
or supreme power in states, and the various arrangements of  
law-courts and state offices, and which of them are adapted  
to different forms of government<sup>1</sup>. We have also spoken of  
the destruction and preservation of states, how and from what  
causes they arise<sup>2</sup>.

Of democracy and all other forms of government there are 2  
many kinds; and it will be well to assign to them severally  
the modes of organization which are proper and advantageous  
to each, adding what remains to be said about them. More-<sup>3</sup>  
over, we ought to consider the various combinations of these 1317 a  
modes themselves<sup>3</sup>; for such combinations make constitutions  
overlap one another, so that aristocracies have an oligarchical  
character, and constitutional governments incline to democ-  
racies<sup>4</sup>.

When I speak of the combinations which remain to be 4  
considered, and thus far have not been considered by us,  
I mean such as these:—when the deliberative part of the  
government and the election of officers is constituted oligar-  
chically, and the law-courts aristocratically, or when the  
courts and the deliberative part of the state are oligarchical,  
and the election to offices aristocratical, or when in any other  
way there is a want of harmony in the composition of a state.

I have shown already what forms of democracy are suited 5

<sup>1</sup> Bk. iv. 14-16.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. Bk. iv. 7-9.

<sup>2</sup> Bk. v.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. iv. 8. § 3.

VI. 1 to particular cities, and what of oligarchy to particular peoples, and to whom each of the other forms of government is suited. 6 Further, we must not only show which of these governments is the best for each state, but also briefly proceed to consider<sup>1</sup> how these and other forms of government are to be established.

First of all let us speak of democracy, which will also bring to light the opposite form of government commonly 7 called oligarchy. For the purposes of this enquiry we need to ascertain all the elements and characteristics of democracy, since from the combinations of these the varieties of demo- 8 cratic government arise. There are several of these differing from each other, and the difference is due to two causes. One (1) has been already mentioned<sup>2</sup>—differences of population; for the popular element may consist of husbandmen, or of mechanics, or of labourers, and if the first of these be added to the second, or the third to the two others, not only does the democracy become better or worse, but its 9 very nature is changed. A second cause (2) remains to be mentioned: the various properties and characteristics of democracy, when variously combined, make a difference. For one democracy will have less and another will have more, and another will have all of these characteristics. There is an advantage in knowing them all, whether a man wishes to establish some new form of democracy, or only to remodel 10 an existing one<sup>3</sup>. Founders of states try to bring together all the elements which accord with the ideas of the several constitutions; but this is a mistake of theirs, as I have already remarked<sup>4</sup> when speaking of the destruction and preservation

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iv. 2. § 5.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. iv. 1. § 7.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. iv. 4. § 21.

<sup>4</sup> v. 9. § 7.

of states. We will now set forth the requirements, ethical VI. 1 character, and aims of such states.

The basis of a democratic state is liberty; which, according 2 to the common opinion of men, can only be enjoyed in such 1317 b a state—this they affirm to be the great end of every democracy<sup>1</sup>. One principle of liberty is for all to rule and be 2 ruled in turn, and indeed democratic justice is the application of numerical not proportionate equality; whence it follows that the majority must be supreme, and that whatever the majority approve must be the end and the just. Every citizen, it is said, must have equality, and therefore in a democracy the poor have more power than the rich, because there are more of them, and the will of the majority is supreme. This, 3 then, is one note of liberty which all democrats affirm to be the principle of their state. Another is that a man should live as he likes<sup>2</sup>. This, they say, is the privilege of a freeman; and, on the other hand, not to live as a man likes is the mark of a slave. This is the second characteristic of democracy, 4 whence has arisen the claim of men to be ruled by none, if possible, or, if this is impossible, to rule and be ruled in turns; and so it coincides with the freedom based upon equality [which was the first characteristic].

<sup>3</sup> Such being our foundation and such the nature of de- 5 mocracy, its characteristics are as follows<sup>3</sup>:—the election of officers by all out of all; and that all should rule over each, and each in his turn over all; that the appointment to all offices, or to all but those which require experience and

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Plato Rep. viii. 557 foll.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. v. 9. § 15.

<sup>3</sup> Or (taking ἀρχή in the sense of 'beginning'), 'Such being our foundation, and such being the principle from which we start, the characteristics of democracy are as follows.'

VI. 2 skill<sup>1</sup>, should be made by lot; that no property qualification should be required for offices, or only a very low one; that no one should hold the same office twice, or not often, except in the case of military offices; that the tenure of all offices, or of as many as possible, should be brief; that all men should sit in judgment, or that judges selected out of all should judge in all matters, or in most, or in the greatest and most important—such as the scrutiny of accounts, the constitution, and private contracts; that the assembly should be supreme over all causes, or at any rate over the most important, and 6 the magistrates over none or only over a very few<sup>2</sup>. Of all institutions, a council is the most democratic<sup>3</sup> when there is not the means of paying all the citizens, but when they are paid even this is robbed of its power; for the people then draw all cases to themselves, as I said in the previous discussion<sup>4</sup>. The next characteristic of democracy is payment 7 for services; assembly, law-courts, magistrates, everybody receives pay, when it is to be had; or when it is not to be had for all, then it is given to the law-courts and to the stated assemblies, to the council and to the magistrates, or at least to any of them who are compelled to have their meals together. And whereas oligarchy is characterized by birth, wealth, and education, the notes of democracy appear to be 8 the opposite of these—low birth, poverty, mean employment. Another note is that no magistracy is perpetual, but if any 1318 a such have survived some ancient change in the constitution it should be stripped of its power, and the holders should be elected by lot and no longer by vote. These are points common to all democracies; but democracy and demos in

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iv. 14. § 6.<sup>2</sup> See note.<sup>3</sup> Cp. iv. 15. § 11.<sup>4</sup> Cp. iv. 6. § 5.

their truest form are based upon the recognized principle of **VI. 2** democratic justice, that all should count equally; for equality implies that the rich should have no more share in the government than the poor<sup>1</sup>, and should not be the only rulers, but that all should rule equally according to their numbers<sup>2</sup>. And in this way men think that they will secure equality and freedom in their state.

Next comes the question, How is this equality to be ob- **3**  
tained? Is the qualification to be so distributed that five hundred rich shall be equal to a thousand poor? and shall we give the thousand a power equal to that of the five hundred? or, if this is not to be the mode, ought we, still retaining the same ratio, to take equal numbers from each and give them the control of the elections<sup>3</sup> and of the courts?—Which, **2**  
according to the democratical notion, is the juster form of the constitution—this or one based on numbers only? Democrats say that justice is that to which the majority agree, oligarchs that to which the wealthier class; in their opinion the decision should be given according to the amount of property. In both principles there is some inequality and **3**  
injustice. For if justice is the will of the few, any one person who has more wealth than all the rest of his class put together, ought, upon the oligarchical principle, to have the sole power—but this would be tyranny; or if justice is the will of the majority, as I was before saying<sup>4</sup>, they will unjustly confiscate the property of the wealthy minority. **To 4**

<sup>1</sup> Transposing ἀπόρους and εὐπόρους, with Bekker's 2nd ed.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. iv. 4. § 22.

<sup>3</sup> Reading with Bekker's 2nd ed. αἰρέσεων from conjecture for διαίρέσεων, which is the reading of the MSS. See note.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. iii. 10. § 1.

**VI. 3** find a principle of equality in which they both agree we must enquire into their respective ideas of justice.

Now they agree in saying that whatever is decided by the majority of the citizens is to be deemed law. Granted:—but not without some reserve; since there are two classes out of which a state is composed,—the poor and the rich,—that is to be deemed law on which both or the greater part of both agree; and if they disagree, that which is approved by the majority, that is by those who have the higher qualification. For example, suppose that there are ten rich and twenty poor, and some measure is approved by six of the rich and is disapproved by fifteen of the poor, and the remaining four of the rich join with the party of the poor, and the remaining five of the poor with that of the rich; in such a case the will of those whose qualifications, when both sides are added up, are the greatest, should prevail. If they turn out to be equal, there is no greater difficulty than at present, when, if the assembly or the courts are divided, recourse is had to the lot, or to some similar expedient. But, although it may be difficult in theory to know what is just and equal, the practical difficulty of inducing those to forbear who can, if they like, encroach, is far greater, for the weaker are always asking for equality and justice, but the stronger <sup>1</sup> care for none of these things<sup>1</sup>.

**4** Of the four kinds of democracy, as was said in the previous discussion<sup>2</sup>, the best is that which comes first in order; it is also the oldest of them all. I am speaking of them according to the natural classification of their inhabitants. For the best material of democracy is an agricultural population<sup>3</sup>; there is

<sup>1</sup> Or, 'care nothing for the weaker.'

<sup>2</sup> Cp. iv. 4. § 22.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. iv. 6. § 2.



no difficulty in forming a democracy where the mass of the VI. 4 people live by agriculture or tending of cattle. Being poor, 2 they have no leisure, and therefore do not often attend the assembly, and not having the necessities of life they are always at work, and do not covet the property of others. Indeed, they find their employment pleasanter than the cares of government or office where no great gains can be made out of them, for the many are more desirous of gain than of honour<sup>1</sup>. A proof is that even the ancient tyrannies were patiently endured 3 by them, as they still endure oligarchies, if they are allowed to work and are not deprived of their property; for some of them grow quickly rich and the others are well enough off. Moreover they have the power of electing the magistrates 4 and calling them to account<sup>2</sup>; their ambition, if they have any, is thus satisfied; and in some democracies, although they do not all share in the appointment of offices, except through representatives elected in turn out of the whole people, as at Mantinea, yet, if they have the power of deliberating, the many are contented. Even this form of government may be 5 regarded as a democracy, and was such at Mantinea. Hence it is both expedient and customary in such a democracy that all should elect to offices, and conduct scrutinies, and sit in the law-courts, but that the great offices should be filled up by election and from persons having a qualification; the greater requiring a greater qualification, or, if there be no offices for which a qualification is required, then those who are marked out by special ability should be appointed. Under such a 6 form of government the citizens are sure to be governed well (for the offices will always be held by the best persons; the people are willing enough to elect them and are not jealous of

<sup>1</sup> iv. 13. § 8.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. ii. 12. § 5.

- VI. 4 the good). The good and the notables will then be satisfied, for they will not be governed by men who are their inferiors, and the persons elected will rule justly, because others will call  
 7 them to account. Every man should be responsible to others, nor should any one be allowed to do just as he pleases; for where absolute freedom is allowed there is nothing to restrain  
 1319 a the evil which is inherent in every man. But the principle of responsibility secures that which is the greatest good in states; the right persons rule and are prevented from doing wrong,  
 8 and the people have their due. It is evident that this is the best kind of democracy, and why? because the people are drawn from a certain class. The ancient laws of many states which aimed at making the people husbandmen were excellent. They provided either that no one should possess more than a certain quantity of land, or that, if he did, the land should not be within a certain distance from the town or the acropolis.  
 9 Formerly in many states there was a law forbidding any one to sell his original allotment of land<sup>1</sup>. There is a similar law attributed to Oxylus, which is to the effect that there should be a certain portion of every man's property on which he could  
 10 not borrow money. A useful corrective to the evil of which I am speaking would be the law of the Aphytaeans, who, although they are numerous, and do not possess much land, are all of them husbandmen. For their properties are reckoned in the census, not entire, but only in such small portions<sup>2</sup> that even the poor may have more than the amount required<sup>2</sup>.  
 11 Next best to an agricultural, and in many respects similar, are a pastoral people, who live by their flocks; they are the

<sup>1</sup> Cp. ii. 7. § 7.

<sup>2</sup> Or, 'that the qualification of the poor may exceed that of the rich.'

best trained of any for war, robust in body and able to camp **VI. 4**  
out. The people of whom other democracies consist are far <sup>12</sup>  
inferior to them, for their life is inferior ; there is no room for  
moral excellence in any of their employments, whether they  
be mechanics or traders or labourers. Besides, people of this <sup>13</sup>  
class can readily come to the assembly, because they are con-  
tinually moving about in the city and in the agora ; whereas  
husbandmen are scattered over the country and do not meet,  
or equally feel the want of assembling together. Where the <sup>14</sup>  
territory extends to a distance from the city, there is no  
difficulty in making an excellent democracy or constitutional  
government, for the people are compelled to settle in the  
country ; and even if there is a town population the assembly  
ought not to meet when the country people cannot come. We <sup>15</sup>  
have thus explained how the first and best form of democracy  
should be constituted ; it is clear that the other or inferior  
sorts will deviate in a regular order, and the population which <sup>1319 b</sup>  
is excluded will at each stage be of a lower kind.

The last form of democracy, that in which all share alike, is  
one which cannot be borne by all states, and will not last long  
unless well regulated by laws and customs. The more general  
causes which tend to destroy this or other kinds of government  
have now been pretty fully considered <sup>1</sup>. In order to constitute <sup>16</sup>  
such a democracy and strengthen the people, the leaders have  
been in the habit of including as many as they can, and making  
citizens not only of those who are legitimate, but even of the  
illegitimate, and of those who have only one parent a citizen,  
whether father or mother <sup>2</sup> ; for nothing of this sort comes  
amiss to such a democracy. This is the way in which dema- <sup>17</sup>  
gogues proceed ; whereas the right thing would be to make

<sup>1</sup> Cp. v. 5.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. iii. 5. § 7.

**VI. 4** no more additions when the number of the commonalty exceeds that of the notables or of the middle class,—beyond this not to go. When in excess of this point the state becomes disorderly, and the notables grow excited and impatient of the democracy, as in the insurrection at Cyrene; for no notice is taken of a little evil, but when it increases it strikes the eye.

**18** Measures like those which Cleisthenes<sup>1</sup> passed when he wanted to increase the power of the democracy at Athens, or such as were taken by the founders of popular government at Cyrene,

**19** are useful in the extreme form of democracy. Fresh tribes and brotherhoods should be established; the private rites of families should be restricted and converted into public ones; in short, every contrivance should be adopted which will mingle the citizens with one another and get rid of old connexions.

**20** Again, the measures which are taken by tyrants appear all of them to be democratic; such, for instance, as the licence permitted to slaves (which may be to a certain extent advantageous) and also that of women and children, and the allowing everybody to live as he likes<sup>2</sup>. Such a government will have many supporters, for most persons would rather live in a disorderly than in a sober manner.

**5** The mere establishment of a democracy is not the only or principal business of the legislator, or of those who wish to create such a state, for any state, however badly constituted, may last one, two, or three days; a far greater difficulty is the **2** preservation of it. The legislator should therefore endeavour to have a firm foundation according to the principles already laid down concerning the preservation and destruction of states<sup>3</sup>; he should guard against the destructive elements, and should

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iii. 2. § 3; v. 3. § 5.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. v. 11. § 11.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. Bk. v.

make laws, whether written or unwritten, which will contain **VI. 5**  
all the preservatives of states. He must not think the truly 1320 a  
democratical or oligarchical measure to be that which will give  
the greatest amount of democracy or oligarchy, but that which  
will make them last longest<sup>1</sup>. The demagogues of our own 3  
day often get property confiscated<sup>2</sup> in the law-courts in order  
to please the people. But those who have the welfare of the  
state at heart should counteract them, and make a law that the  
property of the condemned which goes into the treasury should  
not be public but sacred. Thus offenders will be as much  
afraid, for they will be punished all the same, and the people,  
having nothing to gain, will not be so ready to condemn the  
accused. Care should also be taken that state trials are as 4  
few as possible, and heavy penalties should be inflicted on  
those who bring groundless accusations; for it is the practice  
to indict, not members of the popular party, but the notables,  
although the citizens ought to be all equally attached to the  
state, or at any rate should not regard their rulers as enemies.

Now, since in the last and worst form of democracy the 5  
citizens are very numerous, and can hardly be made to assemble  
unless they are paid, and to pay them when there are no  
revenues presses hardly upon the notables (for the money  
must be obtained by a property-tax and confiscations and cor-  
rupt practices of the courts, things which have before now  
overthrown many democracies); where, I say, there are no  
revenues, the government should hold few assemblies, and the  
law-courts should consist of many persons, but sit for a few  
days only. This system has two advantages: first, the rich 6  
do not fear the expense, even although they are unpaid them-  
selves when the poor are paid; and secondly, causes are better

<sup>1</sup> Cp. v. 11. §§ 2, 3.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. v. 5. § 5.

VI. 5 tried, for wealthy persons, although they do not like to be long absent from their own affairs, do not mind going for a few 7 days to the law-courts. Where there are revenues the demagogues should not be allowed after their manner to distribute the surplus; the poor are always receiving and always wanting more and more, for such help is like water poured into a leaky cask. Yet the true friend of the people should see that they be not too poor, for extreme poverty lowers the character of 8 the democracy; measures also should be taken which will give them lasting prosperity; and as this is equally the interest of all classes, the proceeds of the public revenues should be accumulated and distributed among them, if possible, in such quantities as may enable them to purchase a little farm, or, at any 1320 b rate, make a beginning in trade and husbandry. And if this 9 benevolence cannot be extended to all, money should be distributed in turn according to tribes or other divisions, and in the meantime the rich should pay the fee for the attendance of the poor at the necessary assemblies; and should in return be excused from useless public services. By administering the state in this spirit the Carthaginians retain the affections of the people; their policy is from time to time to send some of 10 them into their dependent towns, where they grow rich<sup>1</sup>. It is also worthy of a generous and sensible nobility to divide the poor amongst them, and give them the means of going to work. The example of the people of Tarentum is also well deserving of imitation, for, by sharing the use of their own property with 11 the poor, they gain their good will<sup>2</sup>. Moreover, they divide all their offices into two classes, one-half of them being elected by vote, the other by lot; the latter, that the people may participate in them, and the former, that the state may be better

<sup>1</sup> Cp. ii. 11. § 15.<sup>2</sup> Cp. ii. 5. § 8.

administered. A like result may be gained by dividing the VI. 5 same offices<sup>1</sup>, so as to have two classes of magistrates, one chosen by vote, the other by lot.

Enough has been said of the manner in which democracies 6 ought to be constituted.

From these considerations there will be no difficulty in seeing what should be the constitution of oligarchies. We must put together in our minds each form of oligarchy by reasoning from its opposite, calculating the structure of each in relation to that of the opposite democracy.

The first and best attempered of oligarchies is akin to a con- 2  
stitutional government. In this there ought to be two standards of qualification; the one high, the other low—the lower qualifying for the humbler yet indispensable offices and the higher for the superior ones. He who acquires the prescribed qualification should have the rights of citizenship. The nature of those admitted should be such as will make the entire 3 governing body stronger than those who are excluded, and the new citizen should be always taken out of the better class of the people. The principle, narrowed a little, gives another form of oligarchy; until at length we reach the most cliquish and tyrannical of them all, answering to the extreme democracy, which, being the worst, requires vigilance in proportion to its 4 badness. For as healthy bodies and ships well provided with sailors may undergo many mishaps and survive them, whereas sickly constitutions and rotten ill-manned ships are ruined by the very least mistake, so do the worst forms of government 1321 a require the greatest care. The populousness of democracies 5 generally preserves them (for number is to democracy in the place of justice based on proportion); whereas the preservation

<sup>1</sup> Reading τῆς αὐτῆς ἀρχῆς with Bekker's 2nd ed.



VI. 6 of an oligarchy clearly depends on an opposite principle, viz. good order.

7 As there are four chief divisions of the common people—husbandmen, mechanics, retail traders, labourers; so also there are four kinds of military forces—the cavalry, the heavy infantry, the light-armed troops, the navy<sup>1</sup>. When the country is adapted for cavalry, then a strong oligarchy is likely to be established. For the security of the inhabitants depends upon a force of this sort, and only rich men can afford to keep horses. The second form of oligarchy prevails when there are heavy infantry<sup>2</sup>; for this service is better suited to the rich  
 2 than to the poor. But the light-armed and the naval element are wholly democratic; and nowadays, when they are so numerous, if the two parties quarrel, the oligarchy are often worsted by them in the struggle. A remedy for this state of things may be found in the practice of generals who combine a proper contingent of light-armed troops with cavalry and  
 3 heavy-armed. And this is the way in which the poor get the better of the rich in civil contests; being lightly armed, they fight with advantage against cavalry and heavy infantry. An oligarchy which raises such a force out of the lower classes raises a power against itself. And therefore, since the ages of the citizens vary and some are older and some younger, the fathers should have their own sons, while they are still young, taught the agile movements of light-armed troops; and some, when they grow up, should be selected out of the youth, and  
 4 become light-armed warriors in reality. The oligarchy should also yield a share in the government to the people, either, as I said before, to those who have a property qualification<sup>3</sup>, or, as

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iv. 3. §§ 2, 3.

<sup>2</sup> Reading *δπλίτην* with Bekker's 1st ed.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. c. 6. § 2.

in the case of Thebes<sup>1</sup>, to those who have abstained for a **VI. 7**  
certain number of years from mean employments, or, as at  
Massalia, to men of merit who are selected for their worthi-  
ness, whether [previously] citizens or not. The magistracies 5  
of the highest rank, which ought to be in the hands of the  
governing body, should have expensive duties attached to them,  
and then the people will not desire them and will take no  
offence at the privileges of their rulers when they see that  
they pay a heavy fine for their dignity. It is fitting also that 6  
the magistrates on entering office should offer magnificent  
sacrifices or erect some public edifice, and then the people who  
participate in the entertainments, and like to see the city  
decorated with votive offerings and buildings, will not desire  
an alteration in the government, and the notables will have  
memorials of their munificence. This, however, is anything 7  
but the fashion of our modern oligarchs, who are as covetous  
of gain as they are of honour; oligarchies like theirs may be  
well described as petty democracies. Enough of the manner 1321 b  
in which democracies and oligarchies should be organized.

Next in order follows the right distribution of offices, their 8  
number, their nature, their duties, of which indeed we have  
already spoken<sup>2</sup>. No state can exist not having the necessary  
offices, and no state can be well administered not having the  
offices which tend to preserve harmony and good order. In 2  
small states, as we have already remarked<sup>3</sup>, there need not be  
many of them, but in larger there must be a larger number,  
and we should carefully consider which offices may properly  
be united and which separated.

First among necessary offices is that which has the care of 3

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iii. 5. § 7.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. iv. 15.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. iv. 15. §§ 5-7.

- VI. 8** the market ; a magistrate should be appointed to inspect contracts and to maintain order. For in every state there must inevitably be buyers and sellers who will supply one another's wants ; this is the readiest way to make a state self-sufficing and so fulfil the purpose for which men come together into one
- 4 state<sup>1</sup>. A second office of a similar kind undertakes the supervision and embellishment of public and private buildings, the maintaining and repairing of houses and roads, the prevention of disputes about boundaries and other concerns of a like nature.
- 5 This is commonly called the office of City-warden, and has various departments, which, in more populous towns, are shared among different persons, one, for example, taking charge of the
- 6 walls, another of the fountains, a third of harbours. There is another equally necessary office, and of a similar kind, having to do with the same matters without the walls and in the country :—the magistrates who hold this office are called Wardens of the country, or Inspectors of the woods. Besides these three there is a fourth office of receivers of taxes, who have under their charge the revenue which they distribute among the various departments ; these are called Receivers or
- 7 Treasurers. Another officer registers all private contracts, and decisions of the courts, all public indictments, and also all preliminary proceedings. This office again is sometimes subdivided, in which case one officer is appointed over all the rest. These officers are called Recorders or Sacred Recorders, Presidents, and the like.
- 8 Next to these comes an office of which the duties are the most necessary and also the most difficult, viz. that to which is committed the execution of punishments, or the exaction of

<sup>1</sup> Cp. i. 2. § 8 ; Nic. Eth. v. 6. § 4 ; Pl. Rep. ii. 369.

finer from those who are posted up according to the registers; **VI. 8**  
and also the custody of prisoners. The difficulty of this office <sup>1322 a</sup>  
arises out of the odium which is attached to it; no one will <sup>9</sup>  
undertake it unless great profits are to be made, and any one who  
does is loth to execute the law. Still the office is necessary;  
for judicial decisions are useless if they take no effect; and if  
society cannot exist without them, neither can it exist with-  
out the execution of them. It is an office which, being so <sup>10</sup>  
unpopular, should not be entrusted to one person, but divided  
among several taken from different courts. In like manner  
an effort should be made to distribute among different persons  
the writing up of those who are registered as public debtors.  
Some sentences should be executed by officers who have other  
functions; penalties for new offences should be exacted by new  
offices; and as regards those which are not new, when one  
court has given judgment, another should exact the penalty; for  
example, the wardens of the city should exact the fines imposed  
by the wardens of the agora, and others again should exact the  
fines imposed by them. For penalties are more likely to be <sup>11</sup>  
exactcd when less odium attaches to the exaction of them;  
but a double odium is incurred when the judges who have  
passed also execute the sentence, and if they are always the  
executioners, they will be the enemies of all.

In many places one magistracy has the custody of the  
prisoners, while another executes the sentence, as, for example,  
'the Eleven' at Athens. It is well to separate off the jailor- <sup>12</sup>  
ship, and try by some device to render the office less unpopular.  
For it is quite as necessary as that of the executioner; but  
good men do all they can to avoid it, and worthless persons  
cannot safely be trusted with it; for they themselves require a  
guard, and are not fit to guard others. There ought not there- <sup>13</sup>

VI. 8 fore to be a single or permanent officer set apart for this duty ; but it should be entrusted to the young, wherever they are organized into a band or guard, and different magistrates acting in turn should take charge of it.

These are the indispensable officers, and should be ranked first :—next in order follow others, equally necessary, but of  
 14 higher rank, and requiring great experience and fidelity. Such are the offices to which are committed the guard of the city, and other military functions. Not only in time of war but of peace their duty will be to defend the walls and gates, and to muster and marshal the citizens. In some states there are many such offices ; in others there are a few only, while small  
 15 states are content with one ; these officers are called generals  
 1322 b or commanders. Again, if a state has cavalry or light-armed troops or archers or a naval force, it will sometimes happen that each of these departments has separate officers, who are called admirals, or generals of cavalry or of infantry. And there are subordinate officers called naval and military captains, and captains of horse ; having others under them :—all these  
 16 are included in the department of war. Thus much of military command.

But since many, not to say all, of these offices handle the public money, there must of necessity be another office which examines and audits them, and has no other functions. Such officers are called by various names—Scrutineers, Auditors,  
 17 Accountants, Controllers. Besides all these offices there is another which is supreme over them, and to this, which in a democracy presides over the assembly, is often entrusted both the introduction and the ratification of measures. For that power which convenes the people must of necessity be the head of the state. In some places they are called ‘probuli,’

because they hold previous deliberations, but in a democracy **VI. 8** more commonly ‘councillors<sup>1</sup>.’ These are the chief political 18 offices.

Another set of officers is concerned with the maintenance of religion; priests and guardians see to the preservation and repair of the temples of the gods and to other matters of religion. One office of this sort may be enough in small places, but in 19 larger ones there are a great many besides the priesthood; for example, superintendents of sacrifices, guardians of shrines, treasurers of the sacred revenues. Nearly connected with these 20 there are also the officers appointed for the performance of the public sacrifices, except any which the law assigns to the priests; such officers derive their dignity from the public hearth of the city. They are sometimes called archons, sometimes kings<sup>2</sup>, and sometimes prytanes.

These, then, are the necessary offices, which may be summed 21 up as follows: offices concerned with matters of religion, with war, with the revenue and expenditure, with the market, with the city, with the harbours, with the country; also with the courts of law, with the records of contracts, with execution of sentences, with custody of prisoners, with audits and scrutinies and accounts of magistrates; lastly, there are those which pre- 22 side over the public deliberations of the state. There are like- wise magistracies characteristic of states which are peaceful and prosperous, and at the same time have a regard to good order: such as the offices of guardians of women, guardians of the laws, guardians of children, and directors of gymnastics; also superintendents of gymnastic and Dionysiac contests, and 1323 2 of other similar spectacles. Some of these are clearly not 23 democratic offices; for example, the guardianships of women

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iv. 15. § 11.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. iii. 14. § 14.

**VI. 8** and children<sup>1</sup>—the poor, not having any slaves, must employ both their women and children as servants.

**24** Once more: there are three forms of the highest elective offices in states—guardians of the law, probuli, councillors,—of these, the guardians of the law are an aristocratical, the probuli an oligarchical, the council a democratical institution. Enough of the different kinds of offices.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iv. 15. § 13.



## BOOK VII

HE who would duly enquire about the best form of a state **VII. 1** ought first to determine which is the most eligible life ; while this remains uncertain the best form of the state must also be uncertain ; for, in the natural order of things, those may be expected to lead the best life who are governed in the best manner of which their circumstances admit. We ought there-<sup>2</sup> fore to ascertain, first of all, which is the most generally eligible life, and then whether the same life is or is not best for the state and for individuals.

Assuming that enough has been already said in exoteric discourses concerning the best life, we will now only repeat the statements contained in them. Certainly no one will dispute<sup>3</sup> the propriety of that partition of goods which separates them into three classes<sup>1</sup>, viz. external goods, goods of the body, and goods of the soul, or deny that the happy man must have all three. For no one would maintain that he is happy who<sup>4</sup> has not in him a particle of courage or temperance or justice or prudence, who is afraid of every insect which flutters past him, and will commit any crime, however great, in order to gratify his lust of meat or drink, who will sacrifice his dearest friend for the sake of half a farthing, and is as feeble and false in mind as a child or a madman. These propositions are<sup>5</sup> universally acknowledged as soon as they are uttered<sup>2</sup>, but men

<sup>1</sup> Cp. N. Eth. i. 8. § 2.

<sup>2</sup> Omitting ὥσπερ, which is bracketed by Bekker in his second edition.

VII. 1 differ about the quantity which is desirable or the relative superiority of this or that good. Some think that a very moderate amount of virtue is enough, but set no limit to their desires of wealth, property, power, reputation, and the like.

6 To whom we reply by an appeal to facts, which easily prove that mankind do not acquire or preserve virtue by the help of

1323 b external goods, but external goods by the help of virtue, and that happiness, whether consisting in pleasure or virtue, or both, is more often found with those who are most highly cultivated in their mind and in their character, and have only a moderate share of external goods, than among those who possess external goods to a useless extent but are deficient in higher qualities; and this is not only matter of experience, but, if reflected upon, will easily appear to be in accordance with

7 reason. For, whereas external goods have a limit, like any other instrument<sup>1</sup>, and all things useful are of such a nature that where there is too much of them they must either do harm, or at any rate be of no use, to their possessors, every good of the soul, the greater it is, is also of greater use, if the epithet

8 'useful' as well as 'noble' is appropriate to such subjects. No proof is required to show that the best state of one thing in relation to another is proportioned to the degree of excellence by which the natures corresponding to those states are separated from each other: so that, if the soul is more noble than our possessions or our bodies, both absolutely and in relation to us, it must be admitted that the best state of either

9 has a similar ratio to the other. Again, it is for the sake of the soul that goods external and goods of the body are eligible at all, and all wise men ought to choose them for the sake of the soul, and not the soul for the sake of them.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. i. 8. § 15.

Let us acknowledge then that each one has just so much of **VII. 1** happiness as he has of virtue and wisdom, and of virtuous and <sup>10</sup> wise action. God is a witness to us of this truth <sup>1</sup>; for he is happy and blessed, not by reason of any external good, but in himself and by reason of his own nature. And herein of necessity lies the difference between good fortune and happiness; for external goods come of themselves, and chance is the author of them, but no one is just or temperate by or through chance <sup>2</sup>. In like manner, and by a similar train of argument, the happy <sup>11</sup> state may be shown to be that which is [morally] best and which acts rightly; and rightly it cannot act without doing right actions, and neither individual nor state can do right actions without virtue and wisdom. Thus the courage, justice, and <sup>12</sup> wisdom of a state have the same form and nature as the qualities which give the individual who possesses them the name of just, wise, or temperate.

Thus much may suffice by way of preface: for I could not <sup>13</sup> avoid touching upon these questions, neither could I go through all the arguments affecting them; these must be reserved for another discussion.

Let us assume then that the best life, both for individuals and states, is the life of virtue, having external goods enough for the performance of good actions. If there are any who con- <sup>1324 a</sup> trovert our assertion, we will in this treatise pass them over, <sup>14</sup> and consider their objections hereafter.

There remains to be discussed the question, Whether the <sup>2</sup> happiness of the individual is the same as that of the state, or different? Here again there can be no doubt—no one denies that they are the same. For those who hold that the well-being <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 3. § 10; N. Eth. x. 8. § 7; Met. xii. 7.

<sup>2</sup> Ethics i. 9. § 6.

**VII.** 2 of the individual consists in his wealth, also think that riches make the happiness of the whole state, and those who value most highly the life of a tyrant deem that city the happiest which rules over the greatest number; while they who approve an individual for his virtue say that the more virtuous a city  
 3 is, the happier it is. Two points here present themselves for consideration: first (1), which is the more eligible life, that of a citizen who is a member of a state, or that of an alien who has no political ties; and again (2), which is the best form of constitution or the best condition of a state, either  
 4 that they are given to a majority only? Since the good of the state and not of the individual is the proper subject of political thought and speculation, and we are engaged in a political discussion, while the first of these two points has a secondary interest for us, the latter will be the main subject of our enquiry.

5 Now it is evident that the form of government is best in which every man, whoever he is, can act for the best and live happily. But even those who agree in thinking that the life of virtue is the most eligible raise a question, whether the life of business and politics is or is not more eligible than one which is wholly independent of external goods, I mean than  
 6 a contemplative life, which by some is maintained to be the only one worthy of a philosopher. For these two lives—the life of the philosopher and the life of the statesman—appear to have been preferred by those who have been most keen in the pursuit of virtue, both in our own and in other ages. Which is the better is a question of no small moment; for the wise man, like the wise state, will necessarily regulate his  
 7 life according to the best end. There are some who think

that while a despotic rule over others is the greatest injustice, **VII. 2**  
to exercise a constitutional rule over them, even though not  
unjust, is a great impediment to a man's individual well-being.  
Others take an opposite view ; they maintain that the true life  
of man is the practical and political, and that every virtue admits  
of being practised, quite as much by statesmen and rulers as  
by private individuals. Others, again, are of opinion that <sup>1324 b</sup>  
arbitrary and tyrannical rule alone consists with happiness ;  
indeed, <sup>1</sup> in some states the entire aim of the laws <sup>1</sup> is to give  
men despotic power over their neighbours. And, therefore, <sup>9</sup>  
although in most cities the laws may be said generally to be in  
a chaotic state, still, if they aim at anything, they aim at the  
maintenance of power : thus in Lacedaemon and Crete the  
system of education and the greater part of the laws are framed  
with a view to war <sup>2</sup>. And in all nations which are able to <sup>10</sup>  
gratify their ambition military power is held in esteem, for ex-  
ample among the Scythians and Persians and Thracians and  
Celts. In some nations there are even laws tending to stimulate  
the warlike virtues, as at Carthage, where we are told that men  
obtain the honour of wearing as many armlets as they have served  
campaigns. There was once a law in Macedonia that he who <sup>11</sup>  
had not killed an enemy should wear a halter, and among the  
Scythians no one who had not slain his man was allowed to  
drink out of the cup which was handed round at a certain feast.  
Among the Iberians, a warlike nation, the number of enemies  
whom a man has slain is indicated by the number of spits which  
are fixed in the earth round his tomb ; and there are numerous <sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Or, inserting *καί* before *νόμων* (apparently the reading of the old translator), 'in some cases the entire aim both of the constitution and the laws.'

<sup>2</sup> Cp. Plato, *Laws*, i. 633 ff

VII. 2 practices among other nations of a like kind, some of them established by law and others by custom. Yet to a reflecting mind it must appear very strange that the statesman should be always considering how he can dominate and tyrannize over  
13 others, whether they will or not. How can that which is not even lawful be the business of the statesman or the legislator? Unlawful it certainly is to rule without regard to justice, for there may be might where there is no right. The other arts and sciences offer no parallel; a physician is not expected to persuade or coerce his patients, nor a pilot  
14 the passengers in his ship. Yet many appear to think that a despotic government is a true political form, and what men affirm to be unjust and inexpedient in their own case they are not ashamed of practising towards others; they demand justice for themselves, but where other men are concerned  
15 they care nothing about it. Such behaviour is irrational; unless the one party is born to command, and the other born to serve, in which case men have a right to command, not indeed all their fellows, but only those who are intended to be subjects; just as we ought not to hunt mankind, whether for food or sacrifice, but only the animals which are intended for food or sacrifice, that is to say, such wild  
16 animals as are eatable. And surely there may be a city  
1325 a happy in isolation, which we will assume to be well-governed (for it is quite possible that a city thus isolated might be well-administered and have good laws); but such a city would not be constituted with any view to war or the conquest of  
17 enemies—all that sort of thing must be excluded. Hence we see very plainly that warlike pursuits, although generally to be deemed honourable, are not the supreme end of all things, but only means. And the good lawgiver should

enquire how states and races of men and communities **VII. 2** may participate in a good life, and in the happiness which is attainable by them. His enactments will not be always the 18 same; and where there are neighbours<sup>1</sup> he will have to deal with them according to their characters, and to see what duties are to be performed towards each. The end at which the best form of government should aim may be properly made a matter of future consideration<sup>2</sup>.

Let us now address those who, while they agree that the **3** life of virtue is the most eligible, differ about the manner of practising it. For some renounce political power, and think that the life of the freeman is different from the life of the statesman and the best of all; but others think the life of the statesman best. The argument of the latter is that he who does nothing cannot do well, and that virtuous activity is identical with happiness. To both we say: 'you are partly right and partly wrong.' The first class are right in affirming that the life of the freeman is better than the life of the despot; for there is nothing grand or noble **2** in having the use of a slave, in so far as he is a slave; or in issuing commands about necessary things. But it is an error to suppose that every sort of rule is despotic like that of a master over slaves, for there is as great a difference between the rule over freemen and the rule over slaves as there is between slavery by nature and freedom by nature, about which I have said enough at the commencement of this treatise<sup>3</sup>. And it is equally a mistake to place inac- **3** tivity above action, for happiness is activity, and the actions of the just and wise are the realization of much that is noble.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. ii. 6. § 7; 7. § 14.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 14.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. i. c. 5, 6, 7.



**VII. 3** But perhaps some one, accepting these premisses, may still maintain that supreme power is the best of all things, because the possessors of it are able to perform the greatest number  
 4 of noble actions. If so, the man who is able to rule, instead of giving up anything to his neighbour, ought rather to take away his power; and the father should make no account of his son, nor the son of his father, nor friend of friend; they should not bestow a thought on one another in comparison with this higher object, for the best is the most eligible and 'doing well' is the best. There might be some  
 1325 b truth in such a view if we assume that robbers and plunderers  
 5 attain the chief good. But this can never be; and hence we infer the view to be false. For the actions of a ruler cannot really be honourable, unless he is as much superior to other men as a husband is to a wife, or a father to his children, or a master to his slaves. And therefore he who violates the law can never recover by any success, however great, what he has already lost in departing from virtue. For equals share alike in the honourable and the just, as is just  
 6 and equal. But that the unequal should be given to equals, and the unlike to those who are like, is contrary to nature, and nothing which is contrary to nature is good. If, therefore, there is any one<sup>1</sup> superior in virtue and in the power of performing the best actions, him we ought to follow and  
 7 obey, but he must have the capacity for action as well as virtue.

If we are right in our view, and happiness is assumed to be virtuous activity, the active life will be the best, both for  
 8 the city collectively, and for individuals. Not that a life of action must necessarily have relations to others, as some

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iii. 13. § 25, and 17. § 7.

persons think, nor are those ideas only to be regarded **VII. 3** as practical which are pursued for the sake of practical results, but much more the thoughts and contemplations which are independent and complete in themselves; since virtuous activity, and therefore action, is an end, and even in the case of external actions the directing mind is most truly said to act. Neither, again, is it necessary that states which are 9 cut off from others and choose to live alone should be inactive; for there may be activity also in the parts; there are many ways in which the members of a state act upon one another. The same thing is equally true of every individual. If this 10 were otherwise, God and the universe, who have no external actions over and above their own energies<sup>1</sup>, would be far enough from perfection. Hence it is evident that the same life is best for each individual, and for states, and for mankind collectively.

Thus far by way of introduction. In what has preceded **4** I have discussed other forms of government; in what remains, the first point to be considered is what should be the conditions of the ideal or perfect state; for the perfect state 2 cannot exist without a due supply of the means of life. And therefore we must presuppose many purely imaginary conditions<sup>2</sup>, but nothing impossible. There will be a certain number of citizens, a country in which to place them, and the like. As the weaver or shipbuilder or any other artisan 3 must have the material proper for his work (and in proportion 1326 a as this is better prepared, so will the result of his art be nobler), so the statesman or legislator must also have the materials suited to him.

First among the materials required by the statesman is **4**

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. i. § 10.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. ii. 6. § 7.

VII. 4 population : he will consider what should be the number and character of the citizens, and then what should be the size and character of the country. Most persons think that a state in order to be happy ought to be large ; but even if they are right, they have no idea what is a large and what a small  
 5 state. For they judge of the size of the city by the number of the inhabitants ; whereas they ought to regard, not their number, but their power. A city too, like an individual, has a work to do ; and that city which is best adapted to the fulfilment of its work is to be deemed greatest, in the same sense of the word great in which Hippocrates might be called greater, not as a man, but as a physician, than some one  
 6 else who was taller. And even if we reckon greatness by numbers, we ought not to include everybody, for there must always be in cities a multitude of slaves and sojourners and foreigners ; but we should include those only who are members of the state, and who form an essential part of it. The number of the latter is a proof of the greatness of a city ; but a city which produces numerous artisans and comparatively few soldiers cannot be great, for a great city is not to be confounded  
 7 with a populous one. Moreover, experience shows that a very populous city can rarely, if ever, be well governed ; since all cities which have a reputation for good government have a limit of population. We may argue on grounds of reason, and  
 8 the same result will follow. For law is order, and good law is good order ; but a very great multitude cannot be orderly : to introduce order into the unlimited is the work of a divine power—of such a power as holds together the universe. Beauty  
 9 is realized in number and magnitude<sup>1</sup>, and the state which combines magnitude with good order must necessarily be the most

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Poet. 7. § 4.

beautiful. To the size of states there is a limit, as there is to **VII. 4**  
other things, plants, animals, implements; for none of these <sup>10</sup>  
retain their natural power when they are too large or too small,  
but they either wholly lose their nature, or are spoiled. For  
example<sup>1</sup>, a ship which is only a span long will not be a ship  
at all, nor a ship a quarter of a mile long; yet there may be  
a ship of a certain size, either too large or too small, which  
will still be a ship, but bad for sailing. In like manner a state <sup>1326 b</sup>  
when composed of too few is not as a state ought to be, self-<sup>11</sup>  
sufficing; when of too many, though self-sufficing in all mere  
necessaries, it is a nation and not a state, being almost incap-  
able of constitutional government. For who can be the general  
of such a vast multitude, or who the herald, unless he have the  
voice of a Stentor?

A state then only begins to exist when it has attained  
a population sufficient for a good life in the political com-  
munity: it may indeed somewhat exceed this number. But, <sup>12</sup>  
as I was saying, there must be a limit. What should be  
the limit will be easily ascertained by experience. For both  
governors and governed have duties to perform; the special  
functions of a governor are to command and to judge. But <sup>13</sup>  
if the citizens of a state are to judge and to distribute offices  
according to merit, then they must know each other's  
characters; where they do not possess this knowledge,  
both the election to offices and the decision of lawsuits  
will go wrong. When the population is very large they  
are manifestly settled at haphazard, which clearly ought  
not to be. Besides, in an overpopulous state foreigners and <sup>14</sup>  
metics will readily acquire the rights of citizens, for who will  
find them out? Clearly, then, the best limit of the population

<sup>1</sup> Cp. v. 9. § 7.

VII. 4 of a state is the largest number which suffices for the purposes of life, and can be taken in at a single view. Enough concerning the size of a city.

5 Much the same principle will apply to the territory of the state: every one would agree in praising the state which is most entirely self-sufficing; and that must be the state which is all-producing, for to have all things and to want nothing is sufficiency. In size and extent it should be such as may enable the inhabitants to live temperately and liberally  
2 in the enjoyment of leisure<sup>1</sup>. Whether we are right or wrong in laying down this limit we will enquire more precisely hereafter<sup>2</sup>, when we have occasion to consider what is the right use of property and wealth: a matter which is much disputed, because men are inclined to rush into one of two extremes, some into meanness, others into luxury.

3 It is not difficult to determine the general character of the territory which is required; there are, however, some points on which military authorities should be heard; they tell us that it should be difficult of access to the enemy, and  
1327 a easy of egress to the inhabitants. Further, we require that the land as well as the inhabitants of whom we were just now speaking should be taken in at a single view, for a country which is easily seen can be easily protected. As to the position of the city, if we could have what we wish, it should  
4 be well situated in regard both to sea or land. This then is one principle, that it should be a convenient centre for the protection of the whole country: the other is, that it should be suitable for receiving the fruits of the soil, and also for the bringing in of timber and any other products.

6 Whether a communication with the sea is beneficial to

<sup>1</sup> Cp. ii. 6. § 9.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 8-10 *infra* (?).

a well-ordered state or not is a question which has often been VII. 6 asked. It is argued that the introduction of strangers brought up under other laws, and the increase of population, will be adverse to good order (for a maritime people will always have a crowd of merchants coming and going), and that intercourse by sea is inimical to good government<sup>1</sup>. Apart from these 2 considerations, it would be undoubtedly better, both with a view to safety and to the provision of necessities, that the city and territory should be connected with the sea; the 3 defenders of a country, if they are to maintain themselves against an enemy, should be easily relieved both by land and by sea; and even if they are not able to attack by sea and land at once, they will have less difficulty in doing mischief to their assailants on one element, if they themselves can use both. Moreover, it is necessary that they should import from 4 abroad what is not found in their own country, and that they should export what they have in excess; for a city ought to be a market, not indeed for others, but for herself.

Those who make themselves a market for the world only do so for the sake of revenue, and if a state ought not to desire profit of this kind it ought not to have such an emporium. Nowadays we often see in countries and cities 5 dockyards and harbours very conveniently placed outside the city, but not too far off; and they are kept in dependence by walls and similar fortifications. Cities thus situated manifestly reap the benefit of intercourse with their ports; and any harm which is likely to accrue may be easily guarded against by the laws, which will pronounce and determine who may hold communication with one another, and who may not.

There can be no doubt that the possession of a moderate 6

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Plato, *Laws*, iv. 704 ff.

- VII. 6 naval force is advantageous to a city; the citizens require  
 1327 b such a force for their own needs, and they should also  
 be formidable to their neighbours in certain cases<sup>1</sup>, or,  
 if necessary, able to assist them by sea as well as by land.
- 7 The proper number or magnitude of this naval force is  
 relative to the character of the state; for if her function  
 is to take a leading part in politics<sup>2</sup>, her naval power should  
 be commensurate with the scale of her enterprises. The  
 population of the state need not be much increased, since
- 8 there is no necessity that the sailors should be citizens: the  
 marines who have the control and command will be freemen,  
 and belong also to the infantry; and wherever there is  
 a dense population of Perioeci and husbandmen, there will  
 always be sailors more than enough. Of this we see  
 instances at the present day. The city of Heraclea, for  
 example, although small in comparison with many others, can
- 9 man a considerable fleet. Such are our conclusions respect-  
 ing the territory of the state, its harbour, its towns, its  
 relations to the sea, and its maritime power.
- 7 Having spoken of the number of the citizens, we will  
 proceed to speak of what should be their character. This is  
 a subject which can be easily understood by any one who  
 casts his eye on the more celebrated states of Hellas,  
 and generally on the distribution of races in the habitable
- 2 world. Those who live in a cold climate and in [northern]  
 Europe are full of spirit, but wanting in intelligence and  
 skill; and therefore they keep their freedom, but have  
 no political organization, and are incapable of ruling over  
 others. Whereas the natives of Asia are intelligent and

<sup>1</sup> Cp. ii. 6. § 7.

<sup>2</sup> Reading πολιτικόν with the MSS. and Bekker's first edition.



inventive, but they are wanting in spirit, and therefore they are **VII. 7**  
 always in a state of subjection and slavery. But the Hellenic 3  
 race, which is situated between them, is likewise intermediate  
 in character, being high-spirited and also intelligent<sup>1</sup>. Hence  
 it continues free, and is the best governed of any nation, and,  
 if it could be formed into one state, would be able to rule the  
 world. There are also similar differences in the different tribes 4  
 of Hellas; for some of them are of a one-sided nature, and  
 are intelligent or courageous only, while in others there is a  
 happy combination of both qualities. And clearly those whom  
 the legislator will most easily lead to virtue may be expected  
 to be both intelligent and courageous. Some [like Plato<sup>2</sup>] 5  
 say that the guardians should be friendly towards those  
 whom they know, fierce towards those whom they do not  
 know. Now, passion is the quality of the soul which begets 1828 a  
 friendship and inspires affection; notably the spirit within us  
 is more stirred against our friends and acquaintances than  
 against those who are unknown to us, when we think that we  
 are despised by them; for which reason Archilochus, com- 6  
 plaining of his friends, very naturally addresses his soul in these  
 words,

‘For wert thou not plagued on account of friends?’

The power of command and the love of freedom are in all  
 men based upon this quality, for passion is commanding and  
 invincible. Nor is it right to say that the guardians should be 7  
 fierce towards those whom they do not know, for we ought  
 not to be out of temper with any one; and a lofty spirit is not

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Plato, Rep. iv. 435 E, 436 A.

<sup>2</sup> Rep. ii. 375.

<sup>3</sup> Or: ‘For surely thou art not plagued on account of thy friends?’  
 The line is probably corrupt. Better to read with Bergk, σὺ γὰρ δὴ παρὰ  
 φίλων ἀπάγχει, ‘for thou indeed wert plagued by friends.’

VII. 7 fierce by nature, but only when excited against evil-doers. And this, as I was saying before, is a feeling which men show most strongly towards their friends if they think they  
8 have received a wrong at their hands: as indeed is reasonable; for, besides the actual injury, they seem to be deprived of a benefit by those who owe them one. Hence the saying,

‘Cruel is the strife of brethren<sup>1</sup>;’

and again,

‘They who love in excess also hate in excess<sup>1</sup>.’

9 Thus we have nearly determined the number and character of the citizens of our state, and also the size and nature of their territory. I say ‘nearly,’ for we ought not to require the same minuteness in theory as in fact<sup>2</sup>.

8 As in other natural compounds the conditions of a composite whole are not necessarily organic parts of it, so in a state or in any other combination forming a unity not everything  
2 is a part, which is a necessary condition<sup>3</sup>. The members of an association have necessarily some one thing the same and common to all, in which they share equally or unequally;  
3 for example, food or land or any other thing. But where there are two things of which one is a means and the other an end, they have nothing in common except that the one receives what the other produces. Such, for example, is the relation in which workmen and tools stand to their work; the house and the builder have nothing in common, but  
4 the art of the builder is for the sake of the house. And so states require property, but property, even though living beings are included in it<sup>4</sup>, is no part of a state; for a state is

<sup>1</sup> Eurip. Frag. 51 Dindorf.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. 12. § 9, *infra*.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. iii. 5. § 2.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. i. 4. § 2.

not a community of living beings only, but a community **VII. 8** of equals, aiming at the best life possible. Now, whereas 5 happiness is the highest good, being a realization and perfect practice of virtue, which some attain, while others have little or none of it, the various qualities of men are clearly the reason why there are various kinds of states and many forms of government; for different men seek after happiness in different ways and by different means, and so make for 1328 b themselves different modes of life and forms of government. We must see also how many things are indispensable to 6 the existence of a state, for what we call the parts of a state will be found among them. Let us then enumerate the functions of a state, and we shall easily elicit what we want :

First, there must be food ; secondly, arts, for life requires 7 many instruments ; thirdly, there must be arms, for the members of a community have need of them in order to maintain authority both against disobedient subjects and against external assailants ; fourthly, there must be a certain amount of revenue, both for internal needs and for the purposes of war ; fifthly, or rather first, there must be a care of religion, which is commonly called worship ; sixthly, and most necessary of all, there must be a power of deciding what is for the public interest, and what is just in men's dealings with one another.

These are the things which every state may be said to 8 need. For a state is not a mere aggregate of persons, but a union of them sufficing for the purposes of life<sup>1</sup>; and if any of these things be wanting, it is simply impossible that the community can be self-sufficing. A state then 9

<sup>1</sup> Cp. *supra*, c. 5. § 1.

VII. 8 should be framed with a view to the fulfilment of these functions. There must be husbandmen to procure food, and artisans, and a warlike and a wealthy class, and priests, and judges to decide what is just<sup>1</sup> and expedient.

- 9 Having determined these points, we have in the next place to consider whether all ought to share in every sort of occupation. Shall every man be at once husbandman, artisan, councillor, judge, or shall we suppose the several occupations just mentioned assigned to different persons? or, thirdly, shall some employments be assigned to individuals and others common to all? The question, however, does not occur in every state;  
 2 as we were saying, all may be shared by all, or not all by all, but only some by some<sup>2</sup>; and hence arise the differences of states, for in democracies all share in all, in oligarchies the  
 3 opposite practice prevails. Now, since we are here speaking of the best form of government, and that under which the state will be most happy (and happiness, as has been already said, cannot exist without virtue<sup>3</sup>), it clearly follows that in the state which is best governed the citizens who are absolutely and not merely relatively just men must not lead the life of mechanics or tradesmen, for such a life is ignoble and inimical  
 4 to virtue<sup>4</sup>. Neither must they be husbandmen, since leisure is  
 1829 a necessary both for the development of virtue and the performance of political duties.

Again, there is in a state a class of warriors, and another of councillors, who advise about the expedient and determine matters of law, and these seem in an especial manner parts of a state. Now, should these two classes be distinguished, or  
 5 are both functions to be assigned to the same persons? Here

<sup>1</sup> Reading *δικαίων* with Bekker in his second edition.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. iv. 4 and 14.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. c. 8. § 5.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. Plato, *Laws*, xi. 919.

again there is no difficulty in seeing that both functions will in **VII. 9** one way belong to the same, in another, to different persons. To different persons in so far as their employments are suited to different ages of life, for the one requires wisdom, and the other strength. But on the other hand, since it is an impossible thing that those who are able to use or to resist force should be willing to remain always in subjection, from this point of view the persons are the same; for those who carry arms can always determine the fate of the constitution. It **6** remains therefore that both functions of government should be entrusted to the same persons, not, however, at the same time, but in the order prescribed by nature, who has given to young men strength and to older men wisdom. Such a distribution of duties will be expedient and also just, for it is in accordance with desert. Besides, the ruling class should be the owners of **7** property, for they are citizens, and the citizens of a state should be in good circumstances; whereas mechanics or any other class whose art excludes the art of virtue have no share in the state. This follows from our first principle, for happiness cannot exist without virtue, and a city is not to be termed happy in regard to a portion of the citizens, but in regard to them all <sup>1</sup>. And clearly property should be in their hands, since the hus- **8** bandmen will of necessity be slaves or barbarians or Perioeci <sup>2</sup>.

Of the classes enumerated there remain only the priests, and the manner in which their office is to be regulated is obvious. No husbandman or mechanic should be appointed to it; for **9** the Gods should receive honour from the citizens only. Now since the body of the citizens is divided into two classes, the warriors and the councillors; and it is beseeing that the worship of the Gods should be duly performed, and also a

<sup>1</sup> Cp. ii. 5. §§ 27, 28

<sup>2</sup> Cp. *infra*, c. 10. §§ 13, 14.

**VII. 9** rest provided in their service for those who from age have given up active life—to the old men of these two classes should be assigned the duties of the priesthood.

**10** We have shown what are the necessary conditions, and what the parts of a state : husbandmen, craftsmen, and labourers of all kinds are necessary to the existence of states, but the parts of the state are the warriors and councillors. And these are distinguished severally from one another, the distinction being in some cases permanent, in others not.

**10** It is no new or recent discovery of political philosophers  
 1329 b that the state ought to be divided into classes, and that the warriors should be separated from the husbandmen. The system has continued in Egypt and in Crete to this day, and was established, as tradition says, by a law of Sesostris in  
 2 Egypt and of Minos in Crete. The institution of common tables also appears to be of ancient date, being in Crete as  
 3 old as the reign of Minos, and in Italy far older. The Italian historians say that there was a certain Italus king of Oenotria, from whom the Oenotrians were called Italians, and who gave the name of Italy to the promontory of Europe lying between the Scylletic and Lametic Gulfs, which are distant from one  
 4 another only half a day's journey. They say that this Italus converted the Oenotrians from shepherds into husbandmen, and besides other laws which he gave them, was the founder of their common meals ; even in our day some who are derived from him retain this institution and certain other laws of his.  
 5 On the side of Italy towards Tyrrhenia dwelt the Opici, who are now, as of old, called Ausones ; and on the side towards Iapygia and the Ionian Gulf, in the district called Syrtis<sup>1</sup>, the

<sup>1</sup> Retaining the reading of the MSS., which Bekker in his second edition has altered into *Σιπίτις*, a conjecture of Goettling's.

Chones, who are likewise of Oenotrian race. From this part **VII. 10** of the world originally came the institution of common tables; <sup>6</sup> the separation into castes [which was much older] from Egypt, for the reign of Sesostris is of far greater antiquity than that of Minos. It is true indeed that these and many other things <sup>7</sup> have been invented several times over<sup>1</sup> in the course of ages, or rather times without number; for necessity may be supposed to have taught men the inventions which were absolutely required, and when these were provided, it was natural that other things which would adorn and enrich life should grow up by degrees. And we may infer that in political institutions the same rule holds. Egypt<sup>2</sup> witnesses to the antiquity of all <sup>8</sup> things, for the Egyptians appear to be of all people the most ancient; and they have laws and a regular constitution [existing from time immemorial]. We should therefore make the best use of what has been already discovered<sup>3</sup>, and try to supply defects.

I have already remarked that the land ought to belong to <sup>9</sup> those who possess arms and have a share in the government<sup>4</sup>, and that the husbandmen ought to be a class distinct from them; and I have determined what should be the extent and nature of the territory. Let me proceed to discuss the distribution of the land, and the character of the agricultural class; for I do not think that property ought to be common, as some

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Plato, *Laws*, iii. 676; Aristotle, *Metaph.* xi. 8. 1074 b. 10; and *Pol.* ii. 5. § 16 (note).

<sup>2</sup> Cp. *Metaph.* i. 1. § 16; *Meteor.* i. 14. 352 b. 19; Plato, *Timaeus*, 22 B; *Laws*, ii. 656, 657.

<sup>3</sup> Reading, with Bekker in his second edition, *εὐρημένους*: which may have been altered into *εἰρημένους* from a confusion of *εἴρηται πρότερον* in § 9 *infra*.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. *supra*, c. 9. §§ 5-7.



VII. 10 maintain<sup>1</sup>, but only that by friendly consent there should be  
 1830 a a common use of it; and that no citizen should be in want of  
 subsistence.

As to common meals, there is a general agreement that a well-  
 10 ordered city should have them; and we will hereafter explain  
 what are our own reasons for taking this view. They ought,  
 however, to be open to all the citizens<sup>2</sup>. And yet it is not  
 easy for the poor to contribute the requisite sum out of their  
 private means, and to provide also for their household. The  
 expense of religious worship should likewise be a public charge.  
 11 The land must therefore be divided into two parts, one public  
 and the other private, and each part should be subdivided,  
 half of the public land being appropriated to the service of  
 the Gods, and the other half used to defray the cost of the  
 common meals; while of the private land, half should be  
 near the border, and the other near the city, so that each  
 citizen having two lots they may all of them have land in both  
 places; there is justice and fairness in such a division<sup>3</sup>, and it  
 tends to inspire unanimity among the people in their border  
 12 wars. Where there is not this arrangement, some of them are  
 too ready to come to blows with their neighbours, while others  
 are so cautious that they quite lose the sense of honour.  
 Wherefore there is a law in some places which forbids those  
 who dwell near the border to take part in public deliberations  
 about wars with neighbours, on the ground that their interests  
 13 will pervert their judgment. For the reasons already mentioned,  
 then, the land should be divided in the manner described.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. ii. 5.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. ii. 9. § 31.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. Plato, *Laws*, v. 745, where the same proposal is found. Aristotle, in Book ii. 6. § 15, condemns the division of lots which he here adopts.

The very best thing of all would be that the husbandmen should **VII. 10** be slaves, not all of the same race<sup>1</sup> and not spirited, for if they have no spirit they will be better suited for their work, and there will be no danger of their making a revolution. The next best thing would be that they should be Perioeci of foreign race<sup>2</sup>, and of a like inferior nature; some of them should be <sup>14</sup> the slaves of individuals, and employed on the private estates of men of property, the remainder should be the property of the state and employed on the common land<sup>3</sup>. I will hereafter explain what is the proper treatment of slaves, and why it is expedient that liberty should be always held out to them as the reward of their services.

We have already said that the city should be open to the **11** land and to the sea<sup>4</sup>, and to the whole country as far as possible. In respect of the place itself our wish would be to find a situation for it, fortunate in four things. The first, health—this is a necessity: cities which lie towards the <sup>2</sup> east, and are blown upon by winds coming from the east, are the healthiest; next in healthfulness are those which are sheltered from the north wind, for they have a milder winter. The site of the city should likewise be convenient both <sup>1330 b</sup> for political administration and for war. With a view to the <sup>3</sup> latter it should afford easy egress to the citizens, and at the same time be inaccessible and difficult of capture to enemies<sup>5</sup>. There should be a natural abundance of springs and fountains in the town or, if there is a deficiency of them, great reservoirs may be established for the collection of rain-water, such as will not fail when the inhabitants are cut

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Plato, *Laws*, vi. 777.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. c. 9. § 8.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. ii. 7. § 23.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. c. 5. § 3.

<sup>5</sup> Repetition of c. 5. § 3.

VII. 11 off from the country by war. Special care should be taken  
 4 of the health of the inhabitants, which will depend chiefly on  
 the healthiness of the locality and of the quarter to which they  
 are exposed, and secondly, on the use of pure water; this  
 latter point is by no means a secondary consideration. For  
 the elements which we use most and oftenest for the support  
 of the body contribute most to health, and among these  
 5 are water and air. Wherefore, in all wise states, if there is  
 a want of pure water, and the supply is not all equally good,  
 the drinking water ought to be separated from that which is  
 used for other purposes.

As to strongholds, what is suitable to different forms of  
 government varies: thus an acropolis is suited to an oligarchy  
 or a monarchy, but a plain to a democracy; neither to an  
 6 aristocracy, but rather a number of strong places. The  
 arrangement of private houses is considered to be more  
 agreeable and generally more convenient if the streets are  
 regularly laid out after the modern fashion which Hippo-  
 damus<sup>1</sup> introduced; but for security in war the antiquated  
 mode of building, which made it difficult for strangers to get  
 out of a town and for assailants to find their way in, is  
 7 preferable. A city should therefore adopt both plans of  
 building: it is possible to arrange the houses irregularly,  
 as husbandmen plant their vines in what are called 'clumps.'  
 The whole town should not be laid out in straight lines, but  
 only certain quarters and regions; thus security and beauty  
 will be combined.

8 As to walls, those who say<sup>2</sup> that cities making any  
 pretension to military virtue should not have them, are quite  
 out of date in their notions; and they may see the cities

<sup>1</sup> Cp. ii. 8. § 1.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. Plato, *Laws*, vi. 778, 779.

which prided themselves on this fancy confuted by facts. **VII. 11**  
True, there is little courage shown in seeking for safety 9  
behind a rampart when an enemy is similar in character  
and not much superior in number; but the superiority of the  
besiegers may be and often is beyond the power of men to  
resist, and too much for the valour of a few; and if they  
are to be saved and to escape defeat and outrage, the strongest 1381 a  
wall will be the best defence of the warrior, more especially  
now that catapults and siege engines have been brought  
to such perfection. To have no walls would be as foolish 10  
as to choose a site for a town in an exposed country, and to  
level the heights; or as if an individual were to leave his  
house unwall'd, lest the inmates should become cowards.  
Nor must we forget that those who have their cities surrounded 11  
by walls may either take advantage of them or not, but cities  
which are unwall'd have no choice.

If our conclusions are just, not only should cities have  
walls, but care should be taken to make them ornamental,  
as well as useful for warlike purposes, and adapted to resist  
modern inventions. For as the assailants of a city do 12  
all they can to gain an advantage, so the defenders should  
make use of any means of defence which have been already  
discovered, and should devise and invent others, for when  
men are well prepared no enemy even thinks of attacking  
them.

As the walls are to be divided by guardhouses and towers 12  
built at suitable intervals, and the body of citizens must  
be distributed at common tables, the idea will naturally  
occur that we should establish some of the common tables  
in the guardhouses. The arrangement might be as follows: 2  
the principal common tables of the magistrates will occupy

VII. 12 a suitable place, and there also will be the buildings appropriated to religious worship except in the case of those rites which the law or the Pythian oracle has restricted to a special locality<sup>1</sup>. The site should be a spot seen far and wide, which gives due elevation to virtue and towers over the neighbourhood. Near this spot should be established an agora, such as that which the Thessalians call the 'freemen's agora'; from this all trade should be excluded, and no mechanic, husbandman, or any such person allowed to enter, unless he be summoned by the magistrates. It would be a charming use of the place, if the gymnastic exercises of the elder men were performed there. For <sup>2</sup>in this noble practice different ages should be separated<sup>2</sup>, and some of the magistrates should stay with the boys, while the grown-up men remain with the magistrates [i. e. in the freeman's agora]; for the presence of the magistrates is the best mode of inspiring true modesty and ingenuous fear. There should also be a traders' agora, distinct and apart from the other, in a situation which is convenient for the reception of goods both by sea and land.

But in speaking of the magistrates we must not forget another section of the citizens, viz. the priests, for whom public tables should likewise be provided in their proper place near the temples. The magistrates who deal with contracts, indictments, summonses, and the like, and those who have the care of the agora and of the city respectively, ought to be established near the agora and in some public place of meeting; the neighbourhood of the traders' agora will be a suitable spot; the upper agora we devote to

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Plato, *Laws*, v. 738; vi. 759, 778; viii. 848.

<sup>2</sup> Or 'this institution should be divided according to ages.'

the life of leisure, the other is intended for the necessities of VII. 12 trade.

The same order should prevail<sup>1</sup> in the country, for there 8 too the magistrates, called by some 'Inspectors of Forests,' and by others 'Wardens of the Country,' must have guard-houses and common tables while they are on duty; temples should also be scattered throughout the country, dedicated, some to Gods, and some to heroes.

But it would be a waste of time for us to linger over 9 details like these. The difficulty is not in imagining but in carrying them out. We may talk about them as much as we like, but the execution of them will depend upon fortune. Wherefore let us say no more about these matters for the present.

Returning to the constitution itself, let us seek to 13 determine out of what, and what sort of, elements the state which is to be happy and well-governed should be composed. There are two things in which all well-being consists; one of 2 them is the choice of a right end and aim of action, and the other the discovery of the actions which are means towards it; for the means and the end may agree or disagree. Sometimes the right end is set before men, but in practice they fail to attain it; in other cases they are successful in all the means, but they propose to themselves a bad end, and sometimes they fail in both. Take, for example, the art of medicine; physicians do not always understand the nature of health, and also the means which they use may not effect the desired end. In all arts and sciences both the end and the means should be equally within our control.

The happiness and well-being which all men manifestly 3 desire, some have the power of attaining, but to others, from

<sup>1</sup> Reading *νενεμῆσθαι* with Bekker's first edition.

**VII. 13** some accident or defect of nature, the attainment of them is  
 1332a not granted; for a good life requires a supply of external  
 goods, in a less degree when men are in a good state, in  
 4 a greater degree when they are in a lower state. Others  
 again, who possess the condition of happiness, go utterly  
 wrong from the first in the pursuit of it. But since our  
 object is to discover the best form of government, that,  
 namely, under which a city will be best governed, and since  
 the city is best governed which has the greatest opportunity  
 of obtaining happiness, it is evident that we must clearly  
 ascertain the nature of happiness.

- 5 We have said in the *Ethics*<sup>1</sup>, if the arguments there adduced  
 are of any value, that happiness is the realization and perfect  
 exercise of virtue, and this not conditional, but absolute.  
 6 And I used the term 'conditional' to express that which is  
 indispensable, and 'absolute' to express that which is good  
 in itself. Take the case of just actions; just punishments  
 and chastisements do indeed spring from a good principle, but  
 they are good only because we cannot do without them—  
 it would be better that neither individuals nor states should  
 need anything of the sort—but actions which aim at honour  
 7 and advantage are absolutely the best. The conditional  
 action is only the choice<sup>2</sup> of a lesser evil; whereas these are  
 the foundation and creation of good. A good man may  
 make the best even of poverty and disease, and the other ills  
 of life; but he can only attain happiness under the opposite  
 conditions<sup>3</sup>. As we have already said in the *Ethics*<sup>4</sup>,

<sup>1</sup> Cp. N. Eth. i. 7. § 15; x. 6. § 2; and cp. c. 8. § 5, *supra*.

<sup>2</sup> Retaining the MSS. reading *αἵρεσις* with Bekker's first edition.

<sup>3</sup> N. Eth. i. 10. § 12-14.

<sup>4</sup> N. Eth. iii. 4. §§ 4, 5; E. E. vii. 15. § 4; M. M. ii. 9. § 3.



the good man is he to whom, because he is virtuous, the **VII. 13**  
absolute good is his good. It is also plain that his use <sup>8</sup>  
of other goods must be virtuous and in the absolute sense  
good. This makes men fancy that external goods are the  
cause of happiness, yet we might as well say that a brilliant  
performance on the lyre was to be attributed to the instru-  
ment and not to the skill of the performer.

It follows then from what has been said that some things  
the legislator must find ready to his hand in a state, others  
he must provide. And therefore we can only say: May <sup>9</sup>  
our state be constituted in such a manner as to be blessed  
with the goods of which fortune disposes (for we acknow-  
ledge her power): whereas virtue and goodness in the  
state are not a matter of chance but the result of knowledge  
and purpose. A city can be virtuous only when the citizens  
who have a share in the government are virtuous, and in  
our state all the citizens share in the government; let us then  
enquire how a man becomes virtuous. For even if we could <sup>10</sup>  
suppose all the citizens to be virtuous, and not each of them,  
yet the latter would be better, for in the virtue of each the  
virtue of all is involved.

There are three things which make men good and virtuous:  
these are nature, habit, reason <sup>1</sup>. In the first place, every one <sup>11</sup>  
must be born a man and not some other animal; in the  
second place, he must have a certain character, both of  
body and soul. But some qualities there is no use in having  
at birth, for they are altered by habit, and there are some <sup>1332b</sup>  
gifts of nature which may be turned by habit to good or  
bad. Most animals lead a life of nature, although in lesser <sup>12</sup>  
particulars some are influenced by habit as well. Man

<sup>1</sup> Cp. N. Eth. x. 9. § 6.

**VII. 13** has reason, in addition, and man only <sup>1</sup>. Wherefore nature, habit, reason must be in harmony with one another [for they do not always agree]; men do many things against habit and  
 13 nature, if reason persuades them that they ought. We have already determined what natures are likely to be most easily moulded by the hands of the legislator <sup>2</sup>. All else is the work of education; we learn some things by habit and some by instruction.

**14** Since every political society is composed of rulers and subjects, let us consider whether the relations of one to the other should interchange or be permanent <sup>3</sup>. For the education of the citizens will necessarily vary with the answer  
 2 given to this question. Now, if some men excelled others in the same degree in which gods and heroes are supposed to excel mankind in general, having in the first place a great advantage even in their bodies, and secondly in their minds, so that the superiority of the governors <sup>4</sup> over their subjects was patent and undisputed <sup>4</sup>, it would clearly be better that once for all the one class should rule and the others serve <sup>5</sup>.  
 3 But since this is unattainable, and kings have no marked superiority over their subjects, such as Scylax affirms to be found among the Indians, it is obviously necessary on many grounds that all the citizens alike should take their turn of governing and being governed. Equality consists in the same treatment of similar persons, and no government can stand  
 4 which is not founded upon justice. For [if the government be unjust] every one in the country unites with the governed

<sup>1</sup> Cp. i. 2. § 10.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. *supra*, c. 7. § 4.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. iii. 6. § 9.

<sup>4</sup> Or, taking τοῖς ἀρχομένοις with πανεπὶ, 'was undisputed and patent to their subjects.'

<sup>5</sup> Cp. i. 5. § 8; iii. 13. § 13.

in the desire to have a revolution, and it is an impossibility that **VII. 14** the members of the government can be so numerous as to be stronger than all their enemies put together. Yet that governors should excel their subjects is undeniable. How all this is to be effected, and in what way they will respectively share in the government, the legislator has to consider. The subject has been already mentioned<sup>1</sup>. Nature herself has given the 5 principle of choice when she made a difference between old and young (though they are really the same in kind), of whom she fitted the one to govern and the others to be governed. No one takes offence at being governed when he is young, nor does he think himself better than his governors, especially if he will enjoy the same privilege when he reaches the required age.

We conclude that from one point of view governors 6 and governed are identical, and from another different. And therefore their education must be the same and also different. 1333 a For he who would learn to command well must, as men say, first of all learn to obey<sup>2</sup>. As I observed in the first part of this treatise, there is one rule which is for the sake of the rulers and another rule which is for the sake of the ruled<sup>3</sup>; the former is a despotic, the latter a free government. 7 Some commands differ not in the thing commanded, but in the intention with which they are imposed. Wherefore, many apparently menial offices are an honour to the free youth by whom they are performed; for actions do not differ as honourable or dishonourable in themselves so much as in the end and intention of them. But since we say<sup>4</sup> that the virtue 8 of the citizen and ruler is the same as that of the good man,

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 9. § 5.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. iii. 6. § 6.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. iii. 4. § 14.

<sup>4</sup> Cp. iii. 4 and 5. § 10.

VII. 14 and that the same person must first be a subject and then a ruler, the legislator has to see that they become good men, and by what means this may be accomplished, and what is the end of the perfect life.

9 Now the soul of man is divided into two parts, one of which has reason in itself, and the other, not having reason in itself, is able to obey reason<sup>1</sup>. And we call a man good because he has the virtues of these two parts. In which of them the end is more likely to be found is no  
10 matter of doubt to those who adopt our division; for in the world both of nature and of art the inferior always exists for the sake of the better or superior, and the better or superior is that which has reason. The reason too, in our ordinary way of speaking, is divided into two parts, for  
11 there is a practical and a speculative reason<sup>2</sup>, and there must be a corresponding division of actions; the actions of the naturally better principle are to be preferred by those who have it in their power to attain to both or to all, for that is always to every one the most eligible which is the highest  
12 attainable by him. The whole of life is further divided into two parts, business and leisure<sup>3</sup>, war and peace, and all actions into those which are necessary and useful, and those  
13 which are honourable. And the preference given to one or the other class of actions must necessarily be like the preference given to one or other part of the soul and its actions over the other; there must be war for the sake of peace, business for the sake of leisure, things useful and necessary for the sake of things honourable. All these

<sup>1</sup> Cp. N. Eth. i. 13. §§ 18, 19.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. N. Eth. vi. 1. § 5; II. § 4.

<sup>3</sup> N. Eth. x. 7. § 6.

points the statesman should keep in view when he frames his **VII. 14** laws; he should consider the parts of the soul and their functions, and above all the better and the end; he should <sup>14</sup> also remember the diversities of human lives and actions. For men must engage in business and go to war, but leisure <sup>1333 b</sup> and peace are better; they must do what is necessary and useful, but what is honourable is better. In such principles children and persons of every age which requires education should be trained. Whereas even the Hellenes of the <sup>15</sup> present day, who are reputed to be best governed, and the legislators who gave them their constitutions, do not appear to have framed their governments with a regard to the best end, or to have given them laws and education with a view to all the virtues, but in a vulgar spirit have fallen back on those which promised to be more useful and profitable. Many <sup>16</sup> modern writers have taken a similar view: they commend the Lacedaemonian constitution, and praise the legislator for making conquest and war his sole aim<sup>1</sup>, a doctrine which may be refuted by argument and has long ago been refuted by facts. For most men desire empire in the hope of accumu- <sup>17</sup> lating the goods of fortune; and on this ground Thibron and all those who have written about the Lacedaemonian constitution have praised their legislator, because the Lacedaemonians, by a training in hardships, gained great power. But surely they are not a happy people now that their empire <sup>18</sup> has passed away, nor was their legislator right. How ridiculous is the result, if, while they are continuing in the observances of his laws and no one interferes with them they have lost the better part of life. These writers further <sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Plato, *Laws*, i. 628, 638.

VII. 14 err about the sort of government which the legislator should approve, for the government of freemen is noble, and implies more virtue than despotic government<sup>1</sup>. Neither is a city to be deemed happy or a legislator to be praised because he trains his citizens to conquer and obtain dominion over their  
 20 neighbours, for there is great evil in this. On a similar principle any citizen who could, would obviously try to obtain the power in his own state—the crime which the Lacedaemonians accused king Pausanias of attempting<sup>2</sup>, although he had so great honour already. No such principle and no law having this object is either statesmanlike or useful or  
 21 right. For the same things are best both for individuals and for states, and these are the things which the legislator ought to implant in the minds of his citizens. Neither should men study war with a view to the enslavement of those who do not deserve to be enslaved; but first of all they should provide against their own enslavement, and in the second  
 1334 a place obtain empire for the good of the governed, and not for the sake of exercising a general despotism, and in the third place they should seek to be masters only over those  
 22 who deserve to be slaves. Facts, as well as arguments, prove that the legislator should direct all his military and other measures to the provision of leisure and the establishment of peace. For most of these military states are safe only while they are at war<sup>3</sup>, but fall when they have acquired their empire; like unused iron they lose their edge in time of peace. And for this the legislator is to blame, he never having taught them how to lead the life of peace.

15 Since the end of individuals and of states is the same, the

<sup>1</sup> Cp. i. 5. § 2.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. v. 1. § 10; 7. § 4.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. ii. 9. § 34.

end of the best man and of the best state must also be **VII. 15**  
the same ; it is therefore evident that there ought to exist in  
both of them the virtues of leisure ; for peace, as has been  
often repeated, is the end of war, and leisure of toil. But <sup>2</sup>  
leisure and cultivation may be promoted, not only by those  
virtues which are practised in leisure, but also by some  
of those which are useful to business<sup>1</sup>. For many neces-  
saries of life have to be supplied before we can have leisure.  
Therefore a city must be temperate and brave, and able  
to endure : for truly, as the proverb says, 'There is no  
leisure for slaves,' and those who cannot face danger like men  
are the slaves of any invader. Courage and endurance <sup>3</sup>  
are required for business and intellectual virtue for leisure,  
temperance and justice for both, more especially in times  
of peace and leisure, for war compels men to be just and  
temperate, whereas the enjoyment of good fortune and  
the leisure which comes with peace tends to make them  
insolent. Those, then, who seem to be the best off and to be <sup>4</sup>  
in the possession of every good, have special need of justice  
and temperance—for example, those (if such there be, as the  
poets say) who dwell in the Islands of the Blest ; they above  
all will need philosophy and temperance and justice, and all  
the more the more leisure they have, living in the midst  
of abundance. There is no difficulty in seeing why the state <sup>5</sup>  
that would be happy and good ought to have these virtues.  
If it be disgraceful in men not to be able to use the goods of  
life, it is peculiarly disgraceful not to be able to use them in  
time of peace—to show excellent qualities in action and war,  
and when they have peace and leisure to be no better than slaves.

<sup>1</sup> i. e. 'not only by some of the speculative but also by some of the practical virtues.'



VII. 15 Wherefore we should not practise virtue after the manner of  
 6 the Lacedaemonians<sup>1</sup>. For they, while agreeing with other  
 1334 b men in their conception of the highest goods, differ from the  
 rest of mankind in thinking that they are to be obtained by the  
 practice of a single virtue. And since these goods and the  
 enjoyment of them are clearly greater than the enjoyment  
 derived from the virtues of which they are the end, we must  
 now consider how and by what means they are to be  
 attained.

7 We have already determined that nature and habit and reason  
 are required<sup>2</sup>, and what should be the character of the citizens  
 has also been defined by us. But we have still to consider  
 whether the training of early life is to be that of reason or  
 habit, for these two must accord, and when in accord they  
 will then form the best of harmonies. Reason may make  
 mistakes and fail in attaining the highest ideal of life,<sup>3</sup> and  
 8 there may be a like evil influence of habit<sup>3</sup>. Thus much is  
 clear in the first place, that, as in all other things, generation  
 starts from a beginning, and that the ends of some beginnings  
 are related to another end. Now, in men reason and mind are  
 the end towards which nature strives, so that the generation  
 and moral discipline of the citizens ought to be ordered with  
 9 a view to them. In the second place, as the soul and body  
 are two, we see also that there are two parts of the soul, the  
 rational and the irrational<sup>4</sup>, and two corresponding states—  
 reason and appetite. And as the body is prior in order of  
 generation to the soul, so the irrational is prior to the rational.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. ii. 9. § 34.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. 13. § 12.

<sup>3</sup> Or, 'and yet a man may be trained by habit as if the reason had not  
 so erred.'

<sup>4</sup> Cp. N. Eth. i. 13. § 9 ff.

The proof is that anger and will and desire are implanted in children from their very birth, but reason and understanding are developed as they grow older. Wherefore, the care of the body ought to precede that of the soul, and the training of the appetitive part should follow : none the less our care of it must be for the sake of the reason, and our care of the body for the sake of the soul <sup>1</sup>. VII. 15<sup>10</sup>

Since the legislator should begin by considering how the frames of the children whom he is rearing may be as good as possible, his first care will be about marriage—at what age should his citizens marry, and who are fit to marry? In legislating on this subject he ought to consider the persons and their relative ages, that there may be no disproportion in them, and that they may not differ in their bodily powers, as will be the case if the man is still able to beget children while the woman is unable to bear them, or the woman able to bear while the man is unable to beget, for from these causes arise quarrels and differences between married persons. Secondly, he must consider the time at which the children will succeed to their parents ; there ought not to be too great an interval of age, for then the parents will be too old to derive any pleasure from their affection, or to be of any use to them. Nor ought they to be too nearly of an age ; to youthful marriages there are many objections—the children will be wanting in respect to their parents, who will seem to be their contemporaries, and disputes will arise in the management of the household. Thirdly, and this is the point from which we digressed, the legislator must mould to his will the frames of newly-born children. Almost all these objects may be secured by attention to one point. Since the time of generation is commonly limited within the

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Plato, Rep. iii. 410.

**VII. 16** age of seventy years in the case of a man, and of fifty in the case of a woman, the commencement of the union should conform to these periods. The union of male and female when too young is bad for the procreation of children; in all other animals the offspring of the young are small and ill-developed, and generally of the female sex, and therefore also in man, as is proved by the fact that in those cities in which men and women are accustomed to marry young, the people are small and weak; in childbirth also younger women suffer more, and more of them die; some persons say that this was the meaning of the response once given to the Troezenians—[‘Shear not the young field’]—the oracle really meant that many died because they married too young; it had nothing to do with the ingathering of the harvest. It also conduces to temperance not to marry too soon; for women who marry early are apt to be wanton; and in men too the bodily frame is stunted if they marry while they are growing (for there is a time when the growth of the body ceases). Women should marry when they are about eighteen years of age, and men at seven-and-thirty<sup>1</sup>; then they are in the prime of life, and the decline in the powers of both will coincide. Further, the children, if their birth takes place at the time that may reasonably be expected, will succeed in their prime, when the fathers are already in the decline of life, and have nearly reached their term of three-score years and ten.

Thus much of the age proper for marriage: the season of the year should also be considered; according to our present custom, people generally limit marriage to the season of winter, and they are right. The precepts of physicians and natural philosophers about generation should also be studied by the

<sup>1</sup> Omitting ἡ μικρόν.

parents themselves ; the physicians give good advice about **VII. 16**  
the right age of the body, and the natural philosophers about  
the winds ; of which they prefer the north to the south. 1335 b

What constitution in the parent is most advantageous to **12**  
the offspring is a subject which we will hereafter consider  
when we speak of the education of children, and we will only  
make a few general remarks at present. The temperament of  
an athlete is not suited to the life of a citizen, or to health, or  
to the procreation of children, any more than the valetudinarian  
or exhausted constitution, but one which is in a mean between  
them. A man's constitution should be inured to labour, but **13**  
not to labour which is excessive or of one sort only, such as  
is practised by athletes ; he should be capable of all the actions  
of a freeman. These remarks apply equally to both parents.

Women who are with child should be careful of themselves ; **14**  
they should take exercise and have a nourishing diet. The  
first of these prescriptions the legislator will easily carry into  
effect by requiring that they shall take a walk daily to some  
temple, where they can worship the gods who preside over  
birth<sup>1</sup>. Their minds, however, unlike their bodies, they  
ought to keep unexercised, for the offspring derive their natures  
from their mothers as plants do from the earth.

As to the exposure and rearing of children, let there be a **15**  
law that no deformed child shall live, but where there are too  
many (for in our state population has a limit), when couples  
have children in excess, and the state of feeling is averse to the  
exposure of offspring, let abortion be procured before sense  
and life have begun ; what may or may not be lawfully done in  
these cases depends on the question of life and sensation.

And now, having determined at what ages men and women **16**

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Plato, *Laws*, vii. 789.

**VII. 16** are to begin their union, let us also determine how long they shall continue to beget and bear offspring for the state<sup>1</sup>; men who are too old, like men who are too young, produce children who are defective in body and mind; the children of very old  
 17 men are weakly. The limit, then, should be the age which is the prime of their intelligence, and this in most persons, according to the notion of some poets who measure life by periods of seven years, is about fifty<sup>2</sup>; at four or five years later, they should cease from having families; and from that time forward only cohabit with one another for the sake of health, or for some similar reason.

18 As to adultery, let it be held disgraceful for any man or woman to be unfaithful when they are married, and called  
 1336 a husband and wife. If during the time of bearing children anything of the sort occur, let the guilty person be punished with a loss of privileges in proportion to the offence<sup>3</sup>.

17 After the children have been born, the manner of rearing them may be supposed to have a great effect on their bodily strength. It would appear from the example of animals, and of those nations who desire to create the military habit, that the food which has most milk in it is best suited to human beings; but the less wine the better, if they would escape disease.

2 Also all the motions to which children can be subjected at their early age are very useful. But in order to preserve their tender limbs from distortion, some nations have had recourse to mechanical appliances which straighten their bodies. To accustom children to the cold from their earliest years is also an excellent practice, which greatly conduces to health, and  
 3 hardens them for military service. Hence many barbarians

<sup>1</sup> λειτουργεῖν.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. Solon, *Fragm.* 25 Bergk.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. *Laws*, viii. 841.

have a custom of plunging their children at birth into a cold stream; others, like the Celts, clothe them in a light wrapper only. For human nature should be early habituated to endure all which by habit it can be made to endure; but the process must be gradual. And children, from their natural warmth, may be easily trained to bear cold. Such care should attend them in the first stage of life. VII. 17

The next period lasts to the age of five; during this no demand should be made upon the child for study or labour, lest its growth be impeded; and there should be sufficient motion to prevent the limbs from being inactive. This can be secured, among other ways, by amusement, but the amusement should not be vulgar or tiring or riotous. The Directors of Education, as they are termed, should be careful what tales or stories the children hear<sup>1</sup>, for the sports of children are designed to prepare the way for the business of later life, and should be for the most part imitations of the occupations which they will hereafter pursue in earnest<sup>2</sup>. Those are wrong who [like Plato] in the Laws attempt to check the loud crying and screaming of children, for these contribute towards their growth, and, in a manner, exercise their bodies<sup>3</sup>. Straining the voice has an effect similar to that produced by the retention of the breath in violent exertions. Besides other duties, the Directors of Education should have an eye to their bringing up, and should take care that they are left as little as possible with slaves. For until they are seven years old they must live at home; and therefore, even at this early age, all that is mean and low should be banished from their sight and hearing. Indeed, there is nothing which the legislator should be more careful to

<sup>1</sup> Plato, Rep. ii. 377 ff.

<sup>2</sup> Plato, Laws, i. 643; vii. 799.

<sup>3</sup> Plato, Laws, vii. 792.

VII. 17 drive away than indecency of speech ; for the light utterance of shameful words is akin to shameful actions. The young especially should never be allowed to repeat or hear anything of  
 9 the sort. A freeman who is found saying or doing what is forbidden, if he be too young as yet to have the privilege of a place at the public table, should be disgraced and beaten, and an elder person degraded as his slavish conduct deserves. And since we do not allow improper language, clearly we should  
 10 also banish pictures or tales which are indecent. Let the rulers take care that there be no image or picture representing unseemly actions, except in the temples of those Gods at whose festivals the law permits even ribaldry, and whom the law also permits to be worshipped by persons of mature age on behalf of themselves, their children, and their wives. But  
 11 the legislator should not allow youth to be hearers of satirical Iambic verses or spectators of comedy until they are of an age to sit at the public tables and to drink strong wine ; by that time education will have armed them against the evil influences of such representations.

12 We have made these remarks in a cursory manner—they are enough for the present occasion ; but hereafter<sup>1</sup> we will return to the subject and after a fuller discussion determine whether such liberty should or should not be granted, and in  
 13 what way granted, if at all. Theodorus, the tragic actor, was quite right in saying that he would not allow any other actor, not even if he were quite second-rate, to enter before himself, because the spectators grew fond of the voices which they first heard. And the same principle of association applies universally to things as well as persons, for we always like best whatever  
 14 comes first. And therefore youth should be kept strangers to

<sup>1</sup> Unfulfilled promise (?), but cp. viii. 5. § 21.



all that is bad, and especially to things which suggest vice or **VII. 17** hate. When the five years have passed away, during the two following years they must look on at the pursuits which they are hereafter to learn. There are two periods of life into <sup>15</sup> which education has to be divided—from seven to the age of puberty, and onwards to the age of one-and-twenty. [The <sup>1337 a</sup> poets] who divide ages by sevens<sup>1</sup> are not always right<sup>2</sup>: we should rather adhere to the divisions actually made by nature; for the deficiencies of nature are what art and education seek to fill up.

Let us then first enquire if any regulations are to be laid <sup>16</sup> down about children, and secondly, whether the care of them should be the concern of the state or of private individuals— which latter is in our own day the common custom—and in the third place, what these regulations should be.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. *supra*, c. 16. § 17.

<sup>2</sup> Reading *οὐ καλῶς*, with the MSS. and Bekker's first edition: or, reading *οὐ κακῶς*, a conjecture of Muretus, which Bekker has adopted in his second edition, 'are in the main right; but we should also observe. etc.'

## BOOK VIII

VIII. 1 No one will doubt that the legislator should direct his attention above all to the education of youth, or that the  
2 neglect of education does harm to states. The citizen should be moulded to suit the form of government under which he lives<sup>1</sup>. For each government has a peculiar character which originally formed and which continues to preserve it. The character of democracy creates democracy, and the character of oligarchy creates oligarchy; and always the better the character, the better the government.

Now for the exercise of any faculty or art a previous training and habituation are required; clearly therefore  
3 for the practice of virtue. And since the whole city has one end, it is manifest that education should be one and the same for all, and that it should be public, and not private—not as at present, when every one looks after his own children separately, and gives them separate instruction of the sort which he thinks best; the training in things which are of  
4 common interest should be the same for all. Neither must we suppose that any one of the citizens belongs to himself, for they all belong to the state, and are each of them a part of the state, and the care of each part is inseparable from the care of the whole. In this particular the Lacedaemonians are to be praised, for they take the greatest pains about their children, and make education the business of the state<sup>2</sup>.

2 That education should be regulated by law and should be an affair of state is not to be denied, but what should

<sup>1</sup> Cp. v. 9. §§ 11-16.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. N. Eth. x. 9. § 13.

be the character of this public education, and how young persons should be educated, are questions which remain to be considered. For mankind are by no means agreed about the things to be taught, whether we look to virtue or the best life. Neither is it clear whether education is more concerned with intellectual or with moral virtue. The existing practice is perplexing; no one knows on what principle we should proceed—should the useful in life, or should virtue, or should the higher knowledge, be the aim of our training; all three opinions have been entertained. Again, about the means there is no agreement; for different persons, starting with different ideas about the nature of virtue, naturally disagree about the practice of it. There can be no doubt that children should be taught those useful things which are really necessary, but not all things; for occupations are divided into liberal and illiberal; and to young children should be imparted only such kinds of knowledge as will be useful to them without vulgarizing them. And any occupation, art, or science, which makes the body or soul or mind of the freeman less fit for the practice or exercise of virtue, is vulgar; wherefore we call those arts vulgar which tend to deform the body, and likewise all paid employments, for they absorb and degrade the mind. There are also some liberal arts quite proper for a freeman to acquire, but only in a certain degree, and if he attend to them too closely, in order to attain perfection in them, the same evil effects will follow. The object also which a man sets before him makes a great difference; if he does or learns anything for his own sake<sup>1</sup> or for the sake of his friends, or with a view to excellence, the action will not

<sup>1</sup> Cp. iii. 4. § 13.

VIII. 2 appear illiberal; but if done for the sake of others, the very same action will be thought menial and servile. The received subjects of instruction, as I have already remarked<sup>1</sup>, are partly of a liberal and partly of an illiberal character.

3 The customary branches of education are in number four; they are—(1) reading and writing, (2) gymnastic exercises, (3) music, to which is sometimes added (4) drawing. Of these, reading and writing and drawing are regarded as useful for the purposes of life in a variety of ways, and gymnastic exercises are thought to infuse courage. Concerning music  
 2 a doubt may be raised—in our own day most men cultivate it for the sake of pleasure, but originally it was included in education, because nature herself, as has been often said, requires that we should be able not only to work well, but to use leisure well; for, as I must repeat once and again<sup>2</sup>, the  
 3 first principle of all action is leisure. Both are required, but leisure is better than occupation; and therefore the question must be asked in good earnest, what ought we to do when at leisure? Clearly we ought not to be amusing ourselves, for then amusement would be the end of life. But if this is  
 4 inconceivable, and yet amid serious occupations amusement is needed more than at other times (for he who is hard at work has need of relaxation, and amusement gives relaxation, whereas occupation is always accompanied with exertion and effort), at suitable times we should introduce amusements, and they should be our medicines, for the emotion which they create in the soul is a relaxation, and  
 1338 a from the pleasure we obtain rest. Leisure of itself gives pleasure and happiness and enjoyment of life, which are  
 5 experienced, not by the busy man, but by those who have

<sup>1</sup> § 3 supra.

<sup>2</sup> As in vii. 15. §§ 1, 2, and N. Eth. x. 6.

leisure. For he who is occupied has in view some end which **VIII. 3** he has not attained ; but happiness is an end which all men deem to be accompanied with pleasure and not with pain. This pleasure, however, is regarded differently by different persons, and varies according to the habit of individuals ; the pleasure of the best man is the best, and springs from the noblest sources. It is clear, then, that there are branches 6 of learning and education which we must study with a view to the enjoyment of leisure, and these are to be valued for their own sake ; whereas those kinds of knowledge which are useful in business are to be deemed necessary, and exist for the sake of other things. And therefore our fathers 7 admitted music into education, not on the ground either of its necessity or utility, for it is not necessary, nor indeed useful in the same manner as reading and writing, which are useful in money-making, in the management of a household, in the acquisition of knowledge and in political life, nor like drawing, useful for a more correct judgment of the works of artists, nor again like gymnastic, which gives health and strength ; for neither of these is to be gained from music. There remains, then, the use of music for intellectual enjoyment in leisure ; which appears to have been the reason of its introduction, this being one of the ways in which it is thought that a freeman should pass his leisure ; as Homer says—

‘How good is it to invite men to the pleasant feast<sup>1</sup>,’  
and afterwards he speaks of others whom he describes as inviting

‘The bard who would delight them all<sup>2</sup>.’

<sup>1</sup> Or, ‘to invite Thalia to the feast,’ an interpretation of the passage possibly intended by Aristotle, though of course not the original meaning.

<sup>2</sup> Od. xvii. 385.

VIII. 3 And in another place Odysseus says there is no better way of passing life than when

‘Men’s hearts are merry and the banqueters in the hall, sitting in order, hear the voice of the minstrel<sup>1</sup>.’

10 It is evident, then, that there is a sort of education in which parents should train their sons, not as being useful or necessary, but because it is liberal or noble. Whether this is of one kind only, or of more than one, and if so, what they are, and how they are to be imparted, must hereafter be  
11 determined. Thus much we are now in a position to say that the ancients witness to us; for their opinion may be gathered from the fact that music is one of the received and traditional branches of education. Further, it is clear that children should be instructed in some useful things—for example, in reading and writing—not only for their usefulness, but also  
12 them. With a like view they may be taught drawing, not to prevent their making mistakes in their own purchases, or in order that they may not be imposed upon in the buying  
1338 b or selling of articles, but rather because it makes them judges of the beauty of the human form. To be always seeking after the useful does not become free and exalted  
13 souls<sup>2</sup>. Now it is clear that in education habit must go before reason, and the body before the mind; and therefore boys should be handed over to the trainer, who creates in them the proper habit of body, and to the wrestling-master, who teaches them their exercises.

4 Of those states which in our own day seem to take the greatest care of children, some aim at producing in them an athletic habit, but they only injure their forms and stunt their growth.

<sup>1</sup> Od. ix. 7.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. Plato, Rep. vii. 525 ff.

Although the Lacedaemonians have not fallen into this **VIII. 4** mistake, yet they brutalize their children by laborious exercises which they think will make them courageous. But in truth, <sup>2</sup> as we have often repeated, education should not be exclusively directed to this or to any other single end. And even if we suppose the Lacedaemonians to be right in their end, they do not attain it. For among barbarians and among animals courage is found associated, not with the greatest ferocity, but with a gentle and lion-like temper. There are many races <sup>3</sup> who are ready enough to kill and eat men, such as the Achaeans and Heniochi, who both live about the Black Sea <sup>1</sup>; and there are other inland tribes, as bad or worse, who all live by plunder, but have no courage. It is notorious that the <sup>4</sup> Lacedaemonians, while they were themselves assiduous in their laborious drill, were superior to others, but now they are beaten both in war and gymnastic exercises. For their ancient superiority did not depend on their mode of training their youth, but only on the circumstance that they trained them at a time when others did not. Hence we may <sup>5</sup> infer that what is noble, not what is brutal, should have the first place; no wolf or other wild animal will face a really noble danger; such dangers are for the brave man <sup>2</sup>. And <sup>6</sup> parents who devote their children to gymnastics while they neglect their necessary education, in reality vulgarize them; for they make them useful to the state in one quality only, and even in this the argument proves them to be inferior to others. We should judge the Lacedaemonians not from <sup>7</sup> what they have been, but from what they are; for now they have rivals who compete with their education; formerly they had none.

<sup>1</sup> Cp. N. Eth. vii. 5. § 2.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. N. Eth. iii. 6. § 8.



VIII. 4 It is an admitted principle that gymnastic exercises should be employed in education, and that for children they should be of a lighter kind, avoiding severe regimen or painful toil, lest the growth of the body be impaired. The evil of excessive training in early years is strikingly proved by the example of the Olympic victors; for not more than two or three of them have gained a prize both as boys and as men; their early training and severe gymnastic exercises exhausted their constitutions. When boyhood is over, three years should be spent in other studies; the period of life which follows may then be devoted to hard exercise and strict regimen. Men ought not to labour at the same time with their minds and with their bodies<sup>1</sup>; for the two kinds of labour are opposed to one another—the labour of the body impedes the mind, and the labour of the mind the body.

5 Concerning music there are some questions which we have already raised; these we may now resume and carry further; and our remarks will serve as a prelude to this or any other discussion of the subject. It is not easy to determine the nature of music, or why any one should have a knowledge of it. Shall we say, for the sake of amusement and relaxation, like sleep or drinking, which are not good in themselves, but are pleasant, and at the same time ‘make care to cease,’ as Euripides<sup>2</sup> says? And therefore men rank them with music, and make use of all three—sleep<sup>3</sup>, drinking, music—to which some add dancing. Or shall we argue that music conduces to virtue, on the ground that it can form our minds and habituate us to true pleasures as our bodies are made by

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Plato, Rep. vii. 537 B.

<sup>2</sup> Bacchae, 380.

<sup>3</sup> Reading (with Bekker's 2nd ed.) ὕπνου, a correction which seems necessary, and is suggested by ὕπνου καὶ μέθης above.

gymnastic to be of a certain character? Or shall we say that **VIII. 5** it contributes to the enjoyment of leisure and mental cultivation, which is a third alternative? Now obviously youth are not to be instructed with a view to their amusement, for learning is no pleasure, but is accompanied with pain. Neither is intellectual enjoyment suitable to boys of that age, for it is the end, and that which is imperfect cannot attain the perfect or end. But perhaps it may be said that boys learn music for **5** the sake of the amusement which they will have when they are grown up. If so, why should they learn themselves, and not, like the Persian and Median kings, enjoy the pleasure and instruction which is derived from hearing others? (for **6** surely skilled persons who have made music the business and profession of their lives will be better performers than those who practise only to learn). If they must learn music, on the same principle they should learn cookery, which is absurd. And even granting that music may form the **7** character, the objection still holds: why should we learn ourselves? Why cannot we attain true pleasure and form **1339 b** a correct judgment from hearing others, like the Lacedaemonians?—for they, without learning music, nevertheless can correctly judge, as they say, of good and bad melodies. Or **8** again, if music should be used to promote cheerfulness and refined intellectual enjoyment, the objection still remains—why should we learn ourselves instead of enjoying the performances of others? We may illustrate what we are saying by our conception of the Gods; for in the poets Zeus does not himself sing or play on the lyre. Nay, we call professional performers vulgar; no freeman would play or sing unless he were intoxicated or in jest. But these matters **9** may be left for the present.

VIII. 5 The first question is whether music is or is not to be a part of education. Of the three things mentioned in our discussion, which is it?—Education or amusement or intellectual enjoyment, for it may be reckoned under all three, and seems  
 10 to share in the nature of all of them. Amusement is for the sake of relaxation, and relaxation is of necessity sweet, for it is the remedy of pain caused by toil, and intellectual enjoyment is universally acknowledged to contain an element not only of the noble but of the pleasant, for happiness  
 11 is made up of both. All men agree that music is one of the pleasantest things, whether with or without song; as Musaeus says,

‘Song is to mortals of all things the sweetest.’

Hence and with good reason it is introduced into social gatherings and entertainments, because it makes the hearts of men glad: so that on this ground alone we may assume that  
 12 the young ought to be trained in it. For innocent pleasures are not only in harmony with the perfect end of life, but they also provide relaxation. And whereas men rarely attain the end, but often rest by the way and amuse themselves, not only with a view to some good, but also for the pleasure’s sake, it may be well for them at times to find a refreshment in music.  
 13 It sometimes happens that men make amusement the end, for the end probably contains some element of pleasure, though not any ordinary or lower pleasure; but they mistake the lower for the higher, and in seeking for the one find the other, since every pleasure has a likeness to the end of action<sup>1</sup>. For the end is not eligible, nor do the pleasures which we have described exist, for the sake of any future good but of the past, that is to say, they are the alleviation of

<sup>1</sup> Cp. N. Eth. vii. 13. § 6.

past toils and pains. And we may infer this to be the **VIII. 5** reason why men seek happiness from common pleasures. <sup>14</sup> But music is pursued, not only as an alleviation of past toil, but also as providing recreation. And who can say <sup>15</sup> whether, having this use, it may not also have a nobler one? In addition to this common pleasure, felt and shared in by all <sup>1340 a</sup> (for the pleasure given by music is natural, and therefore adapted to all ages and characters), may it not have also some influence over the character and the soul? It must <sup>16</sup> have such an influence if characters are affected by it. And that they are so affected is proved by the power which the songs of Olympus and of many others exercise; for beyond question they inspire enthusiasm, and enthusiasm is an emotion of the ethical part of the soul. Besides, when <sup>17</sup> men hear imitations, even unaccompanied by melody or rhythm, their feelings move in sympathy. Since, then, music is a pleasure, and virtue consists in rejoicing and loving and hating aright, there is clearly nothing which we are so much concerned to acquire and to cultivate as the power of forming right judgments, and of taking delight in good dispositions and noble actions <sup>1</sup>. Rhythm and melody supply imitations <sup>18</sup> of anger and gentleness, and also of courage and temperance and of virtues and vices in general, which hardly fall short of the actual affections, as we know from our own experience, for in listening to such strains our souls undergo a change. The habit of feeling pleasure or pain at mere representations <sup>19</sup> is not far removed from the same feeling about realities <sup>2</sup>; for example, if any one delights in the sight of a statue for its beauty only, it necessarily follows that the sight of

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Plato, Rep. iii. 401, 402; Laws, ii. 658, 659.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. Plato, Rep. iii. 395.

VIII. 5 the original will be pleasant to him. No other sense, such  
 20 as taste or touch, has any resemblance to moral qualities ;  
 in sight only there is a little, for figures are to some extent of  
 a moral character, and [so far] all participate in the feeling  
 about them. Again, figures and colours are not imitations,  
 21 but signs of moral habits, and these signs occur only when the  
 body is under the influence of emotions. The connexion of  
 them with morals is slight, but in so far as there is any,  
 young men should be taught to look, not at the works  
 of Pauson, but at those of Polygnotus<sup>1</sup>, or any other painter  
 or statuary who expresses moral ideas. On the other hand,  
 22 even in mere melodies<sup>2</sup> there is an imitation of character, for  
 the musical modes differ essentially from one another,  
 and those who hear them are differently affected by each.  
 1340 b Some of them make men sad and grave, like the so-called  
 Mixolydian, others enfeeble the mind, like the relaxed  
 harmonies, others, again, produce a moderate and settled  
 temper, which appears to be the peculiar effect of the Dorian ;  
 23 the Phrygian inspires enthusiasm. The whole subject  
 has been well treated by philosophical writers on this branch  
 of education, and they confirm their arguments by facts.  
 The same principles apply to rhythms<sup>3</sup> : some have a  
 character of rest, others of motion, and of these latter again,  
 24 some have a more vulgar, others a nobler movement. Enough  
 has been said to show that music has a power of forming the  
 character, and should therefore be introduced into the education  
 25 of the young. The study is suited to the stage of youth, for  
 young persons will not, if they can help, endure anything which  
 is not sweetened by pleasure, and music has a natural sweet-

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Poet. 2. § 2 ; 6. § 15.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. Plato, Rep. iii. 398, 399.

<sup>3</sup> Rep. iii. 399 E, 400.

ness. There seems to be in us a sort of affinity to harmonies **VIII. 5** and rhythms, which makes some philosophers say that the soul is a harmony, others, that she possesses harmony.

And now we have to determine the question which **6** has been already raised<sup>1</sup>, whether children should be themselves taught to sing and play or not. Clearly there is a considerable difference made in the character by the actual practice of the art. It is difficult, if not impossible, for those who do not perform to be good judges of the performance of others<sup>2</sup>. Besides, children should have something **a** to do, and the rattle of Archytas, which people give to their children in order to amuse them and prevent them from breaking anything in the house, was a capital invention, for a young thing cannot be quiet. The rattle is a toy suited to the infant mind, and [musical] education is a rattle or toy for children of a larger growth. We conclude then that they **3** should be taught music in such a way as to become not only critics but performers.

The question what is or is not suitable for different ages may be easily answered; nor is there any difficulty in meeting the objection of those who say that the study of music is vulgar. We reply (1) in the first place, that they **4** who are to be judges must also be performers, and that they should begin to practise early, although when they are older they may be spared the execution; they must have learned to appreciate what is good and to delight in it, thanks to the knowledge which they acquired in their youth. As to **5** (2) the vulgarizing effect which music is supposed to exercise, this is a question [of degree], which we shall have no difficulty in determining, when we have considered to what

<sup>1</sup> c. 5. §§ 5-8.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. *supra*, c. 5. § 7.

VIII. 6 extent freemen who are being trained to political virtue should pursue the art, what melodies and what rhythms they  
 1341 a should be allowed to use, and what instruments should be employed in teaching them to play, for even the instrument  
 6 makes a difference. The answer to the objection turns upon these distinctions; for it is quite possible that certain methods of teaching and learning music do really have a degrading effect. It is evident then that the learning of music ought not to impede the business of riper years, or to degrade the body or render it unfit for civil or military duties, whether for the early practice or for the later study of them.

7 The right measure will be attained if students of music stop short of the arts which are practised in professional contests, and do not seek to acquire those fantastic marvels of execution which are now the fashion in such contests, and from these  
 8 have passed into education. Let the young pursue their studies until they are able to feel delight in noble melodies and rhythms, and not merely in that common part of music in which every slave or child and even some animals find pleasure.

From these principles we may also infer what instruments  
 9 should be used. The flute, or any other instrument which equires great skill, as for example the harp, ought not to be admitted into education, but only such as will make intelligent students of music or of the other parts of education. Besides, the flute is not an instrument which has a good moral effect; it is too exciting. The proper time for using it is when the performance aims not at instruction, but at the relief  
 10 of the passions<sup>1</sup>. And there is a further objection; the impediment which the flute presents to the use of the voice detracts from its educational value. The ancients therefore

<sup>1</sup> Cp. c. 7. § 3.



were right in forbidding the flute to youths and freemen, **VIII. 6** although they had once allowed it. For when their wealth gave **11** them greater leisure, and they had loftier notions of excellence, being also elated with their success, both before and after the Persian War, with more zeal than discernment they pursued every kind of knowledge, and so they introduced the flute into education. At Lacedaemon there was a Choragus who led **12** the Chorus with a flute, and at Athens the instrument became so popular that most freemen could play upon it. The popularity is shown by the tablet which Thrasippus dedicated when he furnished the Chorus to Ecphantides. Later experience enabled men to judge what was or what was not really conducive to virtue, and they rejected both the flute and several **13** other old-fashioned instruments, such as the Lydian harp, the many-stringed lyre, the 'heptagon,' 'triangle,' 'sambuca,' and **1341 b** the like—which are intended only to give pleasure to the hearer, and require extraordinary skill of hand<sup>1</sup>. There is a meaning also in the myth of the ancients, which tells how Athene invented the flute and then threw it away. It was **14** not a bad idea of theirs, that the Goddess disliked the instrument because it made the face ugly; but with still more reason may we say that she rejected it because the acquirement of flute-playing contributes nothing to the mind, since to Athene we ascribe knowledge and art.

Accordingly we reject the professional instruments and also **15** the professional mode of education in music—and by professional we mean that which is adopted in contests, for in this the performer practises the art, not for the sake of his own improvement, but in order to give pleasure, and that of a vulgar sort, to his hearers. For this reason the execution of such

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Plato, Rep. iii. 399 D.

VIII. 6 music is not the part of a freeman but of a paid performer, and  
 16 the result is that the performers are vulgarized, for the end at which they aim is bad<sup>1</sup>. The vulgarity of the spectator tends to lower the character of the music and therefore of the performers; they look to him—he makes them what they are, and fashions even their bodies by the movements which he expects them to exhibit.

7 We have also to consider rhythms and harmonies. Shall we use them all in education or make a distinction? and shall the distinction be that which is made by those who are engaged in education, or shall it be some other? For we see that music is produced by melody and rhythm, and we ought to know what influence these have respectively on education, and whether we should prefer excellence in melody or excellence in  
 2 rhythm. But as the subject has been very well treated by many musicians of the present day, and also by philosophers who have had considerable experience of musical education, to these we would refer the more exact student of the subject; we shall only speak of it now after the manner of the legislator, having regard to general principles.

3 We accept the division of melodies proposed by certain philosophers into ethical melodies, melodies of action, and passionate or inspiring melodies, each having, as they say, a mode or harmony corresponding to it. But we maintain further that music should be studied, not for the sake of one, but of many benefits, that is to say, with a view to (1) education, (2) purgation (the word 'purgation' we use at present without explanation, but when hereafter we speak of poetry<sup>2</sup>, we will treat the subject with more precision); music may also

<sup>1</sup> Cp. Plato, *Laws*, iii. 700.

<sup>2</sup> Cp. *Poet.* c. 6, though the promise is really unfulfilled.

serve (3) for intellectual enjoyment, for relaxation and for **VIII. 7**  
recreation after exertion. It is clear, therefore, that all the <sup>1342 a</sup>  
harmonies must be employed by us, but not all of them in the  
same manner. In education ethical melodies are to be preferred,  
but we may listen to the melodies of action and passion when  
they are performed by others. For feelings such as pity and 4  
fear, or, again, enthusiasm, exist very strongly in some souls,  
and have more or less influence over all. Some persons fall  
into a religious frenzy, whom we see disenthralled by the use of  
mystic melodies, which bring healing and purgation to the soul.  
Those who are influenced by pity or fear and every emotional 5  
nature have a like experience, others in their degree are stirred  
by something which specially affects them, and all are in a  
manner purged and their souls lightened and delighted. The  
melodies of purgation likewise give an innocent pleasure to  
mankind. Such are the harmonies and the melodies in which 6  
those who perform music at the theatre should be invited to  
compete. But since the spectators are of two kinds—the  
one free and educated, and the other a vulgar crowd composed  
of mechanics, labourers and the like—there ought to be 7  
contests and exhibitions instituted for the relaxation of the  
second class also. And the melodies will correspond to their  
minds; for as their minds are perverted from the natural state,  
so there are exaggerated and corrupted harmonies which are  
in like manner a perversion. A man receives pleasure from  
what is natural to him, and therefore professional musicians  
may be allowed to practise this lower sort of music before an  
audience of a lower type. But, for the purpose of education, 8  
as I have already said, those modes and melodies should be  
employed which are ethical, such as the Dorian; though we  
may include any others which are approved by philosophers

- VIII. 7 who have had a musical education. The Socrates of the  
 9 Republic<sup>1</sup> is wrong in retaining only the Phrygian mode along  
 1342b with the Dorian, and the more so because he rejects the flute;  
 for the Phrygian is to the modes what the flute is to musical  
 instruments—both of them are exciting and emotional.
- 10 Poetry proves this, for Bacchic frenzy and all similar emotions  
 are most suitably expressed by the flute, and are better set to  
 the Phrygian than to any other harmony. The dithyramb, for  
 11 example, is acknowledged to be Phrygian, a fact of which the  
 connoisseurs of music offer many proofs, saying, among other  
 things, that Philoxenus, having attempted to compose his  
 Tales<sup>2</sup> as a dithyramb in the Dorian mode, found it impossible,  
 12 and fell back into the more appropriate Phrygian. All men  
 agree that the Dorian music is the gravest and manliest. And  
 whereas we say that the extremes should be avoided and the  
 mean followed, and whereas the Dorian is a mean between the  
 other harmonies [the Phrygian and the Lydian<sup>3</sup>], it is evident  
 that our youth should be taught the Dorian music.
- 13 Two principles have to be kept in view—what is possible,  
 what is becoming: at these every man ought to aim. But  
 even these are relative to age; the old, who have lost their  
 powers, cannot very well sing the severe melodies, and nature  
 herself seems to suggest that their songs should be of the  
 14 more relaxed kind. Wherefore the musicians likewise blame  
 Socrates, and with justice, for rejecting the relaxed harmonies  
 in education under the idea that they are intoxicating; not in the  
 ordinary sense of intoxication (for wine rather tends to excite  
 men), but because they have no strength in them. And so

<sup>1</sup> Plato, Rep. iii. 399.

<sup>2</sup> Retaining the MS. reading *μύθους*. Cp. Poet. c. 2. § 7.

<sup>3</sup> Cp. c. 5. § 22.

with a view to a time of life when men begin to grow old, **VIII. 7**  
they ought to practise the gentler harmonies and melodies as  
well as the others. And if there be any harmony, such as the 15  
Lydian above all others appears to be, which is suited to  
children of tender age, and possesses the elements both of order  
and of education, clearly [we ought to use it, for] education  
should be based upon three principles—the mean, the possible,  
the becoming, these three.



# INDEX

Abydos, v. 6, §§ 6, 13.

Account, power of calling magistrates to, in Sparta exercised by the Ephors, ii. 9, § 26; given by Solon to the people, ib. 12, § 5; iii. 11, § 8; and justly claimed by them, iii. 11; when exercised by all, a mark of democracy, iv. 14, §§ 4-6; vi. 2, § 5; 4, § 5.

Achaea [in Peloponnesus], v. 3, § 11.

Achaea [Pthiotis], ii. 9, § 3.

Achaean, the (in Colchis), viii. 4, § 3.

Achilles, iii. 5, § 9.

Acquisition, the art of, (i) *the natural*, i. 9, § 12; 11, §§ 1, 2; includes war [in certain cases] and hunting, i. 7, § 5; 8, § 12; vii. 14, § 21; a part of household management, i. 4, § 1; 8, §§ 13-15; 9, §§ 1-8; 10, §§ 1-4; 11, § 2; has a limit, ib. 8, § 14; 9, §§ 13-18: (ii) *that which is contrary to nature*, including (a) exchange which goes beyond the need of life, i. 9, §§ 2-5; 10, § 4; 11, § 3; (b) usury, ib. 10, § 4; 11, § 3; (c) trade, ib. 9, § 4; 10, § 4; 11, § 3; (d) service for hire, ib. 11, § 3: (iii) *the intermediate kind*, ib. § 4.

Adamas, v. 10, § 18.

Admiral, office of (at Sparta), ii. 9, § 33.

Aegina, iv. 4, § 21; v. 6, § 9.

Aenos, in Thrace, v. 10, § 18.

Aesymnetes, the, or dictators of ancient Hellas, iii. 14, §§ 8-10, 14; iv. 10, § 2; always received a guard, iii. 15, § 16.

Agamemnon, iii. 5, § 9; 14, § 4; 16, § 10.

Agasilaus, King of Sparta, v. 7, § 3.

Agriculture, the employment followed by the greater part of mankind, i. 8, § 7; works upon, ib. 11, § 7; ancient legislation to encourage, vi. 4, §§ 8-10.

Alcaeus, iii. 14, § 10.

Alcyone, mother of Diocles the Corinthian, ii. 12, § 8.

Aleuadae, the, at Larissa, v. 6, § 13.

Aliens, resident, how distinguished from citizens, iii. 1, § 4; obliged to have a patron, ib.; enrolled by Cleisthenes in the tribes, ib. 2, § 3; admitted to citizenship at Syracuse, v. 3, § 13.

Alliance, an, how different from a state, ii. 2, § 3; iii. 9, §§ 6-8.

Almsgiving, demoralizing effects of, vi. 5, § 7.

Alternation in office, characteristic of constitutional governments, i. 1, § 2; 12, § 2; ii. 2, §§ 4-7; iii. 4, §§ 10, 14-17; 6, §§ 9, 10; 16, §§ 2, 3; 17, § 4; vi. 2, §§ 2, 5; vii. 14, §§ 1-5.

Amadocus (? king of the Odrysians), v. 10, § 24.

Amasis, king of Egypt, i. 12, § 2.

Ambition, a cause of crime, ii. 7,



- §§ 10-14, 18; 9, § 28; encouraged by the Spartan law-giver, *ib.* 9, § 28; a motive of revolutions, *ii.* 7, §§ 10, 18; *v.* 7, § 4; 10, § 5.
- Ambracia, *v.* 3, § 10; 4, § 9; 10, § 16.
- Amphipolis, *v.* 3, § 13; 6, § 8.
- Amyntas the Little (? father of Philip), *v.* 10, § 16.
- Anaxilaus, tyranny of, at Rhegium, *v.* 12, § 13.
- Andria, ancient name of the common meals at Sparta, *ii.* 10, § 5.
- Androdamas, of Rhegium, *ii.* 12, § 14.
- Andros, *ii.* 9, § 20.
- Animals, the, intention of Nature in denying speech to, *i.* 2, §§ 10-12; under the dominion of man, *ib.* 5, § 7; tame better than wild, *ib.*; only differ from slaves in not being able to apprehend reason, *ib.* § 9; their various modes of life, *ib.* 8, §§ 4-6; supply their offspring with food in different ways, *ib.* § 10; created for the sake of man, *ib.* §§ 9-12; produce offspring resembling their parents, *ii.* 3, § 9; cannot form a state, *iii.* 9, § 6; lead a life of nature, not of reason, *vii.* 13, § 12; the parts of animals an illustration of the parts of the state, *iv.* 4, §§ 7-9; the offspring of young animals often small and ill-developed, *vii.* 16, § 6.
- Antileon, tyrant at Chalcis, *v.* 12, § 12.
- Antimenides, brother of Alcaeus, *iii.* 14, § 9.
- Antissa, in Lesbos, *v.* 3, § 12.
- Antisthenes, *iii.* 13, § 14.
- Aphytaeans, the (in Pallènè), *vi.* 4, § 10.
- Apollodorus of Lemnos, *i.* 11, § 7.
- Apollonia (on the Adriatic), *iv.* 4, § 5.
- Apollonia (on the Euxine), *v.* 3, § 13; *ib.* 6, § 9.
- Appeal, a court of, allowed by Hippodamus, *ii.* 8, § 4.
- Appetitive principle, the, of the soul, *i.* 5, § 6; *iii.* 4, § 6; 16, § 5; *vii.* 15, §§ 9, 10.
- Arbitrator, the judge should not be made into an, *ii.* 8, § 13; the middle class the arbitrators of the state, *iv.* 12, § 5.
- Arcadia, *ii.* 2, § 3; *ib.* 9, §§ 3, 11.
- Archelaus, king of Macedonia, *v.* 10, §§ 17-20.
- Archias of Thebes, *v.* 6, § 15.
- Archilochus, quoted, *vii.* 7, § 6.
- Archons, the duties of, *vi.* 8, § 20; the single Archon at Epidamnus, *iii.* 16, § 1; *v.* 1, § 12.
- Archytas, of Tarentum, *viii.* 6, § 2.
- Areopagus, the, at Athens (*see* Council of Areopagus).
- Argo, the, *iii.* 13, § 16.
- Argos, use of ostracism at, *v.* 3, § 3; the political changes after 'Hebdome,' *ib.* 3, § 7; the oligarchical revolution after the battle of Mantinea, *ib.* 4, § 9; the tyranny of Pheidon, *ib.* 10, § 6; enmity of the Argives to the Lacedaemonians, *ii.* 9, §§ 3, 11.
- Ariobarzanes, *v.* 10, § 25.
- Aristocracy, characterized by election for merit, *ii.* 11, §§ 9, 11; *iv.* 8, § 7; *v.* 7, § 1; distinguished from the perfect state, as being a government of men who are only good relatively to the constitution, *iv.* 7, § 2 (*but* *cp.* *iii.* 4, § 5); so called because the best rule or the best interests of the state are consulted, *iii.* 7,

§ 3; not a perversion, iv. 8, § 1; analogous to oligarchy (1) because the few rule, v. 7, § 1; (2) because birth and education commonly accompany wealth, iv. 8, § 3;—to royalty as a government of the best, ib. 10, § 2; preferable to royalty, because the good are more than one, iii. 15, § 10; how distinguished from oligarchy and constitutional government, iv. 7; 8; 14, § 10; v. 7, §§ 5-9 (cp. ii. 11, §§ 5-10); usually degenerates into oligarchy, iii. 7, § 5; 15, § 11; iv. 2, § 2; v. 7, § 7; 8, § 7;—causes of revolutions in aristocracies, v. 7; the means of their preservation, ib. 8, §§ 5-7; aristocracy less stable than constitutional government, ib. 7, § 6; liable to danger because the rich have too much power, ib. 12, § 6; might be combined with democracy if the magistrates were unpaid and office open to all, ib. 8, § 17 (cp. vi. 4, § 6);—magistracies peculiar to aristocracy, iv. 15, § 10; vi. 8, §§ 22, 24; aristocratical modes of appointing magistrates and judges, iv. 15, §§ 20, 21; 16, § 8; practice of trying all suits by the same magistrates, aristocratical, ii. 11, § 8; iii. 1, § 10;—the people naturally suited to an aristocracy, iii. 17, §§ 3-7.

Aristogeiton, conspiracy of Harmodius and, v. 10, § 15.

Aristophanes, ii. 4, § 6.

Arrhibaeus, king of the Lyncestians, v. 10, § 17.

Art, works of, wherein different from realities, iii. 11, § 4.

Artapanes, v. 10, § 21.

Artisan, the employments of the, devoid of moral excellence, i. 13,

§§ 13, 14; iii. 5, § 5; vi. 4, § 12; vii. 9, §§ 3, 7; artisans sometimes public slaves, ii. 7, § 22; only admitted to office in democracies, iii. 4, § 12; often acquire wealth, ib. 5, § 6; the question whether they are citizens, ib. 5; necessary to the existence of the state, iv. 4, §§ 9, 21; not a part of the state, vii. 4, § 6; should be debarred from the 'Freemen's Agora,' ib. 12, § 3.

Arts, the, require instruments, both living and lifeless, i. 4; some arts subservient to others, ib. 8, § 2; 10, §§ 1-4; the arts have a limit in their means though not in their end, ib. 8, § 14; 9, § 13; both the means and the end ought to be within our control, vii. 13, § 2; amount of knowledge which a freeman is permitted in the arts, i. 11, § 1; viii. 2, § 5; degrees of excellence in them, i. 11, § 6; viii. 2, §§ 5, 6; changes in, advantageous, ii. 8, § 18; iii. 15, § 4; the analogy of, not to be extended to the laws, ii. 8, § 24; iii. 15, § 4; exist for the benefit of those under them, iii. 6, §§ 7-9; by whom should the artist be judged? ib. 11, §§ 10-14 (cp. viii. 6, §§ 1-4); the arts aim at some good, iii. 12, § 1; justice of the different claims to political superiority illustrated from the arts, ib. 12, §§ 4-8; law of proportion in the arts, ib. 13, § 21; the problems of the arts, an illustration of the problems of politics, iv. 1, §§ 1-4; the arts have to supply the deficiencies of Nature, vii. 17, § 15.

Asia, ii. 10, § 3; iv. 3, § 3; the Asiatics better fitted for slavery

than the Hellenes, iii. 14, § 6; vii. 7, § 2; cannibal tribes in Asia, viii. 4, § 3.

Assembly, the, payment of, evil effects of the practice, ii. 7, § 19; iv. 6, § 5; vi. 2, § 6; how they may be counteracted, vi. 5, § 5; —power monopolized by, in extreme democracies, iv. 6, § 5; 14, § 7; v. 5, § 10; 6, § 17; 9, § 14; vi. 2, § 5; 4, § 15 (cp. ii. 12, § 4; v. 11, §§ 11, 12); meetings should be infrequent, vi. 5, § 5 (cp. iv. 14, §§ 4, 5); character of, in the different kinds of democracies, iv. 14, §§ 4-7; vi. 2, §§ 5-7; in oligarchies, iv. 14, §§ 8-11 (cp. iii. 1, § 10); provision in case of equal voting in assemblies, vi. 3, § 6:—at Carthage, ii. 11, §§ 5-6; in Crete, ib. 10, § 7; 11, § 6; at Sparta, ib. 11, § 6.

Astyages, v. 10, § 24.

Atarneus (in Mysia), ii. 7, § 17.

Athene, viii. 6, § 13.

Athens; payment of the dicasteries commenced by Pericles, ii. 12, § 4 (cp. iv. 6, § 5; vi. 2, § 6); evil effects of the practice, ii. 7, § 19; plan introduced by Diophantus for the regulation of the public slaves, ib. § 23; maintenance at the public expense of the children of citizens who had fallen in battle, ib. 8, § 6; the Solonian constitution, ib. 7, § 6; 12, §§ 1-6; iii. 11, § 8; the Areopagus (*see* Council of Areopagus); the Court of Phreatto, iv. 16, § 3; effect of the Persian war upon Athens, ii. 12, § 5; v. 4, § 8; viii. 6, § 11; introduction of flute-playing at Athens after the Persian war, viii. 6, § 11; the legislation of Draco, ii. 12, § 13; the expulsion of the

tyrants, iii. 2, § 3; v. 12, § 5; the use of ostracism, v. 3, § 3 (cp. iii. 13, § 15); number of sailors in the population, iv. 4, § 21; new citizens introduced by Cleisthenes, iii. 2, § 3; the tribes redivided by him, vi. 4, § 17; treatment of the subject cities by Athens, iii. 13, § 19; democratical governments forced upon the allies by the Athenians, iv. 11, § 18; v. 7, § 14; great losses of the nobility in the Peloponnesian War, v. 3, § 7; difference of sentiment between the Athenians and the citizens of the Piræus, ib. § 15; origin of the war between Athens and Mitylene, ib. 4, § 6; defeat of the Athenian expedition to Sicily, ib. § 9; government of the Four Hundred, ib. § 13; 6, § 6; of the Thirty, ib. 6, § 6; rise of Peisistratus to the tyranny, ib. 5, § 9; 10, § 6; his trial before the Areopagus, ib. 12, § 2; conspiracy of Harmodius and Aristogeiton, ib. 10, § 15; magistracy of the Eleven, vi. 8, § 11.

Athlete, the temperament of an, not suited to the life of the citizen, vii. 16, § 12; viii. 4.

Athletics: *see* Gymnastic Exercises.

Attalus, v. 10, § 16.

Ausones, the, or Opici, vii. 10, § 5.

Autophradates, satrap of Lydia, ii. 7, § 17.

Avarice, encouraged at Sparta, ii. 9, §§ 13, 28, 37; at Carthage, ib. 11, § 11; a frequent cause of crime, ib. 7, § 19; 9, § 28; of revolution, v. 2, § 5; 3, § 1.

Babylonia, ii. 6, § 6; Babylon, iii. 3, § 5; Babylonians, ib. 13, § 19.

- Bacchiadae, the, at Corinth, ii. 12, § 8.
- Barbarians, the, do not distinguish the female and the slave, i. 2, § 4; generally under kingly rule, ib. § 6 (cp. iii. 14, § 6); regarded by the Hellenes as natural slaves, i. 6, § 6; their nobility not recognized by the Hellenes, ib. § 7; prevalence of barter among them, ib. 8, § 5.
- Barter: *see* Exchange.
- Basilidae, the, v. 6, § 5.
- Bequest, freedom of, at Sparta, ii. 9, § 14; should be forbidden by law, v. 8, § 20.
- Birth, illegitimate, not a disqualification for citizenship in extreme democracies, iii. 5, § 7; vi. 4, § 16.
- Best, the Islands of the, vii. 15, § 4.
- Body, the, ruled according to nature by the soul, i. 5, §§ 4-7; the body of the freeman not always distinguished by nature from that of the slave, ib. § 10; the beauty of the body more obvious than that of the soul, ib. § 11; the interest of, identical with that of the soul, ib. 6, § 10; the goods of, for the sake of the soul, vii. 1, §§ 8, 9; prior to the soul, ib. 15, § 10; must not be educated at the same time as the mind, viii. 3, § 13; 4, § 9.
- Body, habit of, to be required in the citizen, vii. 16, § 12; viii. 3, § 13.
- Byzantium, iv. 4, § 21; v. 3, § 12.
- Camicus, ii. 10, § 4.
- Carthage, the constitution of, analogous to those of Lacedaemon and Crete, ii. 11, §§ 1, 5; an aristocracy with oligarchical and democratical features, ib. §§ 5-10; iv. 7, § 4; v. 12, § 14; never had a revolution, ii. 11, §§ 2, 15; v. 12, § 14; never under a tyranny, ii. 11, § 2 (*but* cp. v. 12, § 12); the kings partly chosen for ability, ii. 11, §§ 4-9; influence of wealth, ib. §§ 9-13; plurality of offices, ib. § 13; the magistrates judges in criminal cases, ib. § 7; iii. 1, §§ 10, 11; honours paid to military merit, vii. 2, § 10; the conspiracy of Hanno, v. 7, § 4; custom of sending out the poorer citizens to the colonies, ii. 11, § 15; vi. 5, § 9; treaties between the Carthaginians and the Tyrrhenians, iii. 9, § 6.
- Catana, ii. 12, § 6.
- Cavalry, importance of, in the ancient oligarchies, iv. 3, § 3; 13, § 10; vi. 7, § 1 (cp. the government of 'the knights' in Eretria, v. 6, § 14).
- Celts, the, ii. 9, § 7; vii. 2, § 10; 17, § 3.
- Chalcidian cities, the (in Italy and Sicily), ii. 12, § 6;—(of Thrace), ib. § 14.
- Chalcis, in Euboea, iv. 3, § 3; v. 4, § 9; ib. 12, § 12.
- Chares, the Athenian general, v. 6, § 9.
- of Paros, a writer on Agriculture, i. 11, § 7.
- Charicles, leader of a party among the Thirty at Athens, v. 6, § 6.
- Charilaus, king of Sparta, ii. 10, § 2; v. 12, § 12.
- Charondas, used the word *δμοσῖνοι* for the members of a family, i. 2, § 5; legislated for Catana and the other Chalcidian cities in Italy and Sicily, ii. 12, § 6; said to have been the disciple of Zaleucus, ib. § 7;

- the first to make laws against perjury, *ib.* § 11; famous for the accuracy of his legislation, *ib.*; belonged to the middle class, *iv.* 11, § 15; compelled the rich to attend the law-courts, *ib.* 13, § 2.
- Child, the, relation of, and the parent, *i.* 2, § 2; 3, § 1; the virtue of, *ib.* 13, §§ 3-12; ruled like a king by the elder or parent, *ib.* 2, § 6; 7, § 1; 12, § 3; has the deliberative faculty, but immature, *ib.* 13, § 7 (*cp.* *vii.* 15, § 10).
- Children, ought to be educated with regard to the constitution, *i.* 13, § 15; *v.* 9, §§ 11-15; *viii.* 1; recognized in certain countries by their resemblance to their parents, *ii.* 3, § 9; the children of citizens who died in battle reared at the public expense, *ib.* 8, § 6; children, in what sense citizens, *iii.* 1, § 5; 5, § 2; education of the children of kings, *ib.* 4, § 8; bad education of the children of the rich, *iv.* 11, §§ 4-8; *v.* 9, §§ 11-15; licence permitted to children in democracies and tyrannies, *vi.* 4, § 20; exposure of deformed children, *vii.* 16, § 15; way in which children should be reared, *ib.* 17; they should not see or hear anything indecent, *ib.* §§ 7-11; *viii.* 5, §§ 19-21; what their education should include, *viii.* 2; 3; why they ought to learn music and drawing, *ib.* 3, § 2 *fol.*; degree to which they should carry musical proficiency, *ib.* 6, §§ 1-8; must not carry gymnastic exercise too far, *ib.* 4; must not labour with body and mind at once, *ib.* § 9; restlessness of young children, *ib.* 6, § 2; their toys, *ib.*; their crying not to be checked, *vii.* 17, § 6.
- Children, Plato's community of, *see* Women and Children.
- Children, Guardians of, *iv.* 15, §§ 9, 13; *vi.* 8, § 22.
- Chios, *iii.* 13, § 19; *iv.* 4, § 21; *v.* 3, § 12; 6, § 16.
- Chones, the, in southern Italy, *vii.* 10, § 5.
- Chytrum, a part of Clazomenae, *v.* 3, § 15.
- Cinadon, *v.* 7, § 3.
- Citizen, the, must both rule and obey, *i.* 1, § 2; 12, § 2; *ii.* 2, §§ 4-7; 11, § 14; *iii.* 4, §§ 10-16; 5, § 1; 6, §§ 9-11; 13, § 12; 16, §§ 2, 3; 17, § 4; *vi.* 2, § 5; *vii.* 9, §§ 4-8; 14, §§ 1-8; must have leisure, *ii.* 9, § 2; 11, §§ 10, 12; *vii.* 9, §§ 4, 7; 12, § 7; belongs to the state, *viii.* 1, § 4;—necessity of defining the word, *iii.* 1, § 2 *fol.*; children and old men, in what sense citizens, *ib.* § 5; 5, § 2; residence and legal rights, inadequate definitions, *ib.* 1, §§ 4, 5; not enough that the parents were citizens, *ib.* 2, §§ 1-3; the citizen must share in the administration of the state, *ib.* 1, §§ 5-12; 2, §§ 3-5; 5; 13, § 12; differs under each form of government, *ib.* 1, § 9; 5, § 5; 13, § 12; *iv.* 7, § 2; the question about citizens admitted after a revolution, *iii.* 2, §§ 3-5;—the virtue of the good citizen: is it identical with that of the good man? *ib.* 4; 5, § 10; 18; *vii.* 14, § 8, the virtue of the citizen in the perfect state, *iii.* 4, § 5; 13, § 12;—not all citizens who are necessary to the state, *ib.* 5, § 2; *vii.* 9, § 10; the artisans

- not to be citizens, iii. 5; vii. 9, § 3; nor the sailors, vii. 6, §§ 7, 8; is the life of the citizen the best? *ib.* 2; 3; the character necessary in the citizens, *ib.* 7; their habit of body, *ib.* 16, § 12; viii. 3, § 13; 4.
- Citizenship, rights of, conferred on strangers in early times at Sparta, ii. 9, § 17; lost at Sparta, by failure to contribute to the common meals, *ib.* § 32; 10, § 7; given to persons of illegitimate birth in extreme democracies, iii. 5, § 7; vi. 4, § 16; exclusion from, sometimes concealed, iii. 5, § 9; easily pretended in a large state, vii. 4, § 14.
- City, the: *see* State.
- Clazomenae, v. 3, § 15.
- Cleander, tyrant of Gela, v. 12, § 13.
- Cleisthenes, tyrant of Sicyon, v. 12, §§ 1, 12.
- , the Athenian, iii. 2, § 3; vi. 4, § 18.
- Cleomenes (king of Sparta), v. 3, § 7.
- Cleopatra (the widow of Perdiccas), v. 10, § 17.
- Cleotimus, leader of a revolution at Amphipolis, v. 6, § 8.
- Clubs; at Carthage, ii. 11, § 3; at Abydos, v. 6, §§ 6, 13; hated by tyrants, ii. 11, § 5.
- Cnidus, v. 6, §§ 4, 16.
- Codrus, king of Athens, v. 10, § 8.
- Colonies, of Carthage, ii. 11, § 15; vi. 5, § 9; oligarchies formed in colonies by the first settlers, iv. 4, § 5; dissensions in, a cause of revolutions, v. 3, §§ 11–14.
- Colophon, of, iv. 4, § 5; v. 3, § 15.
- Commerce, divisions of, i. 11, § 3; its advantages and disadvantages, vii. 6;—commercial treaties, iii. 9, § 6.
- Common meals, hostility of the tyrant to, v. 11, § 5; first established in Italy, vii. 10, §§ 1–8; how they should be arranged, *ib.* §§ 10–12; the young not allowed to share in them, *ib.* 17, § 11;—of the magistrates, vi. 2, § 7; vii. 12, § 1; of the priests, vii. 12, § 6;—(at Carthage), ii. 11, § 3;—(in Crete), *ib.* 5, § 15; the original of the Spartan, *ib.* 10, § 5; maintained at the public cost, *ib.* §§ 7–10;—(at Sparta), make property to some degree common, *ib.* 5, § 15; badly regulated, *ib.* 9, §§ 31, 32; 10, § 7; anciently called 'andria,' *ib.* 10, § 5.
- Community of women and children, the, proposed by Plato, ii. 1, § 3; arguments against, ii. 3; 4;—of property, *ib.* 5; vii. 10, § 9.
- Confederacy, difference between a, and a state, ii. 2, § 3; iii. 9, §§ 6–8.
- Constitution, regard must be had to the, in education, i. 13, § 15; v. 9, §§ 11–15; viii. 1; the best constitution supposed by some to be a combination of all existing forms, ii. 6, § 17 (*cp.* iv. 1, § 6; 7, § 4; 9, § 7); the permanence of a constitution only secured by the consent of all classes, ii. 9, § 22; iv. 9, § 10; 12, § 6; v. 8, § 5; 9, §§ 5–10; vi. 6, § 2; 7, § 4; older constitutions more simple than later, ii. 10, § 1; contentment with a constitution not always a proof of its excellence, *ib.* 10, § 12 (*but cp.* c. 11, §§ 2, 15); in each constitution the citizen different, iii. 1, § 9; 5, § 5; 13, § 12;



- iv. 7, § 2; relation of the constitution and the state, iii. 1, § 1; 3, § 9; 6, § 1; 7, § 2; iv. 1, § 10; 3, § 5; definition of the word, iii. 1, § 1; 6, § 1; iv. 1, § 10; 3, § 5; the constitution the life of the state, iv. 11, § 3; the people naturally suited to each constitution, iii. 17; the constitution sometimes nominally unchanged after a revolution, iv. 5, §§ 3, 4 (cp. v. 1, § 8); the encroachments of the rich often more dangerous to the constitution than those of the poor, iv. 12, § 6; life according to the constitution no slavery, v. 9, § 15; vii. 3, §§ 1-3.
- Corinth, iii. 9, § 9; tyranny of Timophanes, v. 6, § 12; tyranny of the Cypselids, ib. 10, § 6; 11, § 9; its duration, ib. 12, §§ 3, 4; family of the Bacchiadae, ii. 12, § 8.
- Cos, v. 5, § 2.
- Cosmi, the (in Crete), to the Ephors, ii. 10, §§ 6-14.
- Cotys, king of the Odrysians in Thrace, v. 10, § 18.
- Council of Areopagus, the, ii. 12, §§ 2, 4; v. 4, § 8; 12, § 2.
- Councillors and warriors, the two highest classes in the state, iv. 4, §§ 10-17; vii. 4, §§ 4-7; 8, § 7; 9, §§ 4-10.
- Crataeus, one of the assassins of Archelaus, v. 10, § 17.
- Crete, favourable position of, ii. 10, §§ 3, 12, 16; visit of Lycurgus to, ib. § 2;—the Cretan constitution the original of the Lacedaemonian, ib. §§ 1-3; analogous to the Carthaginian, ib. 11, § 1; the attention of the legislator directed solely to war, vii. 2, § 9;—the common tables introduced into Crete by Minos, ib. 10, §§ 2, 6; called by the Cretans, *ἀνδρία*, ii. 10, § 5; object of the institution, ii. 5, § 15; better managed in Crete than at Lacedaemon, ib. 9, §§ 30-33; 10, §§ 7-9;—frequency of sedition in Crete, ib. 10, §§ 14, 15;—slaves in Crete forbidden gymnastic exercises and the use of arms, ib. 5, § 19; the Perioeci in Crete well managed, ib. 9, § 3; 10, §§ 15, 16; governed by the laws of Minos, ib. 10, § 3; analogy of the Cretan Perioeci with the Helots, ib. § 5;—existence of caste in Crete, vii. 10, § 1.
- Custom, power of, ii. 8, § 24; iv. 5, § 3; vii. 13, §§ 11-13; a sort of justice, i. 6, § 5.
- Cyclopes, the, i. 2, § 7.
- Cyme, in Aeolis, v. 5, § 4.
- Cypselids, the, v. 11, § 9; ib. 12, §§ 3, 4.
- Cypselus of Corinth, v. 10, § 6; 12, § 3.
- Cyrene, vi. 4, §§ 17, 18.
- Cyrus, king of Persia, v. 10, §§ 8, 24.
- Daedalus, i. 4, § 3.
- Dancing, viii. 5, § 3.
- Daphnaeus, of Syracuse, v. 5, § 10.
- Darius, son of Xerxes, v. 10, § 21.
- Decamnichus, v. 10, § 20.
- Deliberation, the right to share in, essential to the citizen, iii. 1; §§ 6-12; 2, § 5; 13, § 12 (cp. vii. 8, § 7).
- Delphi, v. 4, § 5; the Delphian knife, i. 2, § 3.
- Demagogues, the authors and flatterers of the extreme democracy, ii. 12, §§ 4-6; iv. 4, §§ 25-31; v. 9, § 10; 11, §§ 11, 12; vi. 4, §§ 15-17; confiscate



the property of the rich, v. 5, § 5; vi. 5, § 3; often bring about revolutions, v. 3, § 4; 5, §§ 1-5; in ancient times became tyrants, *ib.* 5, §§ 6-10; 10, §§ 4, 6:—in oligarchies, *ib.* 6, § 5.

Demiurgi, magistrates at Larissa, iii. 2, § 2.

Democracy, the government of the many in their own interests, iii. 7, § 5; 8, § 2; iv. 11, § 17; akin to tyranny, iv. 4, § 27; v. 10, §§ 11, 30, 35; 11, § 12; the only possible government in large states, iii. 15, § 12; iv. 6, § 5; 13, § 10 (*cp.* vi. 5, § 5); the perversion of constitutional government, iii. 7, § 5; iv. 2, §§ 1, 2; Plato wrong in calling democracy the worst of good constitutions, but the best of bad ones, iv. 2, § 3; insufficiency of the common definitions of democracy, iii. 8; iv. 4, §§ 1-6; more forms of democracy than one, iv. 1, § 8; 4, §§ 20-22; 11, § 20; 12, § 3; 13, § 12; vi. 1, § 2; the forms enumerated, iv. 4, §§ 22-31; 6, §§ 1-7; 12, § 3; 14, §§ 1-7; vi. 4; growth of the last and worst form, ii. 12, § 4; iii. 4, § 12; 6, §§ 9-11; iv. 6, § 5; v. 5, §§ 6-11; 6, §§ 6-8; 9, § 10; vi. 2, §§ 5-9; 4, §§ 15-20 (*cp.* v. 10, § 12; 11, § 11);—democracy more stable than oligarchy, iv. 11, § 14; v. 1, § 15; 7, § 6 (*cp.* v. 3, § 8); causes of revolution in democracies: anarchy, v. 3, § 5; vi. 4, § 17; demagogic practices, v. 3, § 4; 5; 9, § 10; vi. 5, § 5; disproportionate increase, v. 3, §§ 6-8; dissatisfaction of the notables, *ib.* § 14 (*cp.* ii. 7, §§ 10, 18); long tenure or greatness of office, v. 5, § 8; 8, § 7; the

means of their preservation, iv. 12, § 4; 13, §§ 5-8; 14, § 12; v. 8; vi. 4, § 17; 5; democracy (especially the extreme form) apt to pass into tyranny, iv. 11, § 11; v. 5, §§ 6-10; 8, § 7; 10, § 30; Plato censured for supposing that the change is necessarily to tyranny, v. 12, § 10;—Athens the champion of democracy in Hellas, iv. 11, § 18; v. 7, § 14; the democratic principle represented at Sparta by the Ephoralty, ii. 6, § 17; 9, § 21; 10, § 10; iv. 9, § 9;—characteristics of democracy: liberty and equality for all, iii. 8, § 7; iv. 4, §§ 22, 23; 8, § 7; v. 1, § 3; 8, § 6; 9, §§ 14, 15; vi. 2, §§ 1-4; 9; 4, § 20; the use of the lot, ii. 11, § 7; 12, § 3; iv. 9, § 4; 15, § 19; vi. 2, §§ 5, 8; employment of a large number of magistrates, ii. 11, § 14; short tenure of office, v. 8, § 6; vi. 2, §§ 5, 8; payment of the citizens, ii. 7, § 19; 12, § 4; iv. 6, § 5; 9, § 2; vi. 2, §§ 6, 7; 5, § 5; carelessness in the admission of artisans and persons of illegitimate birth to citizenship, iii. 4, § 12; 5, §§ 7, 8; vi. 4, § 16; licence allowed to women and children, v. 11, § 11; vi. 4, § 20;—ostracism originally a democratic institution, iii. 13, § 15; v. 3, § 3; democratical tricks to keep the power in the hands of the people, iv. 13, § 5; suggestions for the improvement of democracy, *ib.* 14, § 12; vi. 5, §§ 5-11; the magistrates peculiar to democracy, iv. 15, § 11; vi. 8, §§ 17, 24; democratical modes of appointing magistrates and judges, iv. 15, § 19; 16, § 8;—

character and powers of the assembly, *ib.* 14, §§ 1-7;—the best material of a democracy, *ib.* 6, § 2; *vi.* 4, § 1; the position suitable to a democracy, *vii.* 11, § 5; democracy always supported by the sailors and light armed, *vi.* 7, §§ 1, 2.

Derdas (? King of Elymaea), *v.* 10, § 16.

Devices, political, of oligarchies and democracies, *iv.* 13, §§ 1-8; their inutility, *v.* 8, § 4.

Diagoras, an Eretrian, *v.* 6, § 14.

Dicaea, 'the Pharsalian mare,' *ii.* 3, § 9.

Dicasteries, the Athenian, *ii.* 12, § 4.

Dictators: *see* Aesymnetes.

Diocles, *ii.* 12, §§ 8-11.

Dion, *v.* 10, §§ 23, 28, 31, 32.

Dionysius the Elder, *i.* 11, §§ 11, 12; *iii.* 15, § 16; *v.* 5, §§ 8, 10; 7, § 10; 10, § 6; 11, § 10.

Dionysius the Younger, *v.* 10, §§ 23, 28, 31, 32.

Diophantus, *ii.* 7, § 23.

Directors of Education, *vii.* 17, §§ 5, 7; of Gymnastics, *vi.* 8, § 22.

Dorian Harmony, the: *see* Harmony.

Dowries, *ii.* 7, § 3; 9, § 15.

Doxander, *v.* 4, § 6.

Draco, *ii.* 12, § 13.

Drawing, a branch of education, *viii.* 3, §§ 1, 12.

Dynasty, or Family Oligarchy: *see* Oligarchy.

Ecphantides (the ancient comic poet), *viii.* 6, § 12.

Education, may be directed to a wrong end, *ii.* 7, §§ 8, 9; must have regard to the constitution, *i.* 13, § 15; *v.* 9, § 11; *viii.* 1; the great means

of uniting the state, *ii.* 5, §§ 18-21; special, for the ruler, *iii.* 4, § 8 (*cp.* *vii.* 14, § 6); confers a claim to pre-eminence in the state, *iii.* 13, § 1 (*cp.* *c.* 9, §§ 14, 15; 12, §§ 8, 9; *iv.* 8, §§ 2-5); excellence of the Spartan education, *iv.* 9, § 7; *viii.* 1, § 4 (*but cp.* *viii.* 4, §§ 1-7); bad education of the rich, *iv.* 11, § 6; *v.* 9, § 13; hostility of the tyrant to education, *v.* 11, § 5; education necessary to supplement habit, *vii.* 13, § 13; 17, § 15; the special business of the legislator, *viii.* 1, § 1; wrong notions of education prevalent in Hellas, *vii.* 14, § 15; *viii.* 1, § 3; 4, § 6; the periods of education, *vii.* 17; *viii.* 4, §§ 7-9; necessity of a common system of education, *viii.* 1, § 3 (*cp.* *ii.* 7, § 8; and *iv.* 9, § 7); should education have an ethical or a practical aim? *viii.* 2; 3; 5; should it include music? *ib.* 3; 5; 6; what instruments and harmonies are to be used? *ib.* 6, §§ 8-16; 7; education not to be directed to a single end, *ib.* 4, § 2; the proper place of gymnastics in education, *ib.* 3, § 13; 4; the education of mind and body not to be carried on together, *ib.* 4, § 9; writers upon musical education, *ib.* 5, § 23; 7, §§ 2, 3, 8, 11, 14; musical education a kind of rattle to older children, *ib.* 6, § 2; the three principles of education, *ib.* 7, § 15:—Directors of Education, *vii.* 17, §§ 5, 7.

Egypt, *iii.* 15, § 4; *v.* 11, § 9; *vii.* 10, §§ 1-6, 8.

Eleven, the, at Athens, *vi.* 8, § 11.

Elis, *v.* 6, § 11.

Elymaea, *v.* 10, § 17.

Empire, unnecessary to the happiness of states, vii. 2; 3; 14, §§ 12-22.

End, the, the completed nature of each thing, i. 2, § 8; has no limit in the arts, ib. 8, § 14; 9, § 13; may agree or disagree with the means, vii. 13, § 2; contains an element of pleasure, viii. 5, § 13.

Ephialtes, ii. 12, § 4.

Ephors, the, a democratic element at Sparta, ii. 6, § 17; 9, §§ 20-22; 10, § 10; iv. 9, § 9; their corruption and licence, ii. 9, §§ 19-24; 10, § 12; greatness of their power, ib. 9, § 20; v. 11, § 2; the mode of their election childish, ii. 9, § 23; have the right of calling the magistrates to account, ib. § 26; try suits respecting contracts, iii. 1, § 10 (cp. ii. 9, § 23; 11, § 7); established by Theopompus as a check on the royal power, v. 11, §§ 1-3; correspond to the Cosmi in Crete, ii. 10, §§ 6, 10, 12; to the magistracy of 104 at Carthage, ib. 11, § 3.

Epidamnus, ii. 7, § 23; iii. 16, § 1; v. 1, §§ 10, 11; 4, § 7.

Epimenides, of Crete, i. 2, § 5.

Equality, how related to justice, iii. 9; 12; 13, §§ 11, 12; v. 1, § 2; 9, § 14; vii. 3, § 5; 14, §§ 1-6; (the true kind) no longer desired in Hellenic states, iv. 11, §§ 4-10, 19; v. 9, §§ 5-10; equality and liberty the aim of democracy, iii. 8, § 7; iv. 4, § 22; 8, § 7; v. 1, § 3; 8, § 6; 9, § 14; vi. 2, §§ 1-4, 9; the desire of equality a cause of sedition, v. 1, §§ 3-8; 2, §§ 2, 3; 3, § 2; when attained creates contentment,

ib. 7, § 6; equality either numerical or proportional, iii. 8; iv. 12, §§ 1-4; v. 1, §§ 12-16; vi. 3; states must not be based on one kind alone, v. 1, § 14; denied to the weak by the strong, vi. 3, § 6.

Equality of property, proposed by Phaleas, ii. 7; 12, § 12.

Eretria, iv. 3, § 3; v. 6, § 14.

Erythrae, v. 6, § 5.

Ethiopia, iv. 4, § 4.

Eubulus (tyrant of Atarneus), ii. 7, § 17.

Euripides, v. 10, § 20; quoted, i. 2, § 4; iii. 4, § 8; v. 9, § 15; vii. 7, § 8; viii. 5, § 2.

Europe, vii. 7, § 2.

Euryphon, ii. 8, § 1.

Eurytion, v. 6, § 15.

Euthykrates, a Phocian, v. 4, § 7.

Evagoras, tyrant of Salamis in Cyprus, v. 10, § 16.

Evil, i. 2, § 12.

Exchange, (1) according to nature (barter of necessities), i. 9, §§ 2-7; 10, §§ 3, 4; (2) contrary to nature (retail trade), i. 9, §§ 1-4, 9-12; 10, § 4; 11, § 3.

Executive element, the, in the state, iv. 14, § 2; 15; vi. 8.

Experience, value of, ii. 5, § 16; vii. 10, § 8.

Exposure of deformed children, justifiable, vii. 16, § 15.

Extremes, danger of, iv. 11, §§ 16-19; 12, §§ 4-6; vi. 5, §§ 1-4.

Faction, frequency of, in Crete, ii. 10, §§ 14-16; evil effects of, in Hellas, iv. 11, §§ 16-18; a cause of revolution in oligarchies, v. 6, § 9; less common in democracies, iv. 11, § 14; v. 1, §§ 15, 16; 7, § 6.

Family, the, the village a colony of, i. 2, § 6; (cp. c. 9, § 5); composed of three relations which are sanctioned by nature, ib. 2, § 2 foll.; 3, §§ 1-3; 12; 13, § 15; governed by the elder or parent who is their king, ib. 2, § 6; 7, § 1; 12, § 3; different kinds of rule within the family, ib. 12; the family a part of the state, ib. 13, § 15; ii. 9, § 5; the state more self-sufficient than the family, ii. 2, § 8.

Family oligarchy: *see* Oligarchy.

Family quarrels, a cause of revolutions, v. 4, §§ 5-7; 6, § 14; 10, § 3.

Father and child, relation of, i. 2, §§ 1-5; 3, §§ 1-3; 12.

Female, the, by nature different from the slave except among barbarians, i. 2, §§ 3, 4; subject by nature to the male, ib. 5, § 7; 12, § 1; 13, § 7; tendency of the female to produce offspring like the parents, ii. 3, § 9:—the union of male and female formed in obedience to a natural instinct, i. 2, § 2; the relation of male and female part of the household, ib. 3, § 2; 12, § 1. [*See* Woman.]

Finance, importance of, to the statesman, i. 11, § 13; the finances of Sparta badly managed, ii. 9, § 36; suggestions for the regulation of state finances, v. 8, §§ 15-19; vi. 5.

Four Hundred, government of the, at Athens, v. 4, § 13; 6, § 6.

Freedom, supposed by Hellenes not to exist among barbarians, i. 2, § 4; 6, § 6; is a reason why men claim authority in a state, iii. 9, § 14; 12, § 8; 13, §§ 2-5. [*See* Liberty.]

Freeman, the, in his relation to

the slave, i. 2, §§ 2-4; 3, § 4; 5; 6; not always outwardly distinguished by nature from him, ib. 5, § 10; rule over freemen more noble than rule over slaves, ib. § 2; vii. 3, § 2; 14, § 19; will never willingly submit to the tyrant, iv. 10, § 4; v. 11, § 12; has a natural right to rule, ii. 2, § 6; iii. 16, §§ 2, 3; must not be ashamed to obey his lawful superiors, v. 9, §§ 11-14; vii. 3, § 2; 14, §§ 1-5 (cp. iv. 11, § 6); may have a certain knowledge of the arts, viii. 2, §§ 5, 6; may be allowed to share in the pleasures of music, ib. 5, § 7.

Friendship, weakened by communism, ii. 4, §§ 5-9; the motive of society, ib. § 6; iii. 9, § 13; iv. 11, § 7 (cp. vi. 5, §§ 7-11); implies equality, iii. 16, § 13; friendship among the citizens hated by the tyrant, v. 11, § 5; friendship at Sparta, ii. 5, § 7.

Gela, v. 12, § 13.

Gelo, tyrant of Syracuse, v. 3, § 5; 10, § 31; 12, §§ 5, 6.

General, the, learns command by obedience, iii. 4, § 14; generals often became demagogues in ancient times, v. 5, §§ 6-10; have often attacked their masters, ib. 10, § 24; wise generals combine light-armed troops with cavalry and heavy infantry, vi. 7, § 2.

Generalship, a rare quality, v. 9, § 3.

Gerusia: *see* Council of Elders.

God, happy by reason of his own nature, vii. 1, § 10; 3, § 10; alone able to hold together the universe, ib. 4, § 8.

Gods, the, supposed to be under a king because mankind originally were, i. 2, § 7; 12, § 3; their statues more beautiful than ordinary human forms, ib. 5, § 10.

Good, absolute and relative, vii. 13, §§ 5-8.

Good, the, the aim of the state, i. 1, § 1; ii. 2, § 7.

Good and evil, the sense of, characteristic of man, i. 2, § 12; made the test of freedom and slavery, ib. 6, § 8.

Goods, the three kinds of, vii. 1, §§ 2-5; external goods not to be preferred to virtue, ii. 9, § 35; vii. 1, §§ 5-9; 15, § 6; not the cause of happiness, vii. 1, § 10; 13, § 8.

Gordius, father of Psammetichus, tyrant of Corinth, v. 12, § 3.

Gorgias of Leontini, i. 13, § 10; iii. 2, § 2.

Government, the Constitutional, called in ancient times democracy, iv. 13, § 11; its rarity, ib. 7, § 1 (cp. c. 11, § 16); one of the true forms of government, iii. 7, § 3 (cp. iv. 8, § 1); how distinguished from aristocracy, oligarchy, and democracy, iv. 7; 8; 14, §§ 8-10; v. 7, §§ 5-7; vi. 1, § 3 (cp. ii. 11, §§ 5-9); composed of the heavy-armed soldiers, ii. 6, § 16; iii. 7, § 4; 17, § 4; iv. 13, § 10; the people to whom it is adapted, iii. 17, § 4; suited to a large country population, vi. 4, § 14; characterized by the alternation of rulers and ruled, i. 1, § 2; 12, § 2; ii. 2, §§ 4-7; 11, § 14; iii. 4, §§ 10, 14; 6, § 9; 16, § 2; 17, § 4; vii. 14, §§ 1-5 (cp. i. 7, § 1); by the combination of the vote and the lot in the election of the magistrates, iv. 15, §§ 19-

22; gives the affirmative power to the many, ib. 14, § 16; the mode in which it arises, ib. 9; causes of revolution to which it is subject, v. 3, §§ 6-8; 6, §§ 16-18; 7, §§ 5-9; means of its preservation, ib. 8, §§ 10, 11; more stable than aristocracy, ib. 7, § 6.

Government, forms of, how to be criticized, ii. 9, § 1; iv. 1; the legislator must know all, iv. 1, §§ 5-8; differ according to the character of the supreme authority, iii. 6, § 1; 13, § 5; iv. 8, §§ 2-4; 14, § 1; are based on partial justice only, iii. 9, §§ 1-4, 15; 17, § 6; v. 1, § 2; vi. 3, §§ 1-4; are all perversions of the perfect state, iv. 8, § 1; may be divided into true forms or perversions, iii. 1, §§ 8-10; 6, § 11; 7; 18; iv. 2, §§ 1-3; 8, § 1; their successive changes in ancient times, iii. 15, §§ 11-13; iv. 13, §§ 9-12; Plato's theory of change wrong, v. 12, §§ 5-18; influence of increased population upon forms of government, iii. 15, §§ 11-13; iv. 6, § 5; vi. 5, § 5; the worst forms the most precarious, vi. 6, § 4; common error that forms of government can be reduced to two—oligarchy and democracy, iv. 3, §§ 6-8; sense in which this is true, ib. 4, § 19; v. 1, § 14 (cp. vi. 1, § 6); the people adapted to each form of government, iii. 17; the magistrates suited to each, iv. 15, §§ 11-13; vi. 8, §§ 17, 24; the judicial arrangements, ii. 11, § 7; iii. 1, §§ 10, 11; iv. 16, § 8; the military force, vi. 7, §§ 1, 2.

Government, writers on, often un-

practical, iv. 1, § 5; have extolled the Lacedaemonian constitution, ib. § 6; vii. 14, §§ 16, 17. Guardians, the, in Plato's Republic: *see* Plato.

Gymnastic, like other arts, has undergone improvement, ii. 8, § 18; includes various kinds of training, iv. 1, §§ 1, 2.

Gymnastic exercises, forbidden to slaves in Crete, ii. 5, § 19; discouraged in oligarchies among the poor, iv. 13, § 4; one of the recognized branches of education, viii. 3, § 1; carried to excess at Lacedaemon, ib. 4, §§ 1-7; suggestions for their arrangement, vii. 12, §§ 1-6; should be of a lighter kind for children, viii. 4, § 7:—Directors of, vi. 8, § 22.

Habit, the strength of law derived from, ii. 8, § 24; one element of virtue, vii. 13, §§ 11-13; 15, § 7; must go before reason in education, viii. 3, § 13.

Hanno, v. 7, § 4.

Happiness, independent of external goods, vii. 1, § 10; 13, § 8; the happiness of the whole dependent on the happiness of the parts, i. 6, § 10; ii. 5, § 27; vii. 9, § 7; happiness proportioned to virtue, vii. 1, § 10; 8, § 5; 9, §§ 3, 7; 13, § 5; the perfect happiness of the divine nature, ib. 1, § 10; 3, § 10; the happiness of men and states the same, ib. 2; 3; the happiness of states not dependent on empire over others, ib. 2, §§ 14-18; or on size, ib. 4, §§ 4-11; happiness implies virtuous activity, ib. 3, §§ 1-3; is the worthy employment of leisure, viii. 3, §§ 3-6; 5, §§ 9-15.

Harbours, should be separated from the city, vii. 6, §§ 1-6.

Harmodius, v. 10, § 15.

Harmonies, the, iv. 3, § 7; viii. 5, §§ 16-25; 7.

Harmony, the soul said to be, or to possess, viii. 5, § 25.

Harmony, the Dorian, iii. 3, § 8; iv. 3, § 7; produces a moderate and settled temper, viii. 5, § 22; 7, §§ 8-13:—the Lydian; rejected by Plato in the Republic, ib. 7, §§ 9, 14; suitable to children, ib. § 15:—the Mixo-Lydian; has a sad and grave effect, ib. 5, § 22:—the Phrygian, iii. 3, § 8; iv. 3, § 7; inspires enthusiasm, viii. 5, § 22; 7, § 9; should not have been retained by Plato, ib. 7, §§ 9-13.

Hebdome, v. 3, § 7.

Heliaeae, court of, at Epidamnus, v. 1, § 11.

Hellancrates of Larissa, v. 10, § 18.

Hellas, influence of the climate of, on the national character, vii. 7, §§ 1-4; natural superiority of Hellenes to Barbarians, i. 2, § 4; 6, § 6; iii. 14, § 6; vii. 7, § 3; differences of the various Hellenic tribes, vii. 7, § 4:—barbarous laws among the ancient Hellenes, ii. 8, § 20; the Hellenes formerly under royal rule, i. 2, § 6; iii. 15, § 11. iv. 13, § 10; changes in government caused by the increase of population, iii. 15, §§ 11-13; iv. 6, § 5; 13, §§ 10-12; vi. 5, § 5; rise of the heavy-armed in importance, iv. 13, § 10; effects of the Persian war upon Hellas, ii. 12, § 5; v. 4, § 8; viii. 6, § 11; growth of the Athenian empire in Hellas, iii. 13, § 19; division of Hellas be-



tween Athens and Lacedaemon, iv. 11, § 18; v. 7, § 14:—smallness of the middle class in later Hellas, iv. 11, §§ 7, 16–19; lack of great men, v. 10, § 37; effects of the cultivation of rhetoric, ib. 5, § 7; wrong notions of education, iv. 11, § 6; vii. 14, § 15; viii. 1, § 3; 2, § 2:—rage for flute playing in Hellas after the Persian War, viii. 6, § 12.

Helots, ii. 5, § 22; 9, § 2; 10, §§ 4, 16.

Heniochi, the, in Pontus, viii. 4, § 3.

Hephaestus, i. 4, § 3.

Heraclea, in Pontus, v. 5, § 3; 6, §§ 2, 3, 7, 15; vii. 6, § 8.

Heracleides of Aenos, v. 10, § 18.

Heracleitus, v. 11, § 31.

Heracleodorus, v. 3, § 9.

Heracles, iii. 13, § 16.

Heraea (in Arcadia), v. 3, § 9.

Hesiod, quoted, i. 2, § 5; v. 10, § 30.

Hestiaea (the later Oreus) in Euboea, v. 3, § 9; 4, § 4.

Hiero, tyrant of Syracuse, v. 10, § 31; 11, § 7; 12, §§ 5, 6.

Hipparinus, v. 6, § 8.

Hippocrates, vii. 4, § 5.

Hippodamus, of Miletus, ii. 8, § 1; vii. 11, § 6.

Homer, calls Zeus 'the father of Gods and men,' i. 12, § 2;—quoted,

Il. ii. 204; iv. 4, § 27;

ib. 372; iii. 16, § 10;

v. 391–3; ib. 14, § 5;

ix. 63; i. 2, § 9;

ib. 319; ii. 7, § 10;

ib. 648; iii. 5, § 9;

x. 224; ib. 16, § 10;

xviii. 376; i. 4, § 3;

Odyss. ix. 7; viii. 3, § 9;

ib. 14; i. 2, § 7;

xvii. 385; viii. 3, § 9:

—a passage is also cited, viii. 3, § 8, which does not occur in our Homer.

Honour, inequality in, a cause of revolutions, ii. 7, §§ 10–13, 18–20; v. 2, § 2; 3, §§ 2, 14; 4, §§ 8–10; 12, § 18; the remedy for this, v. 8, § 12; 11, §§ 26, 27; the citizen must share in the honours of the state, iii. 5, § 9 (cp. c. 10, §§ 4, 5); honour less desired by men than wealth, iv. 13, § 8; v. 8, § 16; vi. 4, § 3 (cp. vi. 7, § 7).

Household management, the art of, distinguished from the rule of a master, i. 1, § 2; 3, § 4; 7, § 1; iii. 6, §§ 6, 7; divided into three parts, i. 3, §§ 1–3; 12, § 1; how related to money-making, ib. 3, § 3; 8, §§ 1, 2; 9, §§ 1, 12–18; 10, §§ 1–4; includes the natural art of acquisition, ib. 4, § 1; 8, §§ 13–15; 9, §§ 1–8; 10, §§ 1–4; 11, §§ 1–3; has a limit, ib. 9, §§ 14, 18; is more concerned with virtue than with wealth, ib. 13, § 1; the parts of men and women in, different, iii. 4, § 17; exists for the benefit of those under it, ib. 6, §§ 6, 7.

Husband and wife, relation of. [See 'Male' and 'Female.']

Husbandmen, are sometimes hunters, i. 8, § 8; would be better suited for Plato's communism than the guardians, ii. 4, § 4; make the best form of democracy, iv. 6, § 2; 12, § 3; vi. 4, §§ 1, 8–10; furnish good sailors, vii. 6, § 8; should not be citizens, ib. 9, § 8; 10, §§ 13, 14; nor admitted to office, ib. 9, § 9; should be excluded from the 'Freemen's Agora,' ib. 12, § 3.

Husbandry, a part of the natural



art of money-making, i. 8, § 3;  
10, § 3; 11, § 2.

Iapygia, v. 3, § 7; vii. 10, § 5.  
Iberians, the, vii. 2, § 11.

India, vii. 14, § 3.

Inheritance, sale of an, forbidden,  
ii. 7, § 6; (at Sparta), ib. 9,  
§ 14 (cp. v. 8, § 20); the divi-  
sion of an, may be a cause of  
revolution, v. 4, § 4.

Instruments, best when made for  
one use, i. 2, § 3; may be either  
living or lifeless, ib. 4, § 2; are  
used either in production or in  
action, ib. §§ 4-6; are never  
unlimited in the arts, ib. 8,  
§§ 14, 15; the slave a living  
instrument, ib. 4, §§ 2, 6.

Ionia, v. 10, § 6.

Ionian Gulf, the, vii. 10, § 5.

Iphiades, a party leader at  
Abydos, v. 6, § 14.

Istros, v. 6, § 2.

Italus, king of Oenotria, vii. 10,  
§ 3.

Italy, vii. 10, §§ 2-6.

Jason, tyrant of Phærae, iii. 4, § 9.

Judges, not allowed to commu-  
nicate with each other, ii. 8,  
§ 13; should not hold office for  
life, ib. 9, § 25; necessary, even  
in the first beginnings of the  
state, iv. 4, §§ 13, 14; the  
various modes of appointing  
them, ib. 16, §§ 5-7; provision  
for an equal division of opinion  
among judges, vi. 3, § 6; those  
who inflict penalties to be  
different from those who see to  
their execution, ib. 8, §§ 8-11.

Justice, the sense of, peculiar to  
man, i. 2, § 12; the bond of  
men in states, ib. § 16; iii. 12,  
§ 9; 13, § 3; (cp. iv. 4, § 13);  
sometimes defined as benevo-

lence, i. 6, § 4; different in men  
and women, ib. 13, §§ 3, 9; in  
the ruler and the subject, ib.  
§§ 2-8; iii. 4, §§ 16-18; con-  
sists in equality, iii. 9, § 1; 12,  
§ 1; 13, § 12; vii. 14, § 3;  
cannot be the destruction of the  
state, iii. 10, § 2; cannot be  
united with the love of conquest,  
vii. 2, §§ 7-18; selfishness of  
the ordinary notions of justice,  
vi. 3, § 6; vii. 2, § 14; all claims  
to rule based upon partial and  
relative justice only, iii. 9,  
§§ 1-6, 15; v. 1, §§ 2-6; 9,  
§ 1; vi. 2, § 2; 3, §§ 1-4.

King, the, not the same with the  
statesman, i. 1, § 2; ought to  
be chosen for merit (as at  
Carthage), ii. 9, § 29; 11, § 4;  
receives a special education, iii.  
4, § 8; may be justified in put-  
ting down his rivals, ib. 13,  
§ 22; v. 11, § 27; is the  
champion of the better classes  
against the people, v. 10, § 3;  
often supreme in religious  
matters, iii. 14, § 13; vi. 8,  
§ 20; should he have a military  
force? iii. 15, §§ 14-16; is  
guarded by the citizens, ib. 14,  
§ 7; v. 10, § 10.

King, the true, or natural supe-  
rior of the citizens, iii. 13,  
§§ 13, 24, 25; 17, §§ 5-8; vii.  
3, § 6; unknown in later Hellas,  
v. 10, § 37. [See Royalty.]

King, a, the Gods why supposed  
to be under, i. 2, § 7; 12, § 3.

Kings, the, of Crete (in ancient  
times), ii. 10, § 6; of Carthage,  
ib. 11, §§ 3-6, 9, 10; of Mace-  
donia, v. 10, § 8; of the Molos-  
sians, ib.; 11, § 2; of Persia,  
viii. 5, § 5; of Sparta [see Laca-  
daemon]:—Kings, the ancient,

sometimes became tyrants, v. 10, § 5.

Knights, the, at Athens, ii. 12, § 6; at Eretria, v. 6, § 14.

Lacedaemon; frequent wars of the Lacedaemonians with their neighbours, ii. 9, §§ 3, 11; their difficulties with the Helots, ib. §§ 2-4 (cp. ib. 5, § 22); the Messenian Wars, ib. § 11; v. 7, §§ 3, 4; the conspiracy of the Partheniae, v. 7, § 2;—of Pausanias, ib. 1, § 10; 7, § 4; vii. 14, § 20;—of Cinadon, v. 7, § 3;—of Lysander, ib. 1, § 10; 7, § 2; the putting down of the tyrants, ib. 10, § 30; the subject cities governed in the oligarchical interest by the Lacedaemonians, iv. 11, § 18; v. 7, § 14;—friendship among the Lacedaemonians, ii. 5, § 7; agriculture forbidden to them, ib. § 17; simplicity of life among them, ib. 6, § 17; iv. 9, §§ 6-9; excellence of the Lacedaemonian education, iv. 9, § 7; viii. 1, § 4 (*but* cp. vii. 2, § 9; viii. 4, § 1); music not comprised in it, viii. 5, § 7; Lacedaemonian training only advantageous while other nations did not train, ib. 4, §§ 4-7; rage for flute-playing at Lacedaemon after the Persian War, ib. 6, § 12; error of the Lacedaemonians in thinking the objects of their desire preferable to the virtue which gained them, ii. 9, § 35 (cp. vii. 1, § 5); spirit of distrust in the Lacedaemonian government, ii. 9, § 30; bad management of the revenue, ib. § 36; frequency of corruption, ib. §§ 19, 26; 10, § 12; accumulation of property, ib. 9,

§§ 13, 14; v. 7, §§ 3, 10 (cp. v. 12, § 15); number of heiresses, ii. 9, § 15; decrease in population, ib. §§ 14-19; encouragement of large families, ib. § 14; expulsion of strangers, ib. 10, § 15; strangers admitted to citizenship in ancient times, ib. 9, § 17; licence of the Lacedaemonian women, ib. §§ 5-13:—the Lacedaemonian constitution a combination of various forms of government, ib. 6, §§ 16, 17; 9, § 22;—an aristocracy with an element of democracy, iv. 7, § 4 (cp. ii. 9, § 20; 10, § 10);—regarded by some as a democracy, by others as an oligarchy, iv. 9, §§ 6-10;—often considered the next best to the ideal state, ii. 6, § 16; iv. 1, § 6;—its resemblance to the Cretan, ii. 10, §§ 4-7;—to the Carthaginian, ib. 11, §§ 3-5; the arrangement of the law-courts at Lacedaemon, an aristocratical feature, ib. § 7; iii. 1, §§ 10, 11; the attention of the legislator directed solely to war, ii. 9, §§ 34, 35; vii. 2, § 9; 14, §§ 16-22; viii. 4, §§ 1-7:—imperfections of the Lacedaemonian monarchy, ii. 9, §§ 29, 30; 11, §§ 3, 4; limited powers of the kings, iii. 14, § 3; v. 11, § 2; their office an hereditary generalship, ii. 9, § 33; iii. 14, §§ 4, 5, 14; 15, §§ 1, 2; 16, § 1: origin of their power, v. 10, § 8; reason of its long continuance, ib. 11, § 2:—the Gerusia criticized, ii. 9, §§ 25-29; 11, §§ 4, 11; v. 6, § 11:—faults and merits of the Ephoralty, ii. 6, § 17; 9, §§ 19-24, 26; 10, §§ 10, 12; 11, § 3; established by Theopompus as a check on the royal power, v.

ii. §§ 2, 3;—the office of admiral, ii. 9, § 33 :—the common tables, why instituted, ib. 5, § 15; 6, § 17; 9, §§ 31, 32; iv. 9, § 8; not so well managed as in Crete, ii. 9, § 32; 10, §§ 7, 8.

Lametic Gulf, the, vii. 10, § 3.

Land, the, should be divided into two portions, vii. 10, § 11 (*but* cp. ii. 6, § 15): Hippodamus's division of, ii. 8, §§ 3, 12;—should it be cultivated by the owners? ib. 5, §§ 3, 18, 19; 8, §§ 8-13; vii. 9, §§ 1-4; 10, §§ 13, 14; at Sparta, had fallen into the hands of a few, ii. 9, §§ 14, 15.

Landowners, small, to be encouraged, vi. 4, §§ 8-10.

Larissa, iii. 2, § 2; v. 6, §§ 6, 13.

Law, the, of Oxylus, vi. 4, § 9:—

Laws, the, of Androdamas, ii. 12, § 14; of Charondas, ib. §§ 6-8, 11; iv. 13, § 2; of Draco, ii. 12, § 13; of Lycurgus (*see* Sparta); of Minos, ii. 10, § 3; vii. 10, § 1; of Phaleas, ii. 7; 12, § 12; of Philolaus, ib. 12, §§ 8-10; of Pittacus, ib. § 13; of Plato (*see* Plato); of Solon, ii. 7, § 6; 12, §§ 1-6; iii. 11, § 8; of Zaleucus, ii. 12, § 6.

Law, the, derives its force from habit, ii. 8, § 24; 'a surety of justice' (Lycophron), iii. 9, § 8; may have a party character, ib. 10, § 5; 11, § 20; only exists for equals, ib. 13, §§ 13, 14; 16, §§ 2, 3; must be supported by force in the ruler, ib. 15, §§ 14, 15; is a mean, ib. 16, § 8; is order, vii. 4, § 8; is without passion, iii. 15, § 5; the rule of, the rule of God, ib. 16, § 5 (cp. i. 2, §§ 15, 16);—

rule? iii. 15, §§ 1-10; 16;—should the law ever be changed? ii. 8, §§ 16-25 (cp. iii. 15, §§ 6, 7; 16, § 5):—Laws, the, cannot provide for circumstances, ii. 8, § 22; iii. 11, § 19; 15, §§ 4-8; 16, §§ 4-13; should be supreme, and the magistrates only their interpreters, iii. 11, § 19; 16, §§ 5, 10-12; iv. 4, § 31; are relative to the constitution, but distinct from it, iii. 11, § 20; iv. 1, §§ 9, 10; must be obeyed and must be good, iv. 4, § 30; 8, §§ 5, 6.

Law, the, or convention, by which prisoners of war become slaves, i. 6, §§ 1, 5.

Law, unwritten, importance of, iii. 16, § 9.

Laws, the, of Hellenic cities generally in a chaotic state, vii. 2, § 9.

Laws, the, of Plato (*see* Plato).

Law Courts, the, oligarchical and democratical tricks with, iv. 9, § 2; 13, §§ 2, 5; 14, § 12; the rich should be encouraged to attend, even in democracies, vi. 5, § 5; used by the demagogues to ruin the rich, v. 3, § 4; 5, §§ 1-5; vi. 5, § 3.

Law courts, the possible varieties of, iv. 16.

Legislator, the, must have regard to the country and the people, ii. 6, § 7; 7, §§ 14-17; must pay attention to the foreign relations of the state, ib.; ib.; vii. 2, § 18; must secure leisure for his citizens, ii. 9, § 2; 11, §§ 10, 12; vii. 9, §§ 3, 7 (cp. vii. 12, § 7); must not trust to accidents, ii. 11, §§ 15, 17; vii. 13, §§ 8-10; must regard the common good, iii. 13, § 12; ought not to want such a principle as ostracism, ib. § 23; v. 3,

- § 3; must know all possible forms of state, iv. 1, § 8; and the causes of their preservation and destruction, v. 9, § 9; vi. 5, § 2; must be able to reform as well as to create a state, iv. 1, § 7; should favour the middle class, ib. 12, § 4; must consider the deliberative, executive, and judicial elements in relation to the constitution of each state, ib. 14, § 1; must be modest in his designs, ii. 6, § 7; viii. 4, § 2; should not make conquest the aim of his state, vii. 2; must give all the citizens a share in the administration, ib. 14, § 4; must have a care of education, ib. §§ 1, 8; 15, § 8; viii. 1, §§ 1, 2; must not neglect physical education, vii. 16, § 1.
- Legislators, the best, belonged to the middle class, iv. 11, § 15.
- Leisure, the, of the citizens, the first object of the legislator, ii. 9, § 2; ii. §§ 10-12; vii. 9, §§ 3, 4, 7 (cp. vii. 12, § 7); the citizen must know the right uses of, vii. 14, §§ 13-22; viii. 3; 5, § 4; needed for virtue, vii. 9, § 4.
- Leontini, v. 10, § 6; 12, § 13.
- Lesbos, iii. 13, § 19.
- Leucas, ii. 7, § 7.
- Liberty, supposed to be the characteristic feature of democracy, iii. 8, § 7; iv. 4, §§ 22, 23; 8, § 7; v. 1, § 3; 8, § 6; 9, §§ 14, 15; vi. 2, §§ 1-4, 9; 4, § 20; must not be confused with licence, v. 9, § 15;—should be held out as a reward to slaves, vii. 10, § 14.
- Life, action, not production, i. 4, § 5; pleasure of, iii. 6, § 5; is the speculative or the practical, better? vii. 2, §§ 5-18; 3:—divided by the poets into periods of seven years, ib. 16, § 17; 17, § 15:—simplicity of, at Sparta, ii. 6, § 17; iv. 9, § 7.
- Life, the good, not desired by mankind in general, i. 9, § 16; the object of the existence of the state, ib. 2, § 8; iii. 9, §§ 6-14; iv. 4, § 12; vii. 1, § 1; 2, § 17; 4, § 11; 8, § 4; is it the same for states and for individuals? vii. 1; 2; 3, § 10.
- Limit, a, necessary in the arts, i. 8, § 14; 9, § 13; iii. 13, § 21; vii. 4, § 10; in population, ii. 6, §§ 6, 10; 7, § 5; 9, § 19; vii. 4, §§ 4-11; 5, § 1; 16, § 15; in the state, ii. 6, § 7; iii. 3, §§ 4-7; vii. 4; 5, § 1; in wealth, i. 8, § 14; 9, § 14; ii. 6, §§ 8, 9; 7, §§ 4-8; vii. 5, § 1.
- Locri (in Italy), ii. 7, § 6; 12, § 6; v. 7, § 10.
- Lot, use of the, characteristic of democracy, ii. 11, § 7; 12, § 3; iv. 9, § 4; 15, § 19; vi. 2, §§ 5, 8; modes in which it may be used in elections of magistrates, iv. 15, §§ 16-22.
- Lycophron, the Sophist, iii. 9, § 8.
- Lycus, in Crete, ii. 10, § 2.
- Lycurgus, the author of the Lacedaemonian constitution, ii. 10, § 2; 12, § 1; was the guardian of Charilaus, ib. 10, § 2; his visit to Crete, ib.; his failure to bring the women under his laws, ib. 9, §§ 11, 12; said by some to have been a disciple of Thales, ib. 12, § 7; belonged to the middle class, iv. 11, § 15.
- Lydian Harmony, the: *see* Harmony.
- Lygdamis, tyrant of Naxos, v. 6, § 1.
- Lysander, v. 1, § 10; 7, § 2.

Macedonia, v. 10, § 8; vii. 2, § 10.  
 Magistrates, power of calling to account [*see* Account, power of calling magistrates to]; division of law-suits among the Lacedaemonians and Carthaginian magistrates, ii. 11, § 7; iii. 1, § 10 (cp. iv. 14, § 3); election of magistrates by merit characteristic of aristocracy, ii. 11, §§ 7, 9; iv. 15, § 10;—for wealth, of oligarchy, ii. 6, § 19; ii. 11, § 9; iv. 15, § 10; choice by lot, of democracy, ii. 6, § 19; 12, § 3; iv. 15, § 19; vi. 2, §§ 5, 9; must be taken from those who carry arms, ii. 8, § 9; iv. 13, § 9; are very numerous in democracies, ii. 11, § 14; ought to be only the guardians and interpreters of the law, iii. 11, § 19; 16, §§ 5, 10–12; iv. 4, § 31; character and powers of the magistrates in aristocracies, iv. 14, § 10; 15, § 13; vi. 8, § 22; in constitutional governments, iv. 14, §§ 10, 16; in democracies, *ib.* §§ 1–7; 15, §§ 10–14; vi. 2, §§ 5–9; 8, §§ 17, 24; in oligarchies, iv. 14, §§ 8, 9; 15, §§ 10–14; vi. 8, §§ 17, 24; the magistrates peculiar to each constitution, iv. 15, §§ 11–13; vi. 8, §§ 17, 24; definition of the term ‘magistrate,’ iv. 15, §§ 1–4; should he hold more than one office? ii. 11, § 13; iv. 15, §§ 5–10; vi. 8, § 2; the various modes of appointment, iv. 15, §§ 14–21; vi. 5, § 11; popular election dangerous, v. 5, § 10; 6, § 6; the magistrates should not be allowed to make money, *ib.* 3, § 1; 8, § 15; vi. 7, § 5 (cp. v. 12, § 14); undue power acquired by them a cause of revo-

lution, v. 3, § 3; 4, §§ 8–11; great authority of the ancient magistrates, iii. 16, § 1; v. 1, § 10; 5, § 8; 10, § 5; vi. 2, § 8; the magistrates may prevent revolutions by prudence, v. 8, § 8; manner in which they should act in oligarchies, vi. 5, §§ 10, 11; 7, §§ 4–7; enumeration of the different magistrates required by states, vi. 8; the magistrates must know the characters of their fellow-citizens, vii. 4, § 13; must suppress obscenity, *ib.* 17, § 10:—Magistrates, certain, required by law to take their meals together, vi. 2, § 7; vii. 12, § 2.  
 Magnesia (on the Maeander), iv. 3, § 3.  
 Magnesians, the, ii. 9, § 3.  
 Majority, the (in a state), difficulties about the power which should be possessed by, iii. 10; 11; 13, §§ 4–7; vi. 3.  
 Male and female, reason for the union of, i. 2, § 2; the relation of, part of the household, *ib.* 3, § 2; 12, § 1.  
 Male, the, intended by nature to rule over the female, i. 5, § 7; 12, § 1.  
 Malians, the, iv. 13, § 9.  
 Man a political animal, i. 2, §§ 9, 14, 15; iii. 6, § 3; has a natural wish for posterity, i. 2, § 2; alone has the faculty of speech, *ib.* § 10;—the sense of good and evil, *ib.* § 12;—the power of reason, vii. 13, § 12; the worst of animals when not controlled by law and justice, i. 2, §§ 15, 16; must allow reason to direct nature and habit, vii. 13, §§ 11–13; should give the soul rule over the body, i. 5, §§ 4–7; the plants and

- animals created for his sake, *ib.* 8, § 12:—Man, the virtue of the, different from that of the woman, *ib.* 13, §§ 3, 9–11; *iii.* 4, § 16:—Men are unlimited in their desires, *i.* 9, §§ 16–18; *ii.* 7, §§ 8, 19; are wicked by nature, *ii.* 5, § 12; are more desirous of gain than of honour, *iv.* 13, § 8; *v.* 8, § 16; *vi.* 4, § 3; are satisfied with a moderate amount of virtue, *vii.* 1, § 5:—Men, the first, were ordinary, foolish people, *ii.* 8, § 21.
- Mantineia, battle of, *v.* 4, § 9; government by representation at, *vi.* 4, § 4.
- Marriage, regulations respecting, *vii.* 16;—the marriage relation, *i.* 2, § 2; 3, §§ 1–3; 12; *iii.* 4, § 6.
- Massalia, *v.* 6, §§ 2, 3; *vi.* 7, § 4.
- Master, the, in relation to the slave, *i.* 2, §§ 2–5; 3, §§ 1–3; 12, § 1; 13, §§ 7, 12–14; has a common interest with the slave, *ib.* 6, § 10; *iii.* 6, § 6; *vii.* 14, § 6; ought to train the slave in virtue, *i.* 13, § 14;—the science peculiar to, *ib.* 3, § 4; 7, §§ 2–5; 13, § 14;—the rule of, *ib.* 3, § 4; *iii.* 4, § 11; *vii.* 14, § 6; wrongly supposed [by Plato] to be different from political rule, *i.* 1, § 2; 3, § 4.
- Mean, importance of the, in states, *iv.* 11; *v.* 9, § 6; in education, *viii.* 6, § 7; 7, § 15.
- Mechanic, the: *see* Artisan.
- Medes, the, *iii.* 13, § 19; *viii.* 5, § 5.
- Medicine, *i.* 9, §§ 13, 17; 10, §§ 3, 4; *ii.* 8, § 18. (*See* Physician.)
- Megacles, *v.* 10, § 19.
- Megara, *iii.* 9, § 9; *iv.* 15, § 15; *v.* 3, § 5; 5, §§ 4, 9.
- Messenian War, the (Second), *v.* 7, § 3.
- Messenians, the, *ii.* 9, §§ 3, 11.
- Metics: *see* Aliens.
- Midas, *i.* 9, § 11.
- Middle class, virtues of the, *iv.* 11; 12; the middle-class state the best, *ib.* 11, §§ 8–15; 12, § 4; *v.* 8, § 14; 9, § 6; smallness of the middle class in ancient states, *iv.* 13, § 11.
- Might and right, *i.* 6, § 3; *vi.* 3, § 6; *vii.* 2, § 13.
- Miletus, *i.* 11, § 9; *v.* 5, § 8.
- Minos, *ii.* 10, § 3; *vii.* 10, §§ 2, 6.
- Mithridates (?Satrap of Pontus), *v.* 10, § 25.
- Mitylene, *iii.* 14, § 10; *v.* 4, §§ 5, 6; 10, § 19.
- Mixo-Lyidian Harmony, the: *see* Harmony.
- Mnaseas, a Phocian, *v.* 4, § 7.
- Mnason, a Phocian, *v.* 4, § 7.
- Moderation in politics, necessary for the salvation of the state, *iv.* 11, §§ 16–19; *v.* 9, § 6; *vi.* 5, § 2.
- Molossians, the, in Epirus, *v.* 10, § 8; 11, § 2.
- Monarchy, arguments for and against, *iii.* 15–17.
- Monarchy: *see* King, Royalty, and Tyranny.
- Money, origin of, *i.* 9, § 8; its conventional nature, *ib.* § 11; ought not to be made from money, *ib.* 10, § 5.
- Money-making, the art of, how related to household management, *i.* 3, § 3; 8, §§ 1, 2; 9, §§ 1, 12–18; 10, §§ 1–4; the natural kind, *ib.* 8, §§ 3–15; 9, §§ 1–8; 10, §§ 1–4; 11, §§ 1, 2; the unnatural, *ib.* 9, § 1 foll.;



10, §§ 4, 5; 11, § 3; the intermediate, *ib.* 11, § 4; the unnatural pursues its end without limit, *ib.* 9, §§ 13-15.

Monopolies, a common method of gaining wealth, *i.* 11, §§ 8-13.

Multitude, the, their claim to the supreme power, *iii.* 10, § 1; are better collectively than the individual, *ib.* 11; 13, § 4; 15; should have power only to elect and control the magistrates, *ib.* 11, § 7.

Musaeus, quoted, *viii.* 5, § 11.

Music, subject to a ruling principle, *i.* 5, § 4; better judged of by the many than by the individual, *iii.* 11, § 3; useful (1) in education, *viii.* 3; 5; 7, § 3; (2) for the intellectual employment of leisure, *ib.* 3; 5, §§ 8, 9; 7, § 3; (3) with a view to purification, *ib.* 7, §§ 3-6; has an effect upon morals, *ib.* 5, §§ 7, 15-25; 6, §§ 1, 6; 7, §§ 3-7; not taught at Lacedaemon, *ib.* 5, § 7; naturally pleasant to men, *ib.* §§ 8, 11, 25; 7, § 6; produces enthusiasm, *ib.* 5, §§ 16, 22; 7, § 4; allays the passions, *ib.* 6, § 9; 7, §§ 4-6; a rattle for children of a larger growth, *ib.* 6, § 2; cannot be judged except by a performer, *ib.* § 4 (*but* *cp.* *c.* 5, § 7); must not be pursued to the point of professional excellence, *ib.* 6, §§ 7, 15; includes a higher and a lower kind, *ib.* § 8; 7, § 6; is composed of melody and rhythm, *ib.* 5, § 18; 6, § 5; 7, § 1.

Music, writers upon, *viii.* 5, § 23; 7, §§ 2, 3, 8, 11, 14.

Musical Harmony: *see* Harmony.

Myron, tyrant at Sicyon, *v.* 12, § 12.

Mytilene: *see* Mitylene.

Nature, implants in man a desire of posterity, *i.* 2, § 2; makes a distinction between the ruler and the ruled, *ib.*; 4, § 6; 5; 6, § 8; 12; 13, § 4;—between the female and the slave, *ib.* 2, § 3; her designs must be sought in things which are uncorrupted, *ib.* 5, § 5; does nothing in a niggardly fashion, *ib.* 2, § 3; creates nothing in vain, *ib.* § 10; 8, § 12; *ii.* 5, § 8; gives to man the social instinct, *ib.* 2, §§ 10-16; *iii.* 6, §§ 3-5; not always able to accomplish her intentions, *i.* 5, § 10; 6, § 8; supplies food for all, *ib.* 8, §§ 9-12; 10, § 3; has given all freemen a right to rule, *ii.* 2, § 6; *iii.* 16, §§ 2, 3; fits the young to obey, the old to command, *vii.* 9, § 6; permits proper relaxation, *viii.* 3, § 2; herself suggests the proper harmonies for each age, *ib.* 7, § 13;—forms one element in virtue, *vii.* 13, §§ 11-13; 15, § 7; must be supplemented by art and education, *ib.* 17, § 15.

Naval force, the, which should be possessed by the state, *vii.* 6, §§ 6-9.

Naxos, *v.* 6, § 1.

Nobility, among Barbarians only partially recognized by Hellenes, *i.* 6, § 7; confers a claim to superiority in the state, *iii.* 9, § 15; 12, § 9; 13, §§ 2-5; *iv.* 8, § 3; may be defined (1) as excellence of race, *iii.* 13, § 3; *v.* 1, § 7; (2) as ancient wealth and virtue, *iv.* 8, § 9; confused by mankind with wealth, *ib.* §§ 4, 8; *v.* 7, § 1; like virtue, is not often found, *v.* 1, § 14.

Nobles, quarrels among, a cause



of revolutions, v. 1, § 16; 4, § 1; 6, § 5; 8, § 9; form a democracy among themselves, *ib.* 8, § 6; should be humane to the subject classes, *iv.* 13, § 8; *vi.* 5, §§ 5-11.  
 Notium, v. 3, § 15.

Obedience, the necessary preliminary to command, *iii.* 4, §§ 10, 14; *vii.* 9, § 6; 14, § 6.

Odysseus, *viii.* 3, § 9.

Oenophyta, battle of, v. 3, § 5.

Oenotrians, the (in Southern Italy), *vii.* 10, §§ 3-5.

Office, the 'indefinite,' in which all the citizens share, *iii.* 1, §§ 6-12; 2, § 5.

Office, lust of mankind for, *iii.* 6, § 10; oligarchical tricks to keep the poor from, *iv.* 13, §§ 1-4; justice of the various claims to, *iii.* 10-13:—Offices, the, of the state, posts of honour, *ib.* 10, § 4; their distribution, *iv.* 15; *vi.* 8; their organization determines the character of each constitution, *iv.* 1, § 10; 3, § 5; in small states must be combined, in large ones specialized, *ii.* 11, § 14; *iv.* 15, §§ 5-7; *vi.* 8, § 2; in democracies restricted to six months' tenure, v. 8, § 6; (*cp.* *vi.* 2, § 5); and rarely held more than once by the same person, *iii.* 1, § 6; *vi.* 2, § 5; should be divided into two classes, v. 8, § 21; *vi.* 5, § 11.

Offices, sale of, and pluralism, at Carthage, *ii.* 11, §§ 10, 13.

Oligarchy, the government of the few for their private interests, *iii.* 6, § 2; 8, § 3;—or, more correctly, of the wealthy, *ib.* 7, § 5; 8, §§ 6, 7; *iv.* 4, §§ 1-6, 19; 8, § 7; 11, §§ 16-19; v. 1, § 3; *vi.* 2, § 7; Plato wrong in think-

ing that an oligarchy can ever be called 'good,' *iv.* 2, § 3; oligarchy the perversion of aristocracy, *iii.* 7, § 5; 15, § 12; *iv.* 2, § 2; how distinguished from it, *ii.* 11, §§ 5-10; *iv.* 5, § 1; 7; 8, §§ 2-10; 14, § 10; v. 7, §§ 5-8; popularly supposed, like aristocracy, to be a 'government of the best,' *iv.* 8, § 4; v. 1, § 14; analogous to tyranny in love of wealth, v. 10, § 11; has more forms than one, *iv.* 1, § 8; 4, §§ 20-22; 12, § 3; 13, § 12; the forms enumerated, *ib.* 5, §§ 1-3; 6, §§ 7-11; 14, §§ 8-11; *vi.* 6; oligarchy less stable than democracy, *iv.* 11, § 14; v. 1, § 15; 7, § 6; the shortest lived of all forms of governments, excepting tyranny, v. 12, § 1 (*cp.* *vi.* 6, § 4); the extreme form apt to pass into tyranny, *iv.* 11, § 11; v. 10, § 5; 12, § 13; the causes of revolutions in oligarchies, v. 3, § 14; 6; 12, §§ 15-18; the means of their preservation, *ib.* 6, § 9; 8, §§ 5-21; 9; *vi.* 6, § 5; 7;—the Lacedaemonians the champions of oligarchy in Hellas, *iv.* 11, § 18; v. 7, § 14;—the people to whom oligarchy is suited, *iv.* 2, § 4; 12, § 3;—the military strength of oligarchy derived from cavalry and heavy infantry, *ib.* 3, § 3; 13, § 10; *vi.* 7, § 1;—oligarchical modes of appointing magistrates and judges, *ii.* 6, §§ 19, 20; *iv.* 14, §§ 7-11; 15, §§ 14-21; 16, § 8; magistracies peculiar to oligarchy, *iv.* 14, § 14; 15, § 11; *vi.* 8, §§ 17, 24;—luxury of the women in oligarchies, *iv.* 15, § 13; bad education of the children, *ib.* 11, § 6; v. 9,

- § 13 :—the oligarchs sometimes forbidden to engage in trade, v. 12, § 14; their tricks to keep the power in their own hands, iv. 9, § 2; 13, §§ 1-4; 14, § 12; they ought rather to give the people a share in the government, ib. 14, § 14; vi. 5, § 11; 7, § 4; they should not take oaths against the people, v. 9, §§ 10, 11; they should not be allowed to make money by office, ib. 3, § 1; 8, § 15; vi. 7, § 5.
- Olympic Games, the, viii. 4, § 8.
- Olympus, melodies of, viii. 5, § 16.
- Onomacritus, the Locrian, ii. 12, § 7.
- Onomarchus, a Phocian, v. 4, § 7.
- Opici, the, or Ausones, vii. 10, § 5.
- Opus (in Locris), iii. 16, § 1.
- Oratory, v. 5, § 7.
- Oreus : *see* Hestiaea.
- Orthagoras, v. 12, § 1.
- Ostracism, how far justifiable, iii. 13, §§ 13-25; 17, § 7; v. 3, § 3; 8, § 12.
- Oxylus, king of Elis, vi. 4, § 9.
- Paches, v. 4, § 6.
- Painters, combine their works from scattered elements, iii. 11, § 4; like other artists, observe a rule of proportion, ib. 13, § 21; those who, like Polygnotus, express moral ideas, to be preferred, viii. 5, § 21.
- Paintings, obscene, not to be allowed, vii. 17, § 9.
- Panaetius, tyrant of Leontini, v. 10, § 6; 12, § 13.
- Parent, the, relation of, to the child, i. 2, § 2; 3, § 2; 12; provides food for the offspring, ib. 8, § 10; 10, § 3.
- Parrhon, of Aenos, v. 10, § 18.
- Partheniae, the (at Lacedaemon), conspiracy of, v. 7, § 2.
- Passion, intended by nature to be controlled by reason, i. 5, § 6; present in the human soul from the first, iii. 15, §§ 5, 8; 16, § 5; vii. 15, § 10; blinds men to danger, v. 10, § 34; 11, § 31; the multitude freer from passion than the individual, iii. 15, § 8.
- Patrimony, laws forbidding the sale of a, ii. 7, § 6; 9, § 14 (cp. v. 8, § 20).
- Pausanias, the assassin of Philip of Macedon, v. 10, § 16.
- Pausanias, son of Cleombrotus, incorrectly called king, v. 1, § 10; vii. 14, § 20; his conspiracy, v. 1, § 10; 7, § 4; vii. 14, § 20.
- Pauson, paintings of, viii. 5, § 21.
- Payment of the democracy; introduced at Athens by Pericles and Ephialtes, ii. 12, § 4; bad effects of the practice, ib. 7, § 19; iv. 6, § 5; vi. 2, § 6; how they may be counteracted, vi. 5, § 5.
- Peace, the true object of war, vii. 14, §§ 13, 22; 15, §§ 1, 5; the dangers of, ib. 15, § 3.
- Pediaei, the (or 'men of the plain'), at Athens, v. 5, § 9.
- Peisistratus, v. 5, § 9; 12, §§ 2, 5;—Peisistratidae, the, v. 10, §§ 15, 34; 11, § 9; 12, § 5.
- Peloponnesus, ii. 10, § 3; iii. 3, § 5;—Peloponnesian War, the: *see* War, Peloponnesian.
- Penestae, the, ii. 5, § 22; 9, § 2.
- Pentacosio-medimni, the, in Solon's constitution, ii. 12, § 6.
- Penthalidae, the, at Mitylene, v. 10, § 19.

- Penthilus (? tyrant of Mitylene), v. 10, § 19.
- Periander, tyrant of Ambracia, v. 4, § 9; 10, § 16.
- Periander, tyrant of Corinth, iii. 13, § 16; v. 10, § 13; 11, § 4; 12, § 3.
- Pericles, ii. 12, § 4.
- Perioeci (in Argos), v. 3, § 7:—(in Crete), ii. 9, § 3; 10, §§ 3, 5, 8, 16:—advantageous to have perioeci of foreign race as cultivators, vii. 9, § 8; 10, § 13.
- Perrhaebians, the, ii. 9, § 3.
- Persia, iii. 13, § 19; v. 10, §§ 8, 24; 11, §§ 4, 6; vii. 2, § 10; viii. 5, § 5.
- Persian War, the: *see* War, Persian.
- Perversions, the, of the true forms of government, iii. 1, §§ 8-10; 6, § 11; 7; 17, § 1; iv. 2, §§ 1-3; 8, § 1; all governments perversions of the perfect state, iv. 8, § 1 (cp. ii. 11, § 5).
- Phalaris, of Agrigentum, v. 10, § 6.
- Phaleas of Chalcedon, ii. 7, § 2; 12, §§ 7, 12.
- Pharsalus, v. 6, § 10.
- Pheidon, tyrant of Argos, v. 10, § 6.
- Pheidon, of Corinth, ii. 6, § 13.
- Philip, King of Macedonia, v. 10, § 16.
- Philolaus, ii. 12, §§ 8, 10.
- Philosopher, the, may be allowed to discuss practical questions, i. 11, § 1; has no difficulty in acquiring wealth, ib. §§ 8-10; must go below the surface of things, iii. 8, § 1; his life as distinguished from that of the statesman, vii. 2, § 6:—philosophers, the, not agreed about slavery, i. 6, § 2; the opinions of natural philosophers about marriage, vii. 16, § 11; philosophers who have treated of musical education, viii. 5, § 23; 7, §§ 2, 3, 8, 11, 14.
- Philosophy, especially necessary in the prosperous, vii. 15, §§ 3, 4.
- Philo Xenus, viii. 7, §§ 10, 11.
- Phocis, v. 4, § 7.
- Phocylides, quoted, iv. 11, § 9.
- Phoxus, tyrant of Chalcis, v. 4, § 9.
- Phreatto, court of, at Athens, iv. 16, § 3.
- Phrygian harmony, the: *see* Harmony.
- Phrynichus, v. 6, § 6.
- Phylarchs, magistrates at Epidamnus, v. 1, § 10.
- Physician, the, must be judged by the physician, iii. 11, §§ 10-12; is healed by the physician, ib. 16, § 8; is not expected to persuade or coerce his patients, vii. 2, § 13; must know both the end and the means of his art, ib. 13, § 2; precepts of the physicians about marriage, ib. 16, § 11; law about physicians in Egypt, iii. 15, § 4.
- Piraeus, ii. 8, § 1; v. 3, § 15.
- Pittacus, ii. 12, § 13; iii. 14, §§ 9, 10.
- Plato, criticisms of;—forms of government differ in kind, i. 1, § 2; 3, § 4; 7, § 1; the virtue of men and women not the same, i. 13, §§ 9-11; slaves not always to be harshly treated, ib. § 14; disadvantages of community of wives and children, ii. 1, § 3-c. 5; of common property, ib. 5; vii. 10, § 9; the unity of the state may be carried too far, ii. 2, § 2-c. 3, § 4; 4, § 6; 5, § 13; men and women ought not to have the

same pursuits, *ib.* 5, § 24; danger from the rulers being always the same, *ib.* §§ 25, 26; happiness should not be confined to one class, *ib.* § 27; Plato has neglected the foreign relations of his state, *ib.* 6, § 7; amount of property allowed by him insufficient, *ib.* § 9; he should have limited population as well as property, *ib.* §§ 10-14; 7, § 4; he has not said how the rulers and subjects are related, *ib.* 6, § 14; why should not property in land be increased to a certain extent? *ib.* § 15; difficulty of living in two houses, *ib.* § 16; the best state not made up of tyranny and democracy, *ib.* § 18; the state of the Laws really a mixture of oligarchy and democracy, *ib.* §§ 18-22; Plato's distinctions between good and bad constitutions, *iv.* 2, § 3; his account of the classes necessary to a state, *ib.* 4, §§ 12-15; has not recognized the 'Polity' in his enumeration of constitutions, *ib.* 7, § 1; his theory of revolutions, *v.* 12, §§ 7-18; his error in saying that the guardians should be fierce to those whom they do not know, *vii.* 7, §§ 5-8:—that a valiant city needs no walls, *ib.* 11, § 8:—that the crying of children should be checked, *ib.* 17, § 6; his inconsistency in retaining the Phrygian mode, *viii.* 7, §§ 8-13:—the merits of Plato's writings, *ii.* 6, § 6; he departs from ordinary practice more than other legislators, *ib.* 7, § 1; peculiarities suggested by him, *ib.* 12, § 12:—justice of his censure of the Lacedaemonian constitution, *ib.* 9, § 34:

—how far right in wishing that his city should not be near the sea, *vii.* 6, §§ 1-4:—speech of Aristophanes in the Symposium quoted, *ii.* 4, § 6:—criticism of the Republic, *ib.* 1, § 3-c. 5; of the Laws, *ib.* 6.

Pleasure, always sought by mankind, *i.* 9, § 16; *ii.* 7, § 12; denied by Plato to his guardians, *ii.* 5, § 27; is regarded differently by different persons, *viii.* 3, § 5; the pleasure of living, *iii.* 6, § 4; relation of pleasure to happiness, *vii.* 1, § 6; the natural pleasure given by music, *viii.* 5, §§ 11, 15, 17, 25; 6, § 8:—Pleasures, the, which are unaccompanied by pain, *ii.* 7, § 12. Poetry, better judged by the many than the individual, *iii.* 11, § 3. Polity: *see* Government, the Constitutional.

Polycrates, *v.* 11, § 9.

Polygnotus, the painter, *viii.* 5, § 21.

Poor, the, everywhere abound, *iii.* 8, § 6; *v.* 1, § 14; covet the goods of the rich, *iv.* 11, § 9; their degraded state in Hellenic cities, *ib.* §§ 5-7; willing to fight if they are supported by the state, *ib.* 13, § 9; equal to the rich in democracies, *vi.* 2, § 9; the surplus revenue distributed among them in the extreme democracy, *ib.* 5, § 7; may cause a revolution if their numbers increase, *v.* 3, §§ 6-8; begrudge the extravagance of courts, *ib.* 11, § 19; should be humanely treated, *ii.* 7, § 20; *iv.* 13, § 8; should be helped by the rich, *vi.* 5, §§ 5-11.

Population, decline of, at Sparta, *ii.* 9, § 16; importance of regulating, *ib.* 6, §§ 10-14; 7, §§ 4-

6; 9, §§ 14-19; vii. 5, § 1; 16, § 15; changes of government brought about by the natural increase of population in Hellas, iii. 15, § 13; iv. 6, § 5; 13, § 10; vi. 5, § 5; a limit of population necessary to good government, ii. 6, §§ 6, 10; 7, § 5; 9, § 19; vii. 4, §§ 4-11; 5, § 1; 16, § 15.

Poverty, not the cause of the worst crimes, ii. 7, § 10; always antagonistic to riches, iv. 4, § 19; the parent of revolution and crime, ii. 6, § 13 (*but* cp. v. 12, § 17); one of the essential characteristics of democracy, vi. 2, § 7.

Priests, are not political officers, iv. 15, § 2; necessary to the state, vii. 8, §§ 7, 9; should be taken from the aged citizens who are past state service, ib. 9, § 9; their duties, vi. 8, §§ 18-20; required to take their meals at common tables, vii. 12, § 6.

Property, a part of the household, i. 4, § 1; 8, § 1; a condition but not a part of the state, vii. 8, § 4; in the sense of food, provided by nature for all, i. 8, § 9; 10, § 3;—the pleasure of property, ii. 5, § 8;—Plato's limit of property unsatisfactory, ib. 6, § 9; the limit should be such as to enable a man to live both temperately and liberally, ib.; vii. 5, § 1;—inequality of property at Sparta, ii. 9, §§ 14-19; v. 7, § 3, 10; 12, § 15;—a great cause of revolutions, ii. 7, §§ 2-6.

Property, community of; criticism of Plato's scheme, ii. 5 (*see* Plato); common property opposed to human nature, ib. §§ 4, 16; exists in a modified

degree among friends, ib. §§ 6, 7; vii. 10, § 9; found to some extent at Sparta and Tarentum, ii. 5, § 7; vi. 5, § 16; would destroy the virtues of temperance and liberality, ii. 5, §§ 8-10; would not produce the marvellous results which Plato expects, ib. § 11;—equalization of, proposed by Phaleas, ib. 7; 12, § 12; would not remedy the deeper evils of human nature, ib. 7, §§ 8-13, 18.

Property qualification, required in the holders of various offices, iii. 11, § 16; iv. 4, § 24; 5, § 1; 6, §§ 3, 7; vi. 4, § 5; ought not to be excessive, iv. 13, § 7; in oligarchies should be fixed according to two standards, vi. 6, § 2; changes in, a cause of revolutions, v. 3, §§ 8, 10; 6, §§ 16-18; 7, § 9; the evil may be remedied by periodical revisions of the census, ib. 8, §§ 10, 11.

Proportion, importance of, iii. 13, § 21; iv. 12; v. 1, §§ 12-15; 3, § 6; 7, § 8; 8, § 12; 9, § 7; vii. 4, § 10.

Psammetichus, son of Gordius, tyrant at Corinth, v. 12, § 3.

Pyramids, the, of Egypt, v. 11, § 9.

Reason, an element of virtue, vii. 13, §§ 10-13; 15, § 7; is the master artificer, i. 13, § 8; divided into two parts, the speculative and the practical, vii. 14, § 10; is the end towards which nature strives, ib. 15, § 8; intended by nature to control the passionate or irrational element in the soul, i. 5, § 6; 13, § 6; vii. 14, § 9; 15, § 8; is not found in the animals, i. 2, § 11;

- vii. 13, § 12; exists in slaves to a limited extent, i. 5, § 9; 13, § 3; is not readily obeyed by those who have great advantages over others, iv. 11, § 5; may be overcome by passion, v. 10, § 33; 11, § 31; may make mistakes, vii. 15, § 7.
- Religion, matters of, used to be entrusted to the kings, iii. 14, §§ 3, 14 (cp. vi. 8, § 20); the tyrant should have a care of religion, v. 11, § 25; the expense of public worship should be borne by the state, vii. 10, § 10:—the officers of religion, vi. 8, §§ 18–21; vii. 8, § 9; 9, § 9.
- Religious worship, one of the conditions of the state, vii. 8, § 8.
- Representation, principle of, once existed in the government of Mantinea, vi. 4, § 4.
- Republic, the, of Plato: *see* Plato.
- Rest: *see* Leisure.
- Retail trade, not a natural mode of money-making, i. 9, §§ 4, 12; arises out of the barter of necessary articles, ib. §§ 9–12.
- Revolutions, their objects, v. 1; their causes, ii. 7, §§ 2, 5, 10; v. 2; 3; 4; 10, § 13; 12, §§ 14–18; their occasions, v. 4; 7, § 11; the preventives of them, ii. 11, § 15; v. 7, § 6; 8; 9; 11; vi. 4, §§ 16–20; 5; 6; revolutions in democracies, v. 5;—in oligarchies, ib. 6;—in constitutional governments, ib. § 17; 7, § 5;—in aristocracies, ib. 7;—in monarchies, ib. 10;—in tyrannies, ib.; 11; Plato's theory of revolutions, criticized, ib. 12, §§ 7–18;—questions raised after revolutions: citizens *de jure* and *de facto*, iii. 2, §§ 34 5; should old debts be paid—ib. 3, § 1;—democratic measures taken by Cleisthenes and others after a revolution, ib. 2, §§ 3–5; vi. 4, § 18; revolutions may happen without an immediate change in the constitution, iv. 5, § 3; v. 1, § 8.
- Rhegium, ii. 12, § 14; v. 12, § 13.
- Rhodes, ii. 10, § 3; v. 3, §§ 4, 5; 5, § 2.
- Rich, the, one of the elements of the state, iv. 4, § 15; everywhere few compared to the poor, iii. 8, § 6; v. 1, § 14; often hindered by the cares of property from attending to public business, iv. 6, § 6 (*but* cp. i. 7, § 5); possess the external advantages of which the want occasions crime, iv. 8, § 4 (cp. ii. 7, § 10); have too much power in so-called aristocratical governments, iv. 12, § 6; v. 7, § 7; their encroachments more dangerous to the state than those of the poor, iv. 12, § 6; constantly in antagonism to the poor, ib. 11, § 7; v. 9, § 10; should be protected against the demagogues, v. 8, § 20; vi. 5, § 3; should be relieved from useless state expenses, v. 8, § 20; vi. 5, § 9; should be generous to the poor, iv. 13, § 8; vi. 5, § 10; should be public-spirited and munificent, vi. 7, § 6; are often spoilt by indulgence in childhood, iv. 11, § 6; v. 9, § 13; can alone afford the expense of keeping horses, iv. 3, § 2.
- Riches and poverty, the opposing elements of the state, v. 1, § 14; 8, § 14; riches more desired by men than honour, iv.



13, § 8; v. 8, § 16; vi. 4, § 2; Solon wrong in thinking that 'no bound has been fixed to riches,' i. 8, § 14. *See* Wealth.

**Royalty**, the form of government in which one rules for the best, iii. 7, § 3; v. 10, § 3; analogous to aristocracy, v. 10, §§ 2, 7; opposed to tyranny, iii. 7, § 5; iv. 2, § 2; v. 10, § 2; is it better than the rule of the law? iii. 15; 16; arose (1) from the government of families by the eldest, i. 2, § 6; 7, § 1; 12, § 3; (2) from services rendered by the first chiefs, iii. 14, § 12; 15, § 11; v. 10, §§ 3, 8; (3) from the weakness of the middle and lower classes, iv. 13, § 11; once existed in Crete, ii. 10, § 6; has various forms: (1) the Lacedæmonian (which is only a generalship for life), ii. 9, § 33; iii. 14, §§ 3, 14; 15, §§ 1, 2; 16, § 1; (2) the despotic (among Barbarians), iii. 14, §§ 6, 14; iv. 10, § 2; (3) the ancient Dictatorships, iii. 14, §§ 8, 14; iv. 10, § 2; (4) the monarchies of the heroic age, iii. 14, §§ 11-14; (5) the absolute monarchy, ib. § 15;—the people to whom royalty is suited, ib. c. 17;—causes of revolutions in monarchies, v. 10; means of their preservation, ib. 11, §§ 1-3; royalty more often destroyed from within than from without, ib. 10, § 36; true royalty unknown in later Hellas, ib. § 37; vii. 14, § 3. *See* King, Monarchy.

**Rule**; the various kinds of rule essentially different from each other, i. 1, § 2; 3, § 4; 5, § 6; 7, § 1; 12; 13, §§ 4-8; iii. 6, §§ 5-7; vii. 3, § 2; 14, § 6; the distinction between the

ruler and the ruled found throughout nature, i. 2, § 2; 5, §§ 2-7; the better the ruled, the better the rule, ib. 5, §§ 2, 7; v. 11, § 34; the rule of free-men better than despotic authority, vii. 14, § 19; rule over others, not the highest object of the legislator, ib. 14, §§ 14-22; rule must be learnt by obedience, iii. 4, §§ 10, 14; vii. 9, § 6; 14, § 6.

**Ruler**, the, ought to have moral virtue in perfection, i. 13, § 8; the virtue peculiar to him, iii. 4, § 17; must learn to govern by obedience, ii. 11, § 14; iii. 4, § 14; vii. 9, § 6; 14, § 6; the rulers ought to remain the same, ii. 2, §§ 4-8; vii. 14, § 2; dangers arising from this arrangement, ii. 5, §§ 24-27; vii. 14, § 3; the difficulty solved, if the elder rule, and the younger obey, vii. 9, § 5; 14, § 5.

Salamis, victory of, v. 4, § 8.

Samos, iii. 13, § 19; v. 3, § 12; 11, § 9.

Sardanapalus, v. 10, § 22.

**Science**, the, of the statesman, i. 1, § 2; 10, § 1; iii. 12, § 1; iv. 1, § 3;—of the master, i. 3, § 4; 7, §§ 2, 4;—of the slave, ib. 7, §§ 2, 3; in all sciences the whole must be resolved into the parts, ib. 1, § 3; every science capable of improvement, ii. 8, § 18; the philosophical student of science must not neglect any detail, iii. 8, § 1; all sciences aim at some good, ib. 12, § 1;—the political science the highest of all sciences, iii. 12, § 1; aims at the good of the state, vii. 2, § 4; the subjects which it includes, iv. 1, §§ 3-11.



Scylax, vii. 14, § 3.  
 Scylletic Gulf, the, vii. 10, § 3.  
 Scythians, the, vii. 2, §§ 10, 11.  
 Sedition: *see* Revolution.  
 Self-sufficiency, the, of the state,  
 the end and the best, i. 2, § 8;  
 vii. 5, § 1; 8, § 8; would not  
 be promoted by extreme unifi-  
 cation, ii. 2, § 8.  
 Senate: *see* Council of Elders.  
 Senators: *see* Councillors.  
 Servant, the, a kind of instrument  
 in the arts, i. 4, § 2; many ser-  
 vants often less efficient than a  
 few, ii. 3, § 4; the servants  
 who are employed in daily life,  
 those with whom we most often  
 disagree, ib. 5, § 4; children  
 not to be left too much to ser-  
 vants, vii. 17, § 7. *See* Slave.  
 Sesostris, king of Egypt, vii. 10,  
 §§ 1, 6.  
 Seuthes, v. 10, § 24.  
 Shepherds, lead the laziest life  
 among men, i. 8, § 6; some-  
 times combine brigandage with  
 their other occupations, ib. § 8;  
 form the second best material  
 of a democracy, vi. 4, §§ 1, 11;  
 make excellent soldiers, ib. § 11.  
 Sicily, ii. 10, § 4; v. 12, § 13.  
 Sicyon, v. 12, § 1.  
 Simos (?), a party leader at  
 Larissa, v. 6, § 13.  
 Sirrhas, v. 10, § 17.  
 Slave, the, does he exist by nature?  
 i. 4, § 6-c. 6; different from the  
 female (except among Barba-  
 rians), ib. 2, §§ 2-4; how re-  
 lated to his master, ib. §§ 2-5;  
 3, §§ 1-3; 4, § 5; vii. 3, § 5;  
 not always distinguished by  
 nature from the freeman, i. 5,  
 § 10; 6, § 8; the relation be-  
 tween slave and master, when  
 natural, does not exclude kind-  
 ness, ib. 6, § 9; slave and

master have a common interest,  
 ib. 2, § 3; iii. 6, § 6; the slave  
 must not be addressed in the  
 language of command only  
 [against Plato, *Laws*, vi. 777], i.  
 13, § 14; place of the slave in the  
 management of the family, ib.  
 4; 5, § 9; 8, § 1; the slave an  
 instrument taking precedence  
 of other instruments, ib. 4, § 2;  
 like the animals, ministers to  
 the needs of life, ib. 5, § 9;  
 the science proper to him, i. 7,  
 §§ 2, 3; his share in virtue, ib.  
 13, §§ 2-14;—in reason, ib. 5,  
 §§ 8, 9; 13, § 3; has not the  
 deliberative faculty, ib. 13, § 7;  
 is nearer to his master than the  
 mechanic, ib. § 13; ought to  
 be trained in virtue by him, ib.  
 § 14:—Slaves, how related to  
 artisans, i. 13, § 13; ii. 7, § 22;  
 iii. 4, § 12; 5, § 3; forbidden  
 gymnastic exercises in Crete, ii.  
 5, § 19; difficulty in managing  
 them, ib. § 22; 9, §§ 2-4; vii.  
 10, § 13; the different classes of  
 slaves, iii. 4, § 12; children of  
 slaves only admitted to citizen-  
 ship in extreme democracies, ib.  
 5, § 7; vi. 4, § 16; slaves can-  
 not form a state, iii. 9, § 6; can-  
 not be self-sufficient, iv. 4, § 11;  
 licence allowed to them in  
 democracies and tyrannies, v.  
 11, § 11; vi. 4, § 20; some-  
 times emancipated by tyrants  
 to serve as a guard, v. 11, § 32;  
 should be encouraged by the  
 hope of freedom, vii. 10, § 14;  
 their company dangerous for  
 children, ib. 17, § 7.  
 Slavery, is it according to nature?  
 i. 5; 6.  
 Slavery;—men should not think  
 it slavery to live according to  
 the constitution, v. 9, § 15.

Slaves, the art of acquiring, a species of hunting or war, i. 7, § 5; vii. 14, § 21.

Smerdis, v. 10, § 19.

Society, political, the highest of all communities, i. 1, § 1; exists, not for mere companionship, but for the sake of noble actions, iii. 9, §§ 12-14; man designed by nature to take part in society, i. 2, §§ 8-16; iii. 6, § 3; benefit conferred on mankind by the establishment of society, i. 2, § 15; society cannot exist without judicial decisions and punishments, vi. 8, § 9; vii. 13, § 6.

Socrates: *see* Plato.

Soldiers, according to Plato, should be taught to use both hands alike, ii. 12, § 12; shepherds make excellent soldiers, vi. 4, § 11; relation of the different kinds of soldiers to the different constitutions, ib. 7, §§ 1-3; the soldier must have a good knowledge of the military art, vii. 11, § 12; soldiers as necessary to the state as artisans or husbandmen [against Plato, Rep. ii. 369], iv. 4, §§ 10-17; vii. 4, §§ 4-7; 8, § 7; 9, § 10; the soldiers should be taken from the youth, the councillors from the old, vii. 9, §§ 3-10; 14, § 5; should form a separate caste, as in Egypt, ib. 9, § 10; 10, § 1; position of the soldiers in the constitution of Hippodamus, ii. 8, §§ 2, 8-12.

Soldiers, heavy-armed, citizenship in constitutional governments confined to the, ii. 6, § 16; iii. 7, § 4; 17, § 4; iv. 13, § 10; growth of their importance in Hellenic states, iv. 13, §§ 9-12; taken from the roll of citizens

at Athens, v. 3, § 7; form (with cavalry) the natural military force of an oligarchy, vi. 7, §§ 1, 2; generally worsted by the light-armed in popular insurrections, ib. § 3;—the principal magistrates elected from those who are serving, or who have served, ii. 8, § 9; iv. 13, § 9.

Soldiers, light-armed, always attached to democracy, vi. 7, § 2; generally master the heavy-armed in popular insurrections, ib. § 3; the younger citizens in oligarchies should be trained in the exercises of light infantry, ib.

Solon, i. 8, § 14; ii. 7, § 6; 12, §§ 2-6 (cp. iii. 11, § 8); iv. 11, § 15.

Sophocles, quoted, i. 13, § 11.

Soul, the, rules by nature over the body, i. 5, §§ 4-6; posterior to the body in order of generation, vii. 15, § 9; more truly a part of an animal than the body, iv. 4, § 14; the beauty of the soul less easily seen than that of the body, i. 5, § 11; the interests of soul and body the same, ib. 6, § 10; the irrational element in the soul subject to the rational, ib. 5, § 6; 13, § 6; vii. 14, § 9; 15, § 8; the divisions of the soul, i. 5, §§ 5-7; 13, § 6; iii. 4, § 6; vii. 14, § 9; 15, § 9; the soul never wholly free from passion, iii. 15, § 5; said to be or to possess harmony, viii. 5, § 25.

Sparta: *see* Lacedaemon.

Speculation, life of, opposed to that of contemplation, vii. 2; 3; 14, §§ 9-22.

State, the, is the highest of communities, i. 1, § 1; is based upon

the relations of husband and wife, father and child, master and slave, ruler and subject, *ib.* 2; 13, § 15; formed of a union of villages, *ib.* 2, § 8; exists for the sake of a good life, *ib.*; *iii.* 9, §§ 6-14; *iv.* 4, § 11; *vii.* 1, § 1; 8, §§ 4, 8;—not for the sake of alliance and security, *iii.* 9, §§ 6-14; is distinguished from an alliance because it has an ethical aim, *ii.* 2, § 3; *iii.* 9, § 8;—from a nation, because it is made up of different elements, *ii.* 2, § 3; is not necessarily formed by a number of persons residing together, *iii.* 3, § 3; 9, §§ 9-12; (*but cp.* *ii.* 1, § 2); is a work of nature, *i.* 2, §§ 8, 9; prior to the family or the individual, *ib.* § 12; 13, § 15:—composed of dissimilar parts or elements, *ii.* 2, § 3; *iii.* 1, § 2; 4, §§ 6-8; *iv.* 3, § 1; 4, § 7; 12, §§ 1-4; *v.* 1, §§ 12-15; 3, § 6; *vii.* 8; the parts not to be identified with the conditions of the state, *vii.* 8, § 1; the parts and conditions enumerated, *iv.* 3, §§ 1-6; 4, §§ 7-20; *vii.* 8, § 7;—compared to the parts of animals, *iv.* 4, §§ 7-9:—the state depends for its identity mainly on the sameness of the constitution, *iii.* 3; must be able to defend itself, *ii.* 6, § 7; 7, §§ 14-17; 10, § 15; *iii.* 12, § 9; *iv.* 4, § 10; *vii.* 4, § 6; 15, § 2; should be self-sufficing, *i.* 2, § 8; *ii.* 2, § 8; *vii.* 4, § 11; 5, § 1; 8, § 8; should not exceed a certain size, *ii.* 6, § 6; *iii.* 3, §§ 4-7; *vii.* 4; 5, § 1;—has the same virtue, and therefore the same life and end, as the individual, *vii.* 1-3; 13-15; may, like an individual, be wanting in self-discipline, *v.*

9, § 12; must have the virtues of leisure, *vii.* 15, § 1; can lead a life of virtuous activity isolated from others, *ib.* 2, § 16; 3, §§ 8-10; is not made happier by conquest, *ib.* 2; 3; 14, §§ 14-22; rests upon justice, *i.* 2, § 16; *vii.* 14, § 3; must have a care of virtue, *iii.* 9, § 8; *vii.* 13, § 9 (*cp.* *iv.* 7, § 4); must be happy, not in regard to a portion of the citizens, but to them all, *ii.* 5, § 27; *vii.* 9, § 7; is united by friendship among the citizens, *ii.* 5, § 6; *iii.* 9, § 13; *iv.* 11, § 7; *v.* 11, § 5 (*cp.* *vi.* 5, § 7); must pay great regard to education, *i.* 13, § 15; *ii.* 7, § 8; *v.* 9, § 11; *viii.* 1:—must not be left to fortune, *ii.* 11, §§ 15, 16; *vii.* 13, § 9; is not the growth of a day, *v.* 3, § 11; is preserved by the principle of compensation, *ii.* 2, §§ 4-7; is sometimes left at the mercy of the army by the violence of faction, *v.* 6, § 13; its permanence can only be secured by the toleration of all elements, *ii.* 9, § 22; *iv.* 9, § 10; 12, § 1; *v.* 8, § 5; 9, § 5; *vi.* 6, § 2; any state, however ill-constituted, may last a few days, *vi.* 5, § 1:—the various claims to authority in the state, *iii.* 9, §§ 1-5, 14; 10; 12; 13; *iv.* 8, § 9; *vi.* 3, §§ 1-4; what share in the state may be allowed to the ordinary citizen? *iii.* 11, §§ 6-8; *iv.* 13, §§ 5-8; *vi.* 4, § 5; 7, § 5 (*cp.* *ii.* 12, § 5).

State, the ideal, of Aristotle, would require (1) a defensible position, *vii.* 5, § 3; (2) a moderate naval force, *ib.* §§ 6-9; (3) courageous and intelligent citizens, *ib.* 7; (4) the exclusion

- of mechanics and tradesmen from citizenship, *ib.* 9, §§ 1-8; (5) slaves and Perioeci to till the soil, *ib.* § 8; 10, §§ 9, 13, 14; (6) common meals, *ib.* 10, §§ 1-8, 10; (7) subdivision of the land into two parts, public and private, *ib.* § 11; (8) [*for the city*] a central situation, *ib.* 5, § 3; 11, § 2;—near, but not upon, the sea, *ib.* 6, §§ 1-6; a healthy site, *ib.* 11, § 1; a good water supply, *ib.* § 3; proper fortifications and walls, *ib.* §§ 5, 8-12; an arrangement of houses and streets which will combine the advantages of beauty and security, *ib.* § 6; an acropolis, for the temples, and a 'freemen's agora,' *ib.* 12, §§ 1-6; government buildings and a trader's agora, *ib.* 7.
- State, the best [absolutely], the enquirer into, must examine the best ideal and actual forms of government, *ii.* 1, § 1; differs from the so-called aristocracies because the citizens are absolutely good, *iii.* 13, § 12; *iv.* 7, § 2 (*but* *cp.* *iii.* 4, § 5); presupposes the best life, *vii.* 1; in comparison with it, all existing governments may be called perversions, *iv.* 8, § 1.
- State, the best [under ordinary circumstances], *iv.* 1, § 3; 11, § 21 (*cp.* *ii.* 6, § 16).
- State, the best [for mankind in general], *iv.* 1, § 3; 11, § 1.
- Statesman, the, is properly concerned with the natural art of acquisition only, *i.* 8, § 15; 10, § 1; ought also to be acquainted with the art of money-making, *ib.* 11, § 13; must be able to recognize evils at their commencement, *v.* 4, § 3; 8, § 9; must not despise small things, *ib.* 3, § 10; 4, § 1; 7, § 11; 8, § 2; must he have virtue, or is skill alone sufficient? *ib.* 9, §§ 1-4; must know the real effect of political measures, *ib.* § 9; will use fear as a means to bind the state together, *ib.* 8, § 8; will not suppose that the greatness of the state depends merely on size, *vii.* 4, § 4; the life of the statesman contrasted with the life of the philosopher, *ib.* 2, § 6.
- Statesman, the, the rule of, different from other kinds of rule, *i.* 1, § 2; 3, § 4; 7, § 1.
- Stentor, *vii.* 4, § 11.
- Sybaris, *v.* 3, §§ 11, 12.
- Symposium, the, of Plato: *see* Plato.
- Syracuse, *i.* 7, § 2; *iii.* 15, § 16; *v.* 3, §§ 5, 13; 4, §§ 1-4, 9; 5, § 10; 6, § 8; 10, §§ 6, 23, 28, 30-2; 11, §§ 7, 10; 12, §§ 6, 12.
- Syrtis (?), a district of Southern Italy, *vii.* 10, § 5.
- Tarentum, *iv.* 4, § 21; *v.* 3, § 7; 7, § 2; *vi.* 5, § 10.
- Telecles, of Miletus, *iv.* 14, § 4.
- Tenedos, *iv.* 4, § 21.
- Thales, of Miletus, *i.* 11, § 8:—[probably the Cretan poet], *ii.* 12, § 7.
- Theagenes, tyrant of Megara, *v.* 5, § 9.
- Thebes; *ii.* 9, §§ 10, 16; 12, § 10; *iii.* 5, § 7; *v.* 3, § 5; 6, § 15; *vi.* 7, § 4.
- Theodectes, quoted, *i.* 6, § 7.
- Theodorus, the actor, *vii.* 17, § 13.
- Theopompus, king of Sparta, *v.* 11, § 2.
- Thera, one of the Sporades, *iv.* 4, § 5.

Thessaly, ii. 5, § 22; 9, § 2; vii. 12, § 3.  
 Thetes, the (in Solon's constitution), ii. 12, § 6.  
 Thibron, vii. 14, § 17.  
 Thirty, the, government of, at Athens, v. 6, § 6.  
 Thracians, the, vii. 2, § 10.  
 Thrasybulus (brother of Hiero), v. 10, § 31; 12, § 6.  
 Thrasybulus, tyrant of Miletus, iii. 13, § 16; v. 10, § 13.  
 Thrasyllus, viii. 6, § 12.  
 Thrasymachus, v. 5, § 4.  
 Thurii, v. 3, §§ 11, 12; 7, §§ 9, 12.  
 Timophanes of Corinth, v. 6, § 12.  
 Timophanes, of Mitylene, v. 4, § 6.  
 Trade: *see* Commerce.  
 Traders, the employments of, devoid of moral excellence, vi. 4, § 12; vii. 9, § 3; ought to be excluded from citizenship, vii. 9, § 3; admitted to office at Thebes after they had retired from business ten years, iii. 5, § 7; vi. 7, § 4.  
 Triopium, promontory near Cnidus, ii. 10, § 3.  
 Troezen, v. 3, § 11; vii. 16, § 7.  
 Tyrannicide, esteemed honourable in Hellas, v. 10, § 26.  
 Tyranny, the government of the monarch who rules for his own interests, iii. 7, § 5; 8, § 2; iv. 10, § 3; v. 10, § 9; akin to democracy, iv. 4, § 27; v. 10, §§ 11, 30; 11, § 12; hardly to be called a constitution, iv. 8, § 1; 10, § 1; the perversion of royalty, iii. 7, § 5; 17, § 1; iv. 2, § 2; 4, § 27; 5, § 2; 10, § 3; does not rest upon natural justice or expediency, iii. 17, § 1; has all the vices both of

democracy and oligarchy, v. 10, §§ 11, 30, 35; is unendurable to freemen, iv. 10, § 4; v. 11, § 13; may arise either from extreme oligarchy or democracy, iv. 11, § 11; v. 8, § 7; in Sicily, often arose out of oligarchy, v. 12, § 13; was common in ancient times, owing to the great powers of the magistrates, ib. 5, § 8; 10, § 5; always a short-lived government, ib. 12, § 1; rarely becomes hereditary, ib. 10, § 33; causes of revolution in tyrannies, ib. 10; means of their preservation, ib. 11; governments into which tyranny may change, ib. 12, § 11.  
 Tyrant, the, is the natural enemy of the freeman, iv. 10, § 4; v. 11, § 13; cuts off his rivals, iii. 13, §§ 16-19; v. 10, § 13; 11, § 5; rules over involuntary subjects as the king over voluntary, iii. 14, § 7; aims at pleasure, the king at honour, v. 10, § 10; is guarded by mercenaries, iii. 14, § 7; v. 10, § 10; sometimes obliged to emancipate the slaves, v. 11, § 32; is much under the influence of flatterers, iv. 4, § 28; v. 11, § 12; destroys the spirit and confidence of his subjects, v. 11, §§ 4, 13, 15; sends spies among them, ib. § 7; incites them to quarrel, ib. § 8; oppresses them by war and taxation, ib.; distrusts his friends, ib. § 10; gives licence to slaves and women, ib. § 11; vi. 4, § 20; loves the bad, v. 11, § 12; prefers foreigners to citizens, ib. § 14; is capable of any wickedness, ib.; is full of self-indulgence and sensuality, ib. § 23; may also preserve his tyranny by playing the 'father of his

- country,' *ib.* §§ 17-33; must be on his guard against assassins, especially against those who think that they have been insulted, *ib.* § 30; must conciliate the poor or the rich, whichever is the stronger, *ib.* § 32.
- Tyrants, the, of Hellenic cities put down by the Lacedaemonians, *iii.* 2, § 3; *v.* 10, § 30; of Sicily, by the Syracusans, *v.* 10, § 30.
- Tyrants, most of the ancient, originally demagogues, *v.* 5, § 6; 10, § 4; sometimes great magistrates, or kings, *ib.* 5, § 8; 10, § 5.
- Tyrrhenians, the, *iii.* 9, § 6.
- Tyrtaeus, *v.* 7, § 4.
- Usury, the most unnatural mode of money-making, *i.* 10, § 5; 11, § 3.
- Utility, too much regarded by Hellenic legislators, *vii.* 14, § 15; is not the sole aim of education, *viii.* 2, § 3; 3, § 11; is not sought after by men of noble mind, *ib.* 3, § 12.
- Village, the, a colony of the family, *i.* 2, § 6; the state a union of villages, *ib.* § 8.
- Virtue, the especial characteristic of aristocratical governments, *ii.* 11, §§ 5-10; *iv.* 7; *v.* 7, §§ 5-7; often allied to force, *i.* 6, § 3; more a concern of household management than wealth, *ib.* 13, § 1; depends upon the supremacy of the rational principle in the soul, *ib.* § 6; *vii.* 14, § 9; 15, § 9; cannot be included under a general definition, *i.* 13, § 10; must be taught to the slave by his master, *ib.* § 12; ought to be the aim and care of the state, *iii.* 9, §§ 6-8; *vii.* 13, § 9 (*cp.* *iv.* 7, § 4); gives a claim to superiority in the state, *iii.* 9, §§ 14, 15; 13, § 1; has many kinds, *ib.* 7, § 4; cannot ruin those who possess her, *ib.* 10, § 2; is a mean, *iv.* 11, § 3; how far required in the great officers of state, *v.* 9, §§ 1-4; must be at least pretended by the tyrant, *ib.* 11, §§ 25, 34; is regarded as a secondary object by mankind, *vii.* 1, § 5:—cannot be separated from happiness, *vii.* 1, § 3; 2, § 2; 3, § 1; 8, § 5; 9, § 3; 13, § 5; results from nature, habit, and reason, *ib.* 13, §§ 10-13; 15, §§ 7-10; is not a matter of chance, *ib.* 13, § 9; how far consistent with the political life, *ib.* 2; 3; should it be made the aim of education? *viii.* 2; consists in hating and loving and rejoicing aright, *ib.* 5, § 17:—should not (as is done by the Lacedaemonians) be supposed inferior to external goods, *ii.* 9, § 35 (*cp.* *vii.* 1, § 5); nor be practised with a view to the single object of success in war, *ii.* 9, § 34; *vii.* 2, § 9; 14, § 16; 15, § 6:—the virtue proper to the slave, the woman, the child, *i.* 13, §§ 1-3; of the ruler and the subject different, *ib.* §§ 4-6; *iii.* 4, §§ 7-18; of the ruler, practical wisdom, of the subject, true opinion, *iii.* 4, § 18; of men and women not the same, *i.* 13, §§ 3, 9-11; *iii.* 4, § 16; less required in the artisan than the slave, *i.* 13, § 12 (*cp.* *vii.* 9, § 7); of the citizen relative to the constitution, *iii.* 4, §§ 1-7; *iv.* 7, § 3; *v.* 9, § 1; of the good man absolute, *iii.* 4, §§ 1-7; *vii.* 13, § 7; of the good citizen:



- is it identical with that of the good man? iii. 4; 5, § 10; 18; vii. 14, § 8; of the citizen in the perfect state, iii. 4, § 5; 13, § 12; iv. 7, § 2.
- Virtue, military, is found in the masses, iii. 7, § 4; the social, is justice, i. 2, § 16; iii. 13, § 3.
- Virtues, the, of women and children important to the state, i. 13, § 15; ii. 9, § 5; of the state and the individual the same, vii. 1, § 12; of the military life, ii. 9, §§ 11, 34; vii. 15, § 3; of leisure, vii. 15, § 1.
- War, a part of the art of acquisition when directed against wild beasts and against men who are intended by nature to be slaves, i. 7, § 5; 8, § 12; vii. 2, § 15; 14, § 21; exists for the sake of peace, vii. 14, §§ 13, 22; 15, § 1; a school of virtue, ii. 9, § 11; a remedy against the dangers of prosperity, vii. 15, § 3; constant war a part of tyrannical policy, v. 11, § 10; success in war the sole object of the Lacedaemonian and Cretan constitutions, ii. 9, §§ 34, 35; vii. 2, § 9; 14, § 16; 15, § 6; progress in war:—invention of tactics, iv. 13, § 10;—of siege machines, vii. 11, § 9; improvement of fortifications, ib. § 12.
- War, captives taken in, ought they to be made slaves? i. 6, §§ 1-8.
- War, the Peloponnesian; losses of the Athenian nobility, v. 3, § 7; battle of Oenophyta, ib. § 5;—capture of Mitylene, ib. 4, § 6;—battle of Mantinea, ib. § 9;—the Sicilian expedition, ib.;—the Four Hundred at Athens, ib. § 13; 6, § 6;—the Thirty, ib. 6, § 6.
- War, the Persian, v. 3, § 7; 4, §§ 4, 8; 7, § 4; effect of, upon Athens, ii. 12, § 5; v. 4, § 8; viii. 6, § 11:—the Sacred, v. 4, § 7.
- Wealth, always antagonistic to poverty, iv. 4, § 19; forms an element of the state, ii. 7, § 16; iv. 4, § 15; vii. 8, §§ 7, 9; includes many varieties, i. 8, § 3; iv. 3, § 2; [the true kind] has a limit, i. 8, § 14; 9, §§ 1, 12; popularly confused with coin, ib. 9, §§ 10, 14; not so much a concern of household management as virtue, ib. 13, § 1; must be used with both temperance and liberality, ii. 6, § 8; vii. 5, § 1.
- Wealth, too highly valued at Sparta and Carthage, ii. 9, §§ 7, 13; 11, §§ 8-12; iv. 7, § 4; the chief characteristic of oligarchy, ii. 11, § 9; iii. 8, § 7; iv. 4, §§ 3, 19; v. 10, § 11; vi. 2, § 7; confers a claim to superiority in the state, iii. 9, §§ 4-6, 15; 12, §§ 8, 9; 13, §§ 1-5; popularly associated with good birth and education, iv. 8, §§ 4, 8; v. 7, § 1. *See Riches.*
- Wealthy, the, have the external advantages of which the want tempts men to crime, ii. 7, § 10; iv. 8, § 3; are apt to be spoiled by the luxury in which they are reared, iv. 11, § 6; v. 9, § 13; form one of the classes necessary to the state, iv. 14, § 15; vii. 8, §§ 7, 9. *See Rich.*
- Whole, the, must be resolved into its parts, i. 1, § 3; 8, § 1; prior and therefore superior to the parts, ib. 2, §§ 12-14; iii. 17, § 7; the part belongs entirely to the whole, i. 4, § 5; every



whole has a ruling element, *ib.* 5, § 3; the whole and the part have the same interest, *ib.* 6, § 10; the virtue of the parts relative to the virtue of the whole, *ib.* 13, § 15; the happiness of the whole dependent on the happiness of the parts, *ii.* 5, § 27; *vii.* 9, § 7; the sophism that 'if the parts are little the whole is little,' *v.* 8, § 3; the care of the part and the care of the whole inseparable, *viii.* 1, § 3.

Woman, the, has a different virtue to the man, *i.* 13, §§ 3-12; *iii.* 4, § 16; shares in the deliberative faculty, *i.* 13, § 7.

Women, should be trained with a view to the state, *i.* 13, § 15 (*cp.* *ii.* 9, § 5); cannot have the same pursuits as men, *ii.* 5, § 24; said to have been common among certain Libyan tribes, *ib.* 3, § 9; have great influence among warlike races, *ib.* 9, § 7; caused great harm to Sparta by their disorder and licence, *ib.* §§ 5-13; possessed two-fifths of the land in Laconia, *ib.* § 15; too proud in oligarchies to be controlled, *iv.* 15, § 13; have often ruined tyrannies by their insolence, *v.* 11, § 23; are allowed great licence in demo-

cracies and tyrannies, *ib.* 11, § 11; *vi.* 4, § 20; commonly cease to bear children after fifty, *vii.* 16, §§ 5, 16; should not marry too young, *ib.* § 6; impart their nature to their offspring, *ib.* § 14.

Women and children, the community of, proposed by Plato, *ii.* 1, § 3; 12, § 12; he has not explained whether he would extend it to the dependent classes, *ib.* 5, §§ 18-24;—objections of Aristotle: (1) unity would not be promoted, *ib.* 3, § 2; (2) there would be a general neglect of the children, *ib.* § 4; (3) the parentage of the children could not be concealed, *ib.* § 8; (4) expiations would be impossible, *ib.* 4, § 1; (5) the concealment of relationship would lead to unnatural crimes, *ib.* §§ 1-3, 10; (6) affection would be weakened, *ib.* §§ 4-9; (7) the transfer of children to another rank would be found impracticable, *ib.* § 10; (8) the household would be neglected, *ib.* 5, § 24.

Xerxes, King of Persia, *v.* 10, § 21.

Zaleucus, *ii.* 12, § 7.

Zancle, *v.* 3, § 12.

OXFORD: HORACE HART, M.A.  
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY



# THE OXFORD LIBRARY OF TRANSLATIONS

Fcap. 8vo, uniform cloth binding, price 3s. 6d. net (\$1.00)  
each volume

*Bookman*:—‘The “Oxford Library of Translations” marks a red-letter day in the history of the “crib”. It is an enterprise well deserving the attention of every one concerned with literature. The translations of the classics, with a few memorable exceptions, have been the product of hackwork. The flower was roughly handled, and its bloom was shed. . . . We are glad to infer that it is the intention of the Oxford Press to issue at a wonderfully cheap price a series of translations, displaying a scholarship and a care which have hitherto been almost exclusively reserved to the recension of the texts.’

*Cambridge Review*:—‘The best series of translations we have ever seen.’

ALFRED: BOETHIUS. Done into modern English by  
W. J. SEDGEFIELD.

APULEIUS: APOLOGIA and FLORIDA. By H. E.  
BUTLER.

APULEIUS: METAMORPHOSES. By H. E. BUTLER.  
Two volumes.

ARISTOTLE: POLITICS. By B. JOWETT. Introduction  
by H. W. C. DAVIS.

BEOWULF. By J. EARLE.

CAESAR: GALLIC WAR and CIVIL WAR. By F. P.  
LONG. 2 vols.

DANTE: DIVINA COMMEDIA. By H. F. TOZER.

DANTE: CONVIVIO. By W. W. JACKSON.

DEMOSTHENES: PUBLIC ORATIONS. By A. W.  
PICKARD-CAMBRIDGE. 2 vols.

HEINE: SONGS. By J. TODHUNTER. And on Oxford  
India paper, 4s. 6d. net (\$1.50).

HESIOD. By A. W. MAIR.

HORACE. By E. C. WICKHAM.

LONGINUS: ON THE SUBLIME. By A. O. PRICKARD.

LUCIAN: WORKS. By H. W. FOWLER and F. G. FOWLER.  
Four volumes.

LUCRETIUS: ON THE NATURE OF THINGS. By  
C. BAILEY.

## LIBRARY OF TRANSLATIONS (continued)

- MACHIAVELLI: THE PRINCE. By N. H. THOMSON.  
MARCUS AURELIUS. By JOHN JACKSON. Introduction  
by C. BIGG.  
PARALLEL PSALTER, THE: being the Prayer Book  
version of the Psalms and a new version arranged on opposite  
pages, with an introduction and glossaries by S. R. DRIVER.  
Second Edition.  
PHILOSTRATUS: APOLLONIUS OF TYANA. By  
J. S. PHILLIMORE. 2 vols.  
PLATO: THE FOUR SOCRATIC DIALOGUES. By  
B. JOWETT. Preface by E. CAIRD.  
PLATO: REPUBLIC. By B. JOWETT. Two volumes.  
In one volume on Oxford India paper, 7s. 6d. net (\$2.50).  
PROPERTIUS. By J. S. PHILLIMORE.  
ST. BERNARD: ON CONSIDERATION. By G. LEWIS.  
STATIUS: SILVAE. By D. A. SLATER.  
TACITUS: DIALOGUS, AGRICOLA and GERMANIA.  
By W. H. FYFE.  
TACITUS: HISTORIES. By W. HAMILTON FYFE. 2 vols.  
VIRGIL. By J. JACKSON. And on Oxford India paper,  
4s. 6d. net (\$1.50).

## GREEK CLASSICS FOR ENGLISH READERS

Extra fcap. 8vo, each 1s. net (35 c.); with introductions and  
notes by J. CHURTON COLLINS

- AESCHYLUS: AGAMEMNON. By J. CONINGTON.  
AESCHYLUS: PROMETHEUS BOUND. By R. WHITE-  
LAW.  
EURIPIDES: ALCESTIS. By H. KYNASTON.  
SOPHOCLES: ANTIGONE. By R. WHITELAW.

---

SOPHOCLES: ELECTRA. By R. WHITELAW, with  
Matthew Arnold's MEROPE. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d. (90 c.).

OXFORD: AT THE CLARENDON PRESS  
LONDON: HENRY FROWDE  
OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS, AMEN CORNER, E.C.











